## Georgian

A Learner's Grammar Second Edition

George Hewitt

## Georgian <br> A Learner's Grammar

## Second Edition

This new edition of Georgian: A Learner's Grammar is a completely revised and updated guide to the fascinating and most widely spoken language of the Caucasus.

This Grammar presents the language in the form of grammatical descriptions supplemented with dialogues and reading passages. Full attention is given to script reproduction and recognition, pronunciation, lexis and individual points of grammar. There is also a varied and extensive range of exercise work.

Features of this new edition include:

- Highlighting of verbal roots throughout the grammatical sections and vocabularies
- Some extra exercises for practice of verb forms
- Use of the new Georgian currency
- Examples of Georgian literature, both poetry and prose, each with its own self-contained vocabulary.

This new edition provides a key to the exercises, Georgian-English vocabulary lists and a glossary of grammatical terms.

George Hewitt is Professor of Caucasian languages at SOAS, London University, and has been a Fellow of the British Academy since 1997.

# Georgian 

## A Learner's Grammar

Second Edition

## George Hewitt

First published 1996
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN
Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016
Second edition published 2005
Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor \& Francis Group
© 1996, 2005 George Hewitt
This edition published in the Taylor \& Francis e-Library, 2006.
"To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor \& Francis or Routledge's collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk."

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library
Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Hewitt, B. G.
Georgian: a learner's grammar/George Hewitt - 2nd ed. p. cm .

English and Georgian
Originally published: New York: Routledge, 1995.

1. Georgian language - Grammar. 2. Georgian language -

Textbooks for foreign speakers - English. I. Title
PK9107.H48 2005
499'. 96982421 - dc 22

This book is humbly dedicated to the bright memory of Ak'ak'i Shanidze (1887-1987), who laid the foundations of modern Georgian grammar



6ょog. ble blobs

## Contents

Preface to the second edition ..... xiii
Introduction ..... 1
Handwritten examples ..... 9
Lesson 1 ..... 13
Greetings and introductions 15
Citation form of nouns and adjectives 16
Locative expressions 16
Formation of adverbs 16
Asking questions 17
Consonant-final words 17
Pronouns, possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns 17
Formality 18
The present tense of to be 18
The verb of motion and similar formations 19
Lesson 224
The plural of nouns 26
The dative case 27
The genitive case 27
Declension of the demonstrative adjectives 28
Adjective agreement with datives and genitives 28
Preverbs 29
Numbers 29
Telling the time 30
Days of the week 31
Months of the year 31
The present tense of the verbs stand up, sit down, lie down 32
Names denoting common relationships and possessives 34

## Lesson 3

Asking about and stating one's age 40
The comparative and superlative grades of adjectives and adverbs 40

The instrumental case 41
Adjective agreement with the instrumental 41
Postpositions 41
Summary of the past tense of irregular verbs from previous lessons 43
Subject agreement markers within the verb for intransitive subjects 44

## Lesson 4

The division of the tense system 52
Subject and direct object case marking and verbal agreement for Series I transitives 52
Word order 53
Transitive verbs in the present indicative 53
Neutral version 55
Verb agreement with 3rd person plural subjects 55
Syncope of -o- in nouns 56
The adverbial case of nouns 56
Adjective agreement with nouns in the adverbial case 56
The postposition -mde up to 57

## Lesson 5

Subjective version 64
Indirect objects 66
Locative version 67
Indefinite pronouns and adverbs 68
Articles 69

## Lesson 6

The future indicative of transitive verbs 77
Object agreement affixes 79
Reflexives 81
Emphatic pronouns 82

## Lesson 7

Objective version 90
Expressions with too, also, as well 92
Emphatic interrogative particle 92
Relative clauses 92
The potential negative 93
The vocative case 94
Adjective agreement with the vocative 94

## Contents

## Lesson 8

The syntax of Series II transitive verbs 103
The ergative case 104
Declension types and agreement patterns 104
The aorist indicative forms of transitive verbs 106

## Lesson 9

The formation of colloquial relative clauses 125
Temporal clauses meaning when 126
Temporal clauses meaning while 127
Manner clauses meaning as, like 128
Temporal clauses meaning as soon as 128
Temporal clauses meaning after 129
Noun clauses 129
Causal clauses because, since, as 130
Simple conditional (if) clauses 130
The verb know in the present indicative 131
Lesson 10
The formation of the present and future indicatives of intransitive verbs 140
Meaning and syntax of Class 2 intransitive verbs 145
The marking of intransitive verbs with indirect objects 146
Some anomalies among the intransitives 150
Some irregular future indicatives 151

## Lesson 11

The formation of the aorist indicative of intransitive verbs 165
The syntax required by intransitive verbs in Series II 171
The medial verbs in the present, future and aorist indicatives 173
The syntax of medial verbs 177
Version as a change of tense marker 177

## Lesson 12

The formation of the aorist subjunctive for transitives, intransitives and medials 187
Some uses of the aorist subjunctive 194
How to give an instruction in the imperative 196
How to construct expressions of prohibition 198

## Lesson 13

Stative verbs 209
The indirect verbs 210

How to say $X$ wants to [verb] and $X$ can [verb] 219
How to express the notion convey 219
How to say know in the future indicative 220
Forms of the more important stative verbs 221

## Lesson 14

Formation of the imperfect indicative, present subjunctive, conditional and future subjunctive 232
Expressions of the type If $X$ were to (be) [verb](ing), $Y$ would [verb] 238
Constructing imperatives from verbs without an aorist indicative 239
Constructing expressions of the type $X$ ought to be [verb]ing 240
Expressions of purpose relating to the future 240
Some other verbs that take the aorist subjunctive 241

## Lesson 15

The perfect forms of transitive and medial verbs 252
How to say $X$ did not [verb] 259
Three colloquial uses for the perfect 260
The construction of sentences containing although/even if 261
Expressions like $X$ is so [adjective] that [clause] 261
Negatives 262

## Lesson 16

The formation and meaning of the pluperfect of transitive and medial verbs 272
How to express the idea $X$ should/ought to have [verb]ed 279
How to express a purpose relating to the past 280
How to express conditions of the type If X had [verb]ed 281
Examples of word formation 282
Lesson 17
The main function of preverbs in the Modern Georgian verbal system 293
The formation and functions of the verbal noun 'masdar' 295
The formation and functions of participles 298
Expressing at the time of [verb]ing 310

## Lesson 18

The formation of the perfect of intransitive verbs 322
The formation of the perfect of indirect verbs 328
The structure of the perfect for stative verbs 330
Reported speech 331
Contents ..... xi
Lesson 19 ..... 342
The formation of the pluperfect of intransitive verbs 344
The formation of the pluperfect of indirect verbs 348
The formation of the pluperfect for stative verbs 350
Clauses introduced by the conjunctions before and until 350
Some patterns of word formation 352
Some useful sets of vocabulary 354

## Lesson 20

The form and use of the IIIrd subjunctive 370
The form and function of causative verbs 374
An alternative passive 380
An alternative Series III for transitive verbs 381
Indefinite clauses 381
A glossary of grammatical terms 392
Key to the exercises 398
Georgian-English vocabulary 421
Translations of literary texts 474
Index 481

## Preface to the second edition

This is the second edition of Georgian: A Learner's Grammar, which was initially prepared as Georgia was emerging from seventy years of Soviet rule and taking its first tentative steps along the far from rosy path to independence. Much has changed in the meantime, such as the shift in currency from the rouble (in Georgian $\partial ง \sigma_{j \infty} n$ maneti) to the lari (in Georgian mumn), rendering a review of the content of the various lessons essential. Such a review was made during the preparation of this edition.

The whole work has now been examined by two native Georgian speakers, Neli Chachibaia and Lia Abuladze, to both of whom I take this opportunity to express my deep appreciation for their efforts; and I do, of course, absolve them entirely from any remaining deficiencies. The inaccuracies that turned up over the years, as the book served as a basic text for the two Georgian courses (Elementary and Intermediate) offered at SOAS, or that were brought to my attention by communication from non-SOAS readers, have been corrected, and my thanks go to all who have contributed to this exercise in emendation. Of the two anonymous Georgian speakers who were asked by the publishers to assess the final manuscript, one in particular provided a number of comments, which led to a reassessment of some points, some additional explanatory observations and, with the approval of Neli Chachibaia, some further alterations.

It does, however, have to be acknowledged that in a work of this nature stylistic problems cannot be altogether avoided. This stems from the fact that, in accordance with the template followed in the design of this grammar, the dialogues and exercises in each lesson are constructed to illustrate the grammatical features discussed in that particular lesson. Since one is often working, particularly in the earlier lessons, with limited grammatical resources but still trying to produce full sentences, on many occasions these will be felt by native speakers to be stilted and artificial to a greater or lesser degree. Take as an example Lesson 6, where the formation of the future indicative of transitive verbs is explained. Such future formations are then practised throughout the dialogues and exercises, producing (in translation) as the first line of Dialogue 2: We are going out. Shall I put your coat on you? While the second
sentence is grammatically correct, stylistically it would be better to employ Georgian's aorist subjunctive to form the deliberative question Should I put your coat on you/Do you want me to put your coat on you?, but this mood is not introduced until Lesson 12. I have not, therefore, necessarily incorporated all the recommendations offered by the native speakers; and this also applies in some instances where older and/or non-standard (or non-colloquial) forms are explained and illustrated, which is done in order to avoid learners finding themselves perplexed should they come across a perhaps rare form in their further reading.

Two suggestions from two reviewers consulted by the publisher in advance of commissioning this second edition were that additional and more varied practice with verb forms be provided and that readers be given the opportunity to test the waters of Georgian literature. More verb-play has thus been designed, and each lesson is now provided with a proverb and a sample of literature in the form of either some verse or a short piece of prose; there are also three instances of a conundrum. In almost all cases these additions contain grammatical features that find their explanation only later in the book. For this reason, while readers might like, for example, to try to learn the verses by heart as they come across them, they should not expect to be able to analyse the literary texts fully until they have mastered (the bulk of) the grammar; these extra items are accompanied by self-contained vocabularies, with their translations being presented at the end of the book (pp. 474-80). Although no tapes are available as companion to this volume, those keen to find out how Georgian is articulated should visit the following website: http:// www.informatik.uni-frankfurt.de/~ifb/sw/georg/georgischlernen.htm/.

The Georgian font originally used was one privately designed. All dialogues, literary texts and exercise materials have now been re-set in the font known as Kartli, with the vocabularies and other Georgian sequences being presented in Amirani.

It is to be hoped that all of these alterations will serve to enhance this new edition and that it will continue to help ever widening audiences familiarise themselves with the multifarious joys of the Georgian language and its literature in the spirit of the Georgian proverb:

'You are as many persons as the number of languages you know.'
George Hewitt FBA
Professor of Caucasian Languages
School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS)
University of London

## Introduction

The Republic of Georgia, independent since 1991, incorporates the homeland of three of the four Kartvelian peoples: the Georgians proper, the Mingrelians and the Svans; the fourth people are the Laz, who live almost exclusively in modern-day Turkey. These peoples each have their own language, with only two of the Kartvelian (or South Caucasian) language family close enough to be mutually intelligible: Mingrelian and Laz. The Kartvelian language family has not been conclusively demonstrated to be related to any other language or language family spoken either today or in the past. Within Georgia, since c.1930, all Mingrelians and Svans have been classified collectively as 'Georgians', which means that all censuses conducted since that time have been fundamentally flawed. The 'Georgian' population of Georgia from the last Soviet census of 1989, namely 3,787,393 (equivalent to 70.1 per cent of Georgia's total population), conceals up to perhaps 1 million Mingrelians and around 50,000 Svans (plus 3,000 speakers of a north central Caucasian language called Bats).

Georgian is the only Kartvelian language to be written and taught - all Svans and most Mingrelians are schooled in Georgian and use it, or Russian, as their literary language. In May 2003, the results of the first post-Soviet census (conducted over a year earlier) were released and indicated a population of 4.4 million (not including the disputed territories of Abkhazia and South Ossetia). This figure, low in itself, is widely believed to overstate the actual size of the population.

Georgia's conversion to Christianity dates from the early fourth century, and it is thought that the first Georgian script was probably devised around AD 400 in order to facilitate the dissemination of Christian literature. Georgian thus has a rich literature spanning some fifteen centuries. Since its adaptation to a written form, Georgian has progressed through three alphabets. The one in use today is called $\mathrm{ab}_{\text {g@ }}$ mymo Mxedruli. It is quite simple to learn, and, once learnt, the spelling is straightforward, for each letter has its own pronunciation and each sound always corresponds to the same letter. In other words, the script is what is technically known as fully phonemic. There are no capital letters to worry about!

## How to use this course

For those unaccustomed to learning a new script and who wish to make a start on the language while easing themselves into the alphabet，the grammatical sections of the first three lessons are presented exclusively in transliteration， while the Georgian script is used in one exercise（しっるumzoдm savarjvišo in Lesson 1），in two in Lesson 2，and in all relevant exercises from Lesson 3 onwards．The texts added to each lesson in this new edition use the Georgian script $a b$ initio．

## Use of hyphens and bold

Where words can be easily split into smaller meaningful units，these divisions are indicated by hyphens in the first three lessons simply in order to give the reader some idea of the structure of words．Those who find these hyphens distracting should ignore them，just as those who wish to use the Georgian script from the very start can engage in extra exercises by transliterating the relevant words into Georgian script．In subsequent lessons verb roots are always given in bold type in the vocabularies，and hyphens are often used as well to illustrate the internal structure of these verbal forms．Neither bold type nor hyphens are used in the dialogues employing the Georgian script， where all Georgian words appear as they are written in the standard orthog－ raphy．

Georgian is not an easy language，as the reader will soon come to appre－ ciate．The central problem is the verb，which is almost certain to exceed in complexity anything that most learners will have experienced before．The difficulties arise not only because of the number of elements that the verb can accommodate（each with its own contribution to the overall meaning）， but also because of the high incidence of exceptions to general rules，all adding to the memory load on the part of the learner，and to the space allotted to lists of verb forms in grammars such as this．Those who enjoy a challenge should therefore derive much enjoyment from tackling the lessons that follow．

The twenty lessons comprising this language course present a fully compre－ hensive picture of the Georgian language－nothing essential has been omitted， though，given the limitations on space，much has had to be treated in a rather cursory fashion．Those who complete this course should，therefore，be in an excellent position to develop and widen their skills in the full knowledge that no major nasty surprises will be lying in wait to trip them up．

## Structure of the lessons

I have tried to introduce most of the details concerning non－verbal problems in the first half of the book，concentrating on the verb in the latter half．This is why，for example，we do not learn how to construct expressions such as

I love, I want, I have, I like, etc. until Lesson 13. The dialogues up to and including Lesson 10 tend to be rather short, whereas from Lesson 11 they are longer, and because of this each such lesson has only three dialogues. The exception is Lesson 20, where an extra dialogue is incorporated to demonstrate the layout of a letter written in Georgian; and also a supplementary dialogue is inserted in this lesson as an additional example from a literary source. Certain information is included in the lessons for the sake of completeness; readers may wish to skip over this and return to it at their leisure when the whole grammar has been completed and assimilated (for example, the full range of participles described in Lesson 17, or the patterns of word formation listed in Lesson 19). It should not be assumed that all lessons have the same degree of difficulty or that they can all be mastered in the same amount of time. The learner must take each lesson as it comes and should not try to rush forward before feeling fully confident about those areas of grammar already covered.

It is important to note that, for technical reasons, the ordering of items in the vocabularies to the dialogues follows the pattern:

12
34
56
rather than the more usual:
4
5
6

## Further reading

Though a good Georgian-English dictionary has yet to appear on the market, one such is being prepared by Prof. Donald Rayfield (Queen Mary College, London University), thanks to a grant from the Leverhulme Trust. For those with a knowledge of German, Kita Tschenkéli’s Georgisch-Deutsches Wörterbuch (in three parts, 1965, 1970, 1974, Amirani Verlag, Zürich, Switzerland) is a must. Equally, N. Nadareishvili, Elene Babunashvili and Heinz Fähnrich's Georgisch-Russisch-Deutsches Gesprächsbuch (1987, Ganatleba, Tbilisi, Georgia) would prove a most valuable acquisition, if indeed a copy could be located.

Other grammatical studies that may be of use are Kita Tschenkéli's Einführung in die georgische Sprache (1958, Amirani Verlag, 2 vols) and Howard Aronson's Georgian: A Reading Grammar (1982, Slavica, Columbus, Ohio; reprinted 1990). And the present author's Georgian: A Structural Reference Grammar appeared in 1995 (John Benjamins, vol. 2 in the London Oriental and African Language Library series). As for Readers, it is worth
mentioning the present author＇s A Georgian Reader（with Texts，Translation and Vocabulary）（SOAS，1996），which is designed to introduce learners to aspects of Georgia＇s regions and culture．There is also Howard I．Aronson and Dodona Kiziria＇s Georgian Language and Culture：a Continuing Course （Slavica，1999）．

## The Georgian alphabet

In case the learner should need to consult the older writing systems at some future stage，all three Georgian scripts are set out below．The only one that we will be using here is the third．Though this script possesses equivalents to all of the characters of its predecessors，five of the characters，given in brackets，are no longer in use today．

## The three scripts of Georgian

| Mrg（v）lovani | $\zeta$ | ＇L | 7 | $\delta$ | 7 | 7 | $b$ | F | 4 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| K＇utxovani | ᄃ | y | 3 | इ | 7 | T | $\square$ | F | $\square$ |
| Mxedruli | $\bigcirc$ | \％ | 3 | $\bigcirc$ | j | 3 | \％ | （e3） | の |
| Transcription | a | b | g | d | e | v | z | （ey） | t |
| Mrg（v）lovani | 1 | 9 | 7 | $\square$ | $\hbar$ | 0 | 0 | U | 4 |
| K＇utxovani | 1 | q | $\square$ | d | F | J | ш | บ | 4 |
| Mxedruli | 0 | 3 | m | ว | 6 | （e） | m | 3 | J |
| Transcription | i | k＇ | 1 | m | n | （y） | 0 | p＇ | ž |
| Mrg（v）lovani | ， | 1 | E | 4 | 0.4 | 中 | ＋ | $\Pi$ | 4 |
| K＇utxovani | $\downarrow$ | L | P | 4 | ㄴ | 甲 | $\dagger$ | $\square$ | 4 |
| Mxedruli | 的 | ， | 8 | （3） | ๒ | 9 | j | $\ldots$ | y |
| Transcription | r | s | $\mathrm{t}^{\prime}$ | （wi） | u | p | k | g | q＇ |
| Mrg（v）lovani | 9 | $h$ | $\mathrm{G}_{1}$ | － | Fi | 5 | 上 | Y | 又 |
| K＇utxovani | 4 | ＇ | T | 内 | \％ | 5 | $\underline{1}$ | $Y$ | \％ |
| Mxedruli | \％ | h | 0 | d | 6 | \} | b | （\％） | X |
| Transcription | š | č | c | j | c＇ | č＇ | x | （q） | j |
| Mrg（v）lovani | 7 | d |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| K＇utxovani | T | fion |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mxedruli | 3 | （\％） |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Transcription | h | （o：） |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## The glottal stop

The only general problem readers may experience will be with those sounds that are glottalised：a feature that lends a special sort of sharpness to the pronunciation．The feature approximates to the abrupt closing and opening of the vocal cords，which produces the glottal stop，the sound cockneys have traditionally made for the double $t t$ in words such as bottle，though the sound has spread alarmingly over recent years to replace $t$ between vowels in non－ standard colloquial British English．Glottalisation is represented in this course， as in the transcription of other languages，by an apostrophe following the letter concerned．

We shall now go through the thirty－three letters of the modern alphabet （งБठงбก anbani）letter by letter，defining each by form，name and pronunciation．

|  | edruli script | Approximate pronunciation |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | （ $\checkmark$ бо ani） | as English short $a$ in hat |
| 3 | （3）6n bani） | as English b |
| 3 | （8งбの gani） | as English $g$ |
|  | （＠m6ก doni） | as English d |
| $\bigcirc$ | （96๐ eni） | as short open English $e$ in pet |
| 3 | （3060 vini） | as English v |
| \％ | （\％〕бの zeni） | as English z |
| o | （0060 tani） | as English $t$ |
| $\bigcirc$ | （ 560 ini ） | as short English $i$ in hit |
| 3 | （ ${ }^{\text {abo k＇ani）}}$ | as English $k$ ，but glottalised |
| $\ldots$ | （muln lasi） | as English $l$ |
| a | （วงธก mani） | as English m |
| 6 | （6umon nari） | as English $n$ |
|  | （m6๐ oni） | as short English $o$ in hot |
| 3 | （30）̛○ p＇ari） | as English p，but glottalised |
| y | （yงбo žani） | as the letters si in vision |
| on | （mog rae） | as the rolled $r$ heard in Scottish English |
| し | （しゃธo sani） | as soft $s$ of English hiss |
| 8 | （8umot＇ari） | as English $t$ ，but glottalised |
| y | （\％6๐ uni） | similar to oo in English hook |
| O | （oुumo pari） | as English $p$ in pot |
| f | （Jงб๐ kani） | as English $k$ in kit |
| ¢ | （लu6n gani） | as the $c h$ sound in the Scottish pronunciation of the word loch but voiced |
|  | （yomo q＇ari） | as English $k$ ，but articulated further back in the mouth against the soft palate and glottalised．Learners will need to pay special attention to the pronunciation of this sound，which is often accompanied by strong friction．Once the pronunciation of the tongue－twister： |



Apart from the glottalised sounds in general and q'ari in particular, the pronunciation of individual sounds should present few difficulties. However, learners should be aware that a characteristic of Georgian is long sequences of consonants, especially at the start of words, e.g. зб@っ gnde edge (of knife),

 žġvlem you knead coarsely, ЭузмэЗзз č'q'vlep'av you squeeze (e.g. vegetable

 gvprckvni you peel us, o6Rbmb ančxls to the hot-tempered one, and so on.
Remember that Georgian has no long vowels. When a group of vowels occur together, they are pronounced separately, as described above. This means that any given word will consist of the same number of syllables as the number of vowels that it contains, for example:

|  | meekvse | sixth | has three syllables |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | gaaadvilebs | $X$ will facilitate $Y$ | has five syllables |
| Gonomumumo | naialagari | having returned from | has six syllables |
|  |  | summer pasture in the mountains |  |

## Notes on stress

With regard to the placement of stress (the syllable to be emphasised), the rule for words of two or three syllables is easy: stress falls on the first syllable,
 red. In words of four syllables or more, however, the stress is not so straightforward. In general the last but two syllable will continue to carry the stress,


 situation．However，some words of more than three syllables have the stress on the first syllable，e．g．mֹnom＠g／Lっдпм＠ว óriode／sámiode about two／three
 q’ávarjeni walking stick．

A precise explanation of fluctuation in stress placement has yet to be defined，and so again particular attention should be paid to this feature when listening to spoken Georgian．

Most surnames of Georgians proper（i．e．not Mingrelians or Svans）end in $-\eta_{3} \circ \mathrm{~m} \circ$－švili child or－do－je son（earlier heir）．Surnames of the first type are stressed on the first vowel of the ending，as though this were an independent
 the second type carry stress on the penultimate syllable（e．g．Эu6nd〕 šaníje，


## Handwritten script

In order that readers may have an idea of what handwritten Georgian looks like，some pages from Varlam Topuria＇s fumonymo fornol＠り＠っ6。kartuli c＇eris dedani Original（s）of Georgian Writing（1971，Tbilisi）are reproduced below．Learners must pay special attention to the variants that exist for the four letters：＠d，$m 1, m$ o and in r．Be careful not to confuse the variant -1 with $¢ \dot{\mathrm{~g}}$ or either form of $\varrho \mathrm{d}$ ．Be careful also not to confuse the variant －r with 6 x．

The sample handwritten text included here is set out on p．12；immedi－ ately below is how it would appear in printed form，followed by a trans－ literation and then its English translation．

```
%uдmumo an@ol
```







```
zamtari midis
jalian gay̌iut'da zamtari. agar ap'irebda c'asvlas. magram mzem tavisi
gait'ana. tbili sxivebi uxvad gamougzavna dedamic'as da tovli sul
daadno. mzem gaatbo mindor-velic. dedamic'idan amodioda balaxi,
q'vavili, y̌ejuili . . q'velas uxaroda gazapxulis mosvla.
```

Winter departs
Winter became very obstinate. It no longer intended to depart. But the sun did its thing. Liberally it sent warm rays to the earth and completely melted the snow. The sun warmed the meadow(s and) field(s). From the earth there began to rise grass, flower(s), young corn . . . Everyone rejoiced at the coming of spring.

George Hewitt FBA
Professor of Caucasian Languages
School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS)
University of London

## Handwritten examples

$$
\begin{aligned}
& J \text { v Jo jJJ } \\
& 7173 \% 27 \% \\
& 8 \Rightarrow 3282
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \rho p
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 3: 3333 \\
& \text { q "̈"q q } q \text { q90 }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0 \text { Oi OOOQ } \\
& j \quad \text {; jiz JJる } \\
& m \cdots \infty=m m \\
& \text { cl }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \partial \therefore \ddot{\partial} \partial \partial \partial \\
& 5 \quad \because, b 5 \quad 565 \\
& M \text { जim MMM } \\
& = \\
& \text { L L } \\
& \{3\} \\
& y \text { of ofy } \\
& \text { m ' 的 的 m mom } \\
& = \\
& h h \\
& 6 \text { : b b b } \\
& \theta \text { is } 0 \theta^{\circ} \quad \theta \theta \\
& y \approx \text { vin } y y \quad y m y \\
& 夕 \text { inoog g ogoz }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d \text { Jin ded }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y \quad \text { it } \\
& \eta \quad \vec{n} \dot{m}_{i} \eta \quad \eta \eta \eta \\
& h \quad 2 \ddot{p} p \text { if: } \quad \text { hh } \\
& 3: 40363 \\
& \text { d Jid ddd } \\
& \text { 6. } 2.96 \quad 666
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& b: \text { bi bbb } \\
& \text { f } 1055 \text { 555 }
\end{aligned}
$$

qudowho dnont dspnoto zutry ges budowhn. spoh
 owzalun zungestos. orongn bbizzfon
 orzan byp puspa. abya zosofor

 y3zasu ypsheps zobsopfoymet aluzps.

## Lesson 1

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- Some formal and informal methods of introducing yourself and others
- The nominative case of nouns
- Adjective agreement with nominative nouns
- Some locative expressions
- The formation of adverbs
- Asking questions (including some formal set expressions)
- The personal pronouns, possessive pronouns and adjectives
- The present tense forms of the verbs to be, come/go, run, be sitting, standing, lying


## Dialogue 1

Zurab (m) and Maia ( $f$ ) are friends and use the informal mode of address

MAIA: dila mšvidob-isa, zura(b)! ra cud-i amind-i-a! ZURAB: ga-mary̌-oba, maia, rogora $\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{r}$ ? sad mi-di-x-a-r? MAIA: madl-oba, k'arg-ada v-a-r. kalak-ši mi-v-di-v-a-r.

Maia: Good morning, Zurab! What bad weather it is!
Zurab: Hello, Maia, how are you? Where are you going?
MAIA: Thanks, I am well. I am going to town.

## Vocabulary

| dila | morning | mšvidob-isa | of peace | ra | what [+ adj.] |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| cud-i | bad | amind-i | weather | -a | it is |
| rogor(a)? | how? | x-a-r | you are | sad? | where? |
| mi-di-x-a-r | you go | madl-oba | thanks | k'arg-ad | well |
| v-a-r | I am | kalak-i | town | -sci | in, to, into |
| mi-v-di-v-a-r | I go |  |  |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

Irak'li (m) and Natela (f) use the formal mode of address

| IRAK'LI: |  | ga-marǰ-oba-t, natela! |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Natela: |  | ga-g-i-marǰ-o-t, irak'li! sad mi-di-x-a-r-t? |  |  |  |
| Irak'li: |  | sk'ola-ši mi-v-di-v-a-r. mama rogora-a? |  |  |  |
| Natela: |  | k'arg-ad. mšobl-eb-i sad a-r-i-an? |  |  |  |
| IRAK'LI: |  | saxl-ši a-r-i-an. dge-s ar mi-di-an kalak-ši. |  |  |  |
| IRAK'LI: |  | Vatela! |  |  |  |
| NATELA: |  | you, Ir | li! Whe | ou going? |  |
| Irak'li: |  | ing to s | l. How | ) father? |  |
| NATELA: |  | ere are | ur) par |  |  |
| IrAK'LI: |  | e at hom | They ar | ing to tow | n today. |
| Vocabulary |  |  |  |  |  |
| sk'ola | school | mama | father | mšobl-eb-i | parents |
| a-r-i-an | they are | saxl-i | house | dge-s | today |
| ar | not | mi-di-an | they go |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

A foreigner approaches a Georgian on the streets of Tbilisi and addresses him in the polite form

Note: elements in square brackets are not actually pronounced or written but are included to help readers understand the structure of the relevant sentences.

Foreigner: uk'acrav-ad, tkven kartv-el-i xom ar brjan-d-eb-i-t?
GEORGIAN: diax, me kartv-el-i g-a-xl-av-[v-]a-r-t.
FOREIGNER: ra k'arg-i-a! me inglis-el-i g-a-xl-av-[v-]a-r-t, da es čem-i col-i g-a-xl-av-t.

Georgian: jalian sasiamovno-a. sad mi-brjan-d-eb-i-t?
Foreigner: cent'r-ši mi-v-di-v-a-r-t, magram sad a-r-i-s, net'av?!

Foreigner: Excuse me, you wouldn't be a Georgian, would you?
Georgian: Yes, I am a Georgian.
Foreigner: Great [= How good it is]. I am English, and this is my wife.
Georgian: It is a great pleasure [to meet you]. Where are you going?
Foreigner: We are going to the centre, but where is it, pray?!

## Vocabulary

| uk'acrav-ad | excuse (me/us) | tkven | you (pl.) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| kartv-el-i | Georgian (person) | xom | speech element indicating |
| diax | yes |  | a tag-question |
| inglis-el-i | English (person) | me | $I$ |
| es | this (one) | da | and |
| col-i | wife | čem-i | my |
| sasiamovno | pleasant | jalian | very |
| cent'r-i | centre | mi-brjan-d-eb-i-t | you go |
| net'av | pray | magram | but |

## Greetings and introductions



## Grammar

## Citation form of nouns and adjectives

The nominative form of the noun - that given in dictionaries - is also the one used for the single (subject) noun accompanying such (intransitive) verbs as be and go. Some nouns have a root that ends in a vowel (e.g. sk'ola school), but the root for the majority of nouns ends in a consonant, in which case the nominative adds a final $\mathbf{i}$-vowel (e.g. col-i wife). A few nouns, usually proper names, have a root that ends in -i (e.g. the man's name ak'ak'i). Georgian has no gender distinctions (e.g. masculine, feminine, neuter). Adjectives (e.g. k'arg-i good, sasiamovno pleasant) are divided in the same way as nouns. Consonant-final adjectives add an -i agreement marker when accompanying nouns in the nominative (e.g. čem-i col-i my wife). Adjectives precede their nouns. Examples:

| (jalian) k'arg-i amind-i | (very) good weather |
| :--- | :--- |
| (čem-i) cud-i sk'ola | (my) bad school |
| (čem-i) kartv-el-i mšobl-eb-i | (my) Georgian parents |
| (čem-i) inglis-el-i col-i | (my) English wife |

## Locative expressions

English uses prepositions to indicate place/direction. Georgian puts the equivalent element after the noun, and these are called postpositions. These postpositions govern a variety of cases, some of them standing as separate words, others attaching directly to their nouns. For the time being the postposition -ši in, to, into can be thought of as either attaching directly to nouns with a vowel-final root (e.g. sk'ola-ši in school) or replacing the nominative -i of consonant-final roots (e.g. saxl-ši in the house). The same is true of -ze on in Dialogue 4. For example:

| kalak-ši | in the/a town | mšvidoba-ši | in peace |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| cent'r-ši | in the/a centre | saxl-ze | on the/a house |
| dro-ze | on/in time |  |  |

## Formation of adverbs

Adjectives with consonant-final roots replace the nominative agreement marker -i with the adverbial formant -ad (e.g. k'arg-ad well from k'arg-i good), while vowel-final roots just add -d (e.g. u-je-o-d sonless, as in $X$ grew old sonless/without a son). A few adverbs drop the final -d (e.g. čkar-a quickly, nel-a slowly, mag̀l-a high up). Examples:
cud-ad badly, poorly sasiamovno-d pleasantly

## Asking questions

Questions anticipating a yes/no answer are indicated simply by use of a risefall pitch on the final syllable of the verb without any alteration to the order of words in the sentence. Questions with a specific question word (such as sad? where?) simply place the question word (or phrase containing it) immediately in front of either the verb or, if it is present, the negative adverb ar not; the verb's stressed syllable has falling pitch. The invariant xom equates to tag-questions (i.e. leading questions anticipating the answer yes or no) in English. (Compare: xom mi-di-x-a-r? You are going, aren't you? with xom ar mi-di-x-a-r? You aren't going, are you?); again the verb's stressed syllable has falling pitch. Study these examples:

| inglis-el-i x-a-r-t? | Are you English? |
| :--- | :--- |
| kartv-el-i brjan-d-eb-i-t? | Are you Georgian? (or, to catch the extra |
|  | degree of politeness, Would you be |
|  | Georgian?) |
| k'arg-ada x-a-r? | Are you well? |
| sada x-a-r? | Where are you? |
| kalak-ši rat'om mi-v-di-v-a-r? | Why am I going to town? |
| xom k'arg-ada x-a-r? | You are well, aren't you? |
| cud-ad xom ara x-a-r? | You are not poorly, are you? |
| kalak-ši ar mi-di-an? | Aren't they going to town? |

## Consonant-final words

Consonant-final words (other than verbs), when preceding monosyllabic verbs and da and, regularly add a final a-vowel to ease pronunciation (e.g. rogora $\mathbf{x - a - r}$ ? How are you?, sada $\mathbf{x - a - r}$ ? Where are you?).

## Pronouns, possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns

The 1 st and 2 nd person pronouns (sing. $=I / m e$, you; $\mathrm{pl} .=$ we/us, you (pl.)) do not alter for case in the way that nouns and 3rd person pronouns do. The forms are:

|  | Singular | Plural |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1st person | me | čven |
| 2nd person | šen | tkven |

Since Georgian verbs agree with subjects (and direct objects, and indirect objects), personal pronouns such as these are regularly used only for purposes of stress or style.

Possessive adjectives (my, your, our) are formed (apart from the 1st person singular) from the above pronouns as follows:

|  | Singular | Plural |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1st person | čem-i | čven-i |
| 2nd person | šen-i | tkven-i |

When used without any accompanying noun, these forms function as possessive pronouns (mine, yours, ours).

The nominative form of the 3rd person pronoun is is (or igi) he, she, it (plural isi-n-i or igi-n-i). This form also serves as the demonstrative that one over there. There are two other demonstratives: es this (by me) and eg that (by you). es/eg/is function as both pronouns and adjectives (igi can only be a pronoun). As adjectives, es/eg/is can stand with either singular or plural nominative nouns (e.g. es saxl-i/saxl-eb-i this house/these houses). When used as demonstrative pronouns, es has the nominative plural ese-n-i these (ones), while eg is pluralised as ege-n-i those (ones by you).

The 3rd person possessive adjectival and pronominal forms for the demonstratives are: a-m-is-i this one's (plural a-ma-t-i) or mag-is-i that one's (by you) (plural maga-ti); or $\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{m}-\mathbf{i s - i}$ that one's over there (plural $\mathbf{i}-\mathrm{ma}-\mathbf{t} \mathbf{- i}$ ). If the initial $\mathbf{i}$ - is left off this last form, we have the personal possessive adjective/pronoun m-is-i meaning his, her( $s$ ), its (plural ma-t-i their( $s$ )). Examples:

```
a-m-is-i mama
a-m-is-i mšobl-eb-i
i-m-is-i col-i
i-ma-t-i kalak-i
mag-is-i saxl-i
maga-t-i saxl-i
```

this one's father
this one's parents
that one's wife
their (those ones') town
that (by you) one's house
those (by you) ones' house

## Formality

Close acquaintances use the 2nd person singular pronoun (and associated verb form) when chatting. More formal occasions require the use of the 2 nd person plural pronoun (and associated verb form), the verbal plural marker being sometimes extended to non-verbal forms (e.g. dila mšvidob-isa-t Good morning, lit. morning of peace). There are a few verbs reserved for a special degree of politeness.

## The present tense of to be

The present tense of the verb to be (known as the copula) conjugates thus:

| (me) | v-a-r | I am | (čven(a)) | v-a-r-t | We are |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| (šen(a)) | x-a-r | You (sing.) are | (tkven(a)) | x-a-r-t | You (pl.) are |
| (is/igi) | a-r-i(-s) | He, she, it is | (isini/igini) | a-r-i-an | They are |

Note: the subject pronouns are placed in brackets to remind you that they will only be used if required for emphasis, the final optional -a appears when they are immediately in front of their monosyllabic verb form.

The 3rd person singular has a short form -a, which attaches to the complement of the copula (e.g. es m-is-i saxl-i a-r-i(-s)/saxl-i-a This is X's house). In speech the final -s of the 3rd person singular is often omitted.

Inanimate 3rd person plural subjects do not usually impose their plurality on the verb, which thus stands in the 3rd person singular. If the verb is one that normally requires an animate subject, then, by a kind of animacy-transfer, an inanimate subject can be treated as animate and thus, if 3rd person plural, have its plurality indicated in the verb

## The verb of motion and similar formations

The verb to go conjugates thus:

| mi-v-di-v-a-r | I am going |
| :--- | :--- |
| mi-di-x-a-r | you (sing.) are going |
| mi-di-s | he, she, it is going |
| mi-v-di-v-a-r-t | we are going |
| mi-di-x-a-r-t | you (pl.) are going |
| mi-di-an | they are going |

The initial element mi- is known as a preverb, and it is this that necessitates the translation of this basic verb of motion as go. If we alter the preverb, the translation will be different too (e.g. mo-di-s $X$ is coming, še-di-s $X$ is going in, še-mo-di-s $X$ is coming in). The full range of preverbs will be given in the next lesson.

Clearly there are similarities of formation between the verb of motion and the present tense of to be. The present tense of four other common (though irregular) verbs that manifest parallel formations is set out below:

| mi-v-rb-i-v-a-r | I am running away |
| :--- | :--- |
| mi-rb-i-x-a-r | you (sing.) are running away |
| mi-rb-i-s | X is running away |
| mi-v-rb-i-v-a-r-t | we are running away |
| mi-rb-i-x-a-r-t | you (pl.) are running away <br> mi-rb-i-an |
| they are running away |  |
| $\mathrm{v}-\mathrm{dg}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{v}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{r}$ | I am standing |
| dg-a-x-a-r | you (sing.) are standing |
| dg-a-s | he, she, it is standing |
| $\mathrm{v}-\mathrm{dg}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{v}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{t}$ | we are standing |
| $\mathrm{dg}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{t}$ | you (pl.) are standing |
| $\mathrm{dg}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{an}$ | they are standing |


| v-zi-v-a-r | I am sitting |
| :--- | :--- |
| zi-x-a-r | you (sing.) are sitting |
| zi-s | he, she, it is sitting |
| v-sxed-v-a-r-t | we are sitting |
| sxed-x-a-r-t | you (pl.) are sitting |
| sxed-an | they are sitting |

Note: there are a very few verbs in Georgian whose root alters depending on whether the (intransitive) subject or (transitive) direct object is singular or plural (the verb for sitting in the above examples being one such).

| v-c'ev-[v-]a-r | I am lying prostrate |
| :--- | :--- |
| c'ev-x-a-r | you (sing.) are lying prostrate |
| c'ev-s | he, she, it is lying prostrate |
| v-c'ev-[v-]a-r-t | we are lying prostrate |
| c'ev-x-a-r-t | you (pl.) are lying prostrate |
| c'v-an-an | they are lying prostrate |

## Dialogue 4

Two girls, Diana and Vera, are chatting
DIANA: k'ino-ši mi-di-x-a-r?
VERA: ara. saavadmq'opo-ši mi-v-di-v-a-r. ik deda a-r-i(-s). av-ada-a.
DIANA: login-ši c'ev-s?
Vera: ara. savarjel-ze zi-s. šen rat'om dg-a-x-a-r mand?
DIANA: ak me imit'om v-dg-a-v-a-r, rom natela da ak'ak'i male mo-dian.
Vera: ege-n-i uk've ak a-r-i-an. ik balax-ze sxed-an. balax-i ra mc'vane-a!
DIANA: eg ra a-r-i(-s) xel-ši?
Vera: es ma-t-i surat-i-a.
DIANA: Are you going to the cinema?
Vera: No. I am going to the hospital. Mother is there. She is poorly.
DiANA: Is she (lying) in bed?
Vera: No. She is sitting in (on) an armchair. Why are you standing there?
DIANA: I am standing here for the reason that Natela and Ak'ak'i are coming soon.
VERA: Those you mention are already here. They are sitting over there on the grass. How green the grass is!
DIANA: What is that in (your) hand?
Vera: This is their picture.

| Vocabulary |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| k'ino | cinema | ara | no |
| saavadmq'opo | hospital | mother | (over) there |
| deda | bed | av-ad | poorly |
| login-i | on | savarjel-i | armchair |
| -ze | why? | šen | you (sing.) |
| rat'om? | for the reason | mand | there (by you) |
| imit'om | that | ak | here |
| rom | they come | male | soon |
| mo-di-an | grass | uk've | already |
| balax-i | what? | mc'vane | green |
| ra? | picture | xel-i | hand |
| surat-i |  |  |  |

## Proverb


White tooth, black heart
VOCABULARY

| ajomen | white | 3 bomo | tooth |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| gozo | black | ชข¢๐ | heart |

## Verse

(majbo)
JЈoддobs доуzьњъ $\jmath^{\text {bum, }}$





(Folk poem)
Note: a final a- or $\mathbf{0}$-vowel is often added in poetry to make up the number of syllables.

VOCABULARY

| juon [0]an | chicken | $3^{-0-y 300 m-L ~}$ | you love $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ${ }^{6} 0$ | tongue | дьемп@ьб | from on high |
|  | flying over | $2 \mathrm{~b}[\mathrm{u}$ ]mo | flank |
| Bomj $[0] \mathrm{mo}$ | thigh |  | rump |


| 3nlor]mo | neck |  | a little something |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| luporfjumo (0) | collarbone | ony | if |
| Lord[9]mon(3) | chine (too) | (@u-) $\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{y} \mathrm{\nu O}-\mathrm{o}^{3}$ | you add $X$ to $Y$ |
| Roдanzol | for me | $)^{40}$ | this too |
|  | it is enough |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Write out the present tense of the verb to be (known as the copula). Readers should find the answer within the body of this lesson.

2 Work out the following anagrams:
(a) oy̌artagbam
(e) lajani
(b) damini
(f) gramma
(c) balodam
(g) šlobembi
(d) ragroo xrat
(h) nagnad

3 Complete the following words (the number of underlines represent the places to be filled):
(a) inglis
(e) savarj
_-_
(b) madl
(f) saavadm
(c) mivdi___(_)
(g) sura_-
(d) mšvid
(h) dila mš


4 Find the equivalents of the following adjectives and adverbs:
(a) bad
(f) our
(b) my
(g) slowly
(c) well
(h) their (= of those yonder)
(d) pleasant
(i) poorly
(e) that (by you)

5 Translate the following into Georgian:
(a) a good school
(e) your (pl.) picture
(b) our house
(f) my parents
(c) on the grass
(g) in town
(d) her bed
(h) what a good bed it is!

6 Translate the following into English:








7 Translate the following sentences into Georgian:
(a) Today I am going to town.
(b) Where are you? I am sitting here on the bed.
(c) Irak'li and Zurab are going to the cinema.
(d) Where are you going? We are going to the hospital.
(e) These are my parents.
(f) Where are your houses? [Remember to use 3rd person singular of the verb!]
(g) Why are they lying on the grass?
(h) We are sitting - they are standing.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

8 By referring to the forms given above for the present tense of the verb 'to be', the verb of motion and the verbs of parallel formation, select those that correspond to the underlined sequences below and practise their pronunciation:

Are you (pl.) over there? Yes, we are here. Are you (pl.) sitting?
No, we are standing, but they are sitting. Mother is in town, and we are going there. Yes, I see that you (pl.) are running somewhere.
They are standing on the grass, but $\underline{I}$ am sitting in the car. Why are you lying on the bed? Because I am ill. Who is coming tomorrow?
We are coming tomorrow. Why are they running to town? Because their father is (lying) in hospital. Are his brothers (lying) in hospital too? No, they are at home. Who is coming in to the house? Your friends are coming in to the house. Why are you running towards them? I am not running towards them, $\underline{I}$ am standing by the door. They are standing here too.

## Lesson 2

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The plural of nouns
- Dative and genitive case forms
- Adjective agreement with datives and genitives
- The form of demonstrative adjectives when declined
- Directional preverbs
- Numbers (cardinals and ordinals)
- Telling the time
- Days of the week
- Months of the year
- The present tense of the verbs stand up, lie down, sit down


## Dialogue 1

Two men, Shota and Zaza, discuss plans for the afternoon
Sнота: uk'acrav-ad, zaza, romel-i saat-i-a?
ZAZA: am c'ut-ši or-i-a (or-i saat-i-a). rat'om?
Shota: imit'om rom sam-is naxevar-ze ga-v-di-v-a-r-t.
ZaZA: sad mi-di-x-a-r-t?
Shota: sadgur-ze mi-v-di-v-a-r-t. mosk'ov-is mat'arebel-i še-mo-di-s, roca sam-s a-k'l-i-a (u-k'l-i-a) at-i c'ut-i.
ZAZA: vin ča-mo-di-s? da rodis mo-di-x-a-r-t saxl-ši?
SнотA: čven-i kališvil-is megobr-eb-i ča-mo-di-an. saxl-ši mo-v-di-v-a-r-t xut-is xut c'ut-ze.

Vocabulary

| romel-i? | which? | saat-i | clock, watch, hour |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| am | this (obl.) | c'ut- i | minute |
| or-i | 2 | rat'om? | why? |
| sam-i | 3 | naxevar-i | half |
| sam-is | of 3 | naxevar-ze | at half |
| ga-v-di-v-a-r-t | we go out | sadgur-i | station |
| mosk'ov-i | Moscow | mat'arebel-i | train |
| še-mo-di-s | X comes in | roca/rodesac | when |
| a-k'l-i-a/u-k'l-i-a | X lacks Y | at-i | 10 |
| vin? | who? | ča-mo-di-s | X comes (down) |
| rodis? | when? | kališvil-i | daughter |
| kališvil-is | daughter's | megobar-i | friend |
| megobr-eb-i | friends | xut-i | 5 |

## Dialogue 2

Two women, Dali and Lia, are discussing Lia's child's birthday
DALI: rodis a-r-i(-s) mag bavšv-is dabadeb-is dge?
LiA: am-is-i dabadeb-is dge otx-i ivlis-i-a.
Dali: otx ivlis-s romel saat-ze dg-eb-a?
LIA: adre dg-eb-a - švid saat-ze/švid-ze. da gvian c'v-eb-a - roca at-s a-k'l-i-a (u-k'l-i-a) xut-i c'ut-i.

Vocabulary

| mag | that (by you obl.) | bavšv-i | child |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| dabadeba | birth | dabadeb-is dge | day of birth |
| otx-i | 4 | ivlis-i | July |
| romel saat-ze? | at what time? | dg-eb-a | X gets up |
| adre | early | švid-i | 7 |
| gvian | late | c'v-eb-a | X lies down |

## Dialogue 3

Two men, Soso and Guram, are talking about days and travel
Soso: dge-s ra dge-a?
GURAM: dgee-s or-šabat-i-a.

| Soso: | maš xval sam-šabat-i-a, da am k'vira-ši sam-šabat-s mi-v-di-v-a-r zg̀va-ze. |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| GURAM: uk'an rodis ča-mo-di-x-a-r? |  |  |  |
| Soso: | im k'vira-ši, p'arask'ev-s, oc agvist'o-s. |  |  |
| Vocabulary |  |  |  |
| dge-s | today (dat. of day) | dge | day |
| or-šabat-i | Monday | maš | in that case |
| xval | tomorrow | sam-šabat-1 | Tuesday |
| k'vira | week, Sunday | zġva | sea |
| uk'an | back | im | that (over there, obl.) |
| p'arask'ev-i | Friday | oc-i | 20 |
| agvist'o | August |  |  |

## Grammar

## The plural of nouns

The plural is indicated by attaching -eb- to the root. This plural marker is then followed by the appropriate case marker. Case markers are the same in the plural as in the singular, and so (all) nominative plurals end in -eb-i. Nouns with vowel-final roots just add the plural form if the roots end in the vowels $\mathbf{e}, \mathbf{o}, \mathbf{u}$ (e.g. tve-eb-i months, brbo-eb-i crowds, bu-eb-i owls). ${ }^{1}$ If the root-final vowel is a, this disappears in the plural (e.g. da sister vs d-eb-i sisters, mela fox vs mel-eb-i foxes). For consonant-final nouns the plural form just stands after the root-final consonant (e.g. xel-eb-i hands). Some nouns lose the vowel in the preceding syllable (e.g. c'q'l-eb-i waters from c'q'al-i water, kveq'n-eb-i countries, worlds from kveq'ana). We have already met similar roots; they are repeated here, and from now on such disappearing vowels will be indicated by placing them in square brackets: savarj[e]l-i vs savarjl-eb-i armchair(s), mat'areb[e]l-i vs mat'arebl-eb-i $\operatorname{train}(s)$, megob[a]r-i vs megobr-eb-i friend(s), naxev[a]r-i vs naxevr-eb-i half (halves), plus, in its pronominal form, rom[e]l-i vs roml-eb-i which one(s)?.

[^0]
## The dative case

This case is indicated by -s, which is attached directly to the root of all nouns, regardless of whether they end in a vowel or consonant (e.g. tve-s, brbo-s, bu-s, t'ramvai-s, da-s, xel-s, savarjel-s). In the plural the ending is, of course, -eb-s (e.g. d-eb-s sisters).

The dative singular of the 3rd person personal pronouns (he/she/it) and demonstrative pronouns (this one and both forms of that one) also ends in -s (e.g. ma-s, ama-s, maga-s, ima-s), but the plurals are different (ma-t, ama-t, maga-t, ima-t). Though the 1st and 2nd person personal pronouns do not alter for case when construed with verbs, and although postpositions are just added to three of the pronominal forms given in Lesson 1 (šen-ze on you (sing.), čven-ze on $u s$, tkven-ze on you (pl.)), the form to which these postpositions are attached for the 1st person singular pronoun is the same as that which appears in the 1st person singular possessives (e.g čem-ze on me).

The dative has a variety of functions, which will be described as they are encountered in the dialogues. The postpositions -ši in and -ze on actually govern the dative, though the dative's -s is lost before the initial sound of these postpositions. In the personal pronoun (but not in the demonstratives) this final -s does not delete (e.g. ma-s-ze on $X$, ma-s-ši in $X$ as compared to ama-ze on this, ima-ši in that. Compare also the presence of -s- in vi-s-ze? on whom? with the lack of -s- in ra-ze? on what?). It marks the noun $X$ with the verb $X$ lacks $Y$, and it is used, as illustrated below, to indicate on with days of the week and dates that incorporate both the number of the day and the name of the month.

## The genitive case

The case ending is, in most instances, -is. Most roots ending in the vowels e or a lose these vowels in the genitive singular (e.g. tv-is, d-is); note however that deda and mama as titles (Mother and Father) have genitives in deda$\mathbf{s} /$ mama-s (as do a-stem proper names such as natela and šota; e.g. natela-s/šota-s kališvil-i Natela's/Shota's daughter, as well as a number of common nouns in -a such as mela fox and cisart'q'ela rainbow, which will be indicated in the vocabularies by a bracketed (a)). When these are not used as titles the genitive is normal (ded-is/mam-is). If the root ends in $\mathbf{u}$ (or the rare $\mathbf{i}$ ), then it is the genitive which loses its $\mathbf{i}$-vowel, thus making the genitive singular indistinguishable from the dative singular (e.g. bu-s, t'ramvai-s), though monosyllables in -u may take the normal ending (e.g. bu-is ${ }^{1}$ ). There are a few proper names ending in -e of which this is also true

[^1](e.g. p'et're-s), as well as some common nouns in -e (e.g. t'ire dash, whose genitive is $\mathbf{t}$ 'ire-s). These will be indicated in vocabularies by bracketed $\mathbf{e}$. The same is generally true of $\mathbf{0}$-stem nouns (e.g. brbo-s, žolo-s of raspberry), but dro time has both dro-s and dro-is (a choice that is available to other monosyllables in -o), whilst g̀ino wine, a very important word in Georgia, has $\dot{\mathbf{g} v i n}$-is. If a vowel is lost in the plural, then this occurs in the genitive singular too (e.g. savarjl-is compared with non-syncopating xel-is). In the plural the ending for nouns is always -eb-is. The main use of the genitive is to mark possession, the possessor preceding the possessed. The case is also required by some of the postpositions, such as -tvis for (e.g. natela-s-tvis for Natela).

The genitive forms of the 3rd person personal and demonstrative pronouns are the stems of the possessive adjectives discussed in Lesson 1. If the adjectival agreement marker -i is removed from those adjectives, the genitives of the pronouns result: m-is, am-is, mag-is, im-is, and in the plural ma-t, ama-t, maga-t, ima-t, which do not differ from the dative forms. In fact, these forms serve as the genitive, dative and ergative plural for the relevant pronouns. The interrogative pronoun vin who? has a parallel adjectival form $\mathbf{v}$-is-i whose (from the genitive $\mathbf{v}$-is of whom?), while ra what? has r-is-i what's? (from genitive r-is of what?).

## Declension of the demonstrative adjectives

In Lesson 1 we met the demonstrative adjectives es, eg, is. These are the forms that accompany nouns in the nominative (sing. or pl.). When they accompany nouns in any other case, we need to use the so-called oblique forms, which are (for both singular and plural nouns) respectively: am, mag, $\mathbf{i m}$ (for example: es k'ino this cinema (nominative) becomes am k'ino-s (dative or genitive); eg g̀vino that (by you) wine (nominative) becomes mag g̀vino-s (dative); is žolo-eb-i those (yonder) raspberries (nominative) becomes im žolo-eb-is (genitive)).

## Adjective agreement with datives and genitives

Adjectives with vowel-final roots do not alter. Consonant-final adjectives have no ending with dative nouns but with genitives keep the same -i described earlier for agreement with nominatives (e.g. k'arg kališvil-s good daughter (dative) vs k'arg-i kališvil-is of a/the good daughter (genitive), romel megobr-eb-s? which friends? (dative) becomes romel-i megobr-eb-is? of which friends? (genitive)). With dative nouns the 1st and 2nd person possessive adjectives regularly end in -s (e.g. čem-s/šen-s/čven-s/tkven-s kališvil-(eb-)s my/your/our/your (pl.) daughter(s) (dative)).

## Preverbs

The original function of preverbs, and the one they retain with verbs expressing motion, was to indicate direction. In Lesson 1 we met mi- there (motion) and mo- here (motion). The following list gives the directional meanings of all the preverbs. mo- may be added to indicate 'hitherness', which in Modern Georgian means motion towards speaker or hearer:

| Simplex |  | Complex |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| a- | up | a-mo- |
| ga(n)- | out | ga-mo- |
| še- | in | še-mo- |
| ča- | down into | ča-mo- |
| ga(r)da- | across, through | ga(r)d-mo |
| mi- | thither | mi-mo- |
| c'a- | away | c'a-mo- |
| da- | down | [da-mo-] |
| mo- | hither | - |

The elements shown above in round brackets are found in a few archaic forms. The first five pairs in this list (plus mo-) can be substituted for miin either of the two verbs of motion given in Lesson 1 to produce the expected meanings. mi-mo- is the equivalent of to and fro. c'a-/c'a-mo- are not found in the present (or its derivatives, the imperfect and present subjunctive), whilst elsewhere c'a- accompanies the basic verb of motion for the simple meaning go, and parallel forms with $\mathbf{~ m i}$ - imply not simply going but actually reaching the destination. da- with the verbs of motion in Lesson 1 does not mean down but rather going/running (on a regular basis), e.g. sk'ola-ši da-di-s rva saatze, $X$ regularly goes to school at 8 o'clock. Today the combination da-mois found with only one verbal root, as in da-mo-k'id-eb-ul-eba dependence (and its opposite: da-mo-u-k'id-eb-l-oba independence). ča-mo-di-s can be used to render the English $X$ is coming (in addition to $X$ is coming down into), if the journey is from another town.

## Numbers

| ert-i | $1^{*}$ | t-ert-met'-i | 11 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| or-i | 2 | t-or-met'-i | 12 |
| sam-i | 3 | cam-[m]et'-i | 13 |
| otx-i | 4 | t-otx-met'-i | 14 |
| xut-i | 5 | t-xut-met'-i | 15 |
| ekvs-i | 6 | t-ekvs-met'-i | 16 |
| švid-i | 7 | čvid-met'-i | 17 |


|  |  |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | :--- | ---: |
| rva | 8 | t-vra-met'-i $[s i c]$ | 18 |
| cxra | 9 | cxra-met'-i | 19 |
| at-i | 10 | oc-i | 20 |
| oc-da-ert-i | 21 | oc-da-at-i | 30 |
| oc-da-t-ert-met'-i | 31 | or-m-oc-i | 40 |
| or-m-oc-da-at-i | 50 | or-m-oc-da-cxra-met'-i | 59 |
| sam-[m-]oc-i | 60 | sam-[m-]oc-da-at-i | 70 |
| otx-m-oc-i | 80 | otx-m-oc-da-at-i | 90 |
| as-i | 100 | as ert-i | 101 |
| or-as-i | 200 | or-as-oc-i | 220 |
| cxra-as-i | 900 | at-as-i | 1,000 |
| at-as-at-i | 1,010 | or-i at-as-i | 2,000 |
| rva at-as-i | 8,000 | at-i at-as-i | 10,000 |
| as-i at-as-i | 100,000 |  |  |
| ert-i milion-i | one million |  |  |
| ert-i miliard-i | one billion |  |  |

* The word cali is used when reference is to one of a natural pair (e.g. cali xeli/pexi/ tvali/q'uri one hand/foot/eye/ear).

From 20 to 99 the system is based on units of 20 , so that 50 is literally ' $(2 \times 20)+10$ ', and 59 is ' $(2 \times 20)$ and $(10-9)$ more'. From 11 to 19 the forms are analysable as ' $10+$ unit(s) more', so that 11 is literally ' $10+$ one more'. From these cardinals the ordinals from 2 onwards are produced by the circumfix (i.e. combination of prefix and suffix) me-root-e (' 1 st' being p'irvel$\mathbf{i}$, though where ' 1 st' is found in a compound number me-ert-e is also possible):

| me-or-e | 2nd | me-rv-e | 8th |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | ---: |
| me-cxr-e | 9 th | me-cxra-met'-e | 19th |
| me-oc-e | $20 t h$ | oc-da-p'irvel-i/oc-da-me-ert-e* | 21 st |
| oc-da-me-at-e | 30 th | me-or-m-oc-e | 40th |
| me-otx-m-oc-e | 80th | otx-m-oc-da-me-t-ert-met'-e | 91 st |

* There might be a preference today for the latter form of the ordinal only, but see Kita Tschenkéli's Einführung in die georgische Sprache (p. 238) for both alternatives.

When a cardinal (or indeed any quantifying expression) qualifies a noun, the noun stands in the singular.

## Telling the time

In reply to the question romel-i saat-i-a? What time is it?, if an exact hour is the correct reply, either put the appropriate cardinal in front of saat-i-a or simply add the 3rd person of the verb to be to the appropriate cardinal (e.g.
at-i saat-i-a/at-i-a it is 10 (o'clock)). Note that 1 o'clock in any expression of time uses the ordinal (e.g. p'irvel-i(saat-i)-a it is 1 (o'clock)). From one minute up to half past the hour, state the correct number of minutes (or the word naxev[a]r-i for half) preceded by the genitive case of the coming hour (e.g. švid-is at-i(c'ut-i)-a/naxev[a]r-i-a it is 10 (minutes)/half past 6). From 29 up to one minute before the hour, use the verb a-k'l-i-a/u-k'l-i-a $X$ lacks $Y$ with the hour in the dative and the appropriate number of minutes in the nominative (e.g. rva-s a-k'l-i-a/u-k'l-i-a oc-da-ert-i c'ut-i It is 21 minutes to 8 ).

To express 'at [time]' use the postposition -ze for full hours or when in English the word past occurs (e.g. romel saat-ze? at what time?, sam (saat)ze at 3 (o'clock), otx-is t-xut-met'(c'ut)-ze at 15 (minutes) past 3, rv-is naxev[a]r-ze at half past 7 ). For at $X$ to the hour simply add roca when to the appropriate description of this time (e.g. roca p'irvel-s a-k'li-i-a/u-k'l-ia at-i (c'ut-i) at 10 (minutes) to 1 ). When listing a timetable, the past hour with however many minutes up to 59 is used (e.g. t-ert-met' saat-ze da or-m-oc-da-cxra-met' c'ut-ze at 11.59). Note the simple dative in ra dro-s? at what time?, am/im dro-s at this/that time.

## Days of the week

| k'vira | Sunday | or-šabat-i | Monday |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| sam-šabat-i | Tuesday | otx-šabat-i | Wednesday |
| xut-šabat-i | Thursday | p'arask'ev-i | Friday |
| šabat-i | Saturday |  |  |

k'vira also serves as week; to avoid confusion k'vira-dge can be used for Sunday. For the expression on a certain day, simply put the day in question into the dative (e.g. šabat-s on Saturday).

## Months of the year

The Western European calendar is still in use in Georgia, but in poetry and some older texts traditional month names may be encountered.

| ianv[a]r-i | January | ivlis-i | July |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| teberv[a]l-i | February | agvist'o | August |
| mart'-i | March | sekt'emb[e]r-i | September |
| ap'ril-i | April | okt'omb[e]r-i | October |
| mais-i | May | noemb[e]r-i | November |
| ivnis-i | June | dek'emb[e]r-i | December |

The expression in a particular month is exactly the same as the use of the locative described in Lesson 1: (mais-ši in May, romel tve-ši? in which month?). For the expression on such-and-such a date put the month into the dative and place in front of it the ordinal p'irvel for the 1st, otherwise
the appropriate cardinal (e.g. p'irvel ivlis-s on the 1st of July, t-ert-met' noemb[e]r-s on the 11th of November). If the month is understood and one simply wants to say on the Nth, use p'irvel-i or the appropriate cardinal with the postposition -ši in (e.g. p'irvel-ši on the 1st, oc-da-cxra-ši on the 29th).

Year itself is $\mathbf{c}$ '[e]l-i. The expression in such-and-such a year places this noun in the dative preceded by the appropriate cardinal (e.g. at-as cxra-as otx-m-oc-da-t-ert-met' c'el-s in the year 1991, romel c'el-s? in what year?). If the word for year is omitted, then the postposition -ši is again employed.

## The present tense of the verbs stand up, sit down, lie down

In Lesson 1 the so-called stative verbs be standing, sitting, lying were given. Compare with those the equivalent dynamic verbs:

| v-dg-eb-i | I am standing/ getting up | v-ǰd-eb-i | I am sitting down |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| dg-eb-i | you (sing.) are . . | ǰd-eb-i | you (sing.) are . . |
| dg-eb-a | $X$ is | ǰd-eb-a | $X$ is |
| $v-$ dg-eb-i-t | we are | $v$-sxd-eb-i-t | we are |
| dg-eb-i-t | you (pl.) are . | sxd-eb-i-t | you (pl.) are. |
| dg-eb-i-an | they are . . | sxd-eb-i-an | they are . . |
|  | $v-c ' v-e b-i$ | I am lying down |  |
|  | c'v-eb-i | you (sing.) are . . |  |
|  | c'v-eb-a | X is . . |  |
|  | $v-c ' v-e b-i-t$ | we are. |  |
|  | c'v-eb-i-t | you (pl.) are . . |  |
|  | c'v-eb-i-an | they are . . . |  |

## Dialogue 4

Shukia and Leila, two sisters, are discussing times

ShUKIA: ama-g̀am romel saat-ze c'v-eb-i?
Leila: daaxloebit t-or-met'-is t-xut-met'(c'ut)-ze. rat'om?
ShuKia: imit'om rom xval adre v-dg-eb-i - roca ekvs-s a-k'l-i-a xut-i c'ut-i. sad-gac mi-v-di-v-a-r.
Leila: ui, daxe, is bič'-eb-i rat'om sxed-an svel balax-ze?
ShUKIA: albat imit'om rom ik sk'am-i ar a-r-i(-s). exla uk've dg-eb-i-an.
LeILA: ra-ši-a sakme?

Vocabulary

| ama-g.am | tonight | daaxloebit | approximately |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| sad-g.ac | somewhere | ui | ooh |
| daxe | look at $X$ | bič'-i | lad |
| svel-i | wet | albat | probably |
| sk'am-i | seat | exla/axla | now |
| uk've | already | ra-ši? | in what? |
| sakme | business | ra-ši-a sakme? | what's going on? |

## Dialogue 5

Sopik'o questions her sister Tamrik'o about some numbers and dates

| SOPIK'O: | c'elic'ad-ši ra-mden-i dge-a? |
| :---: | :---: |
| TAMRIK'O: | čveulebriv sam-as sam-[m-]oc-da-xut-i, nak'ian c'elic'ad-ši k'i sam-as sam-[m-]oc-da-ekvs-i. |
| SOPIK'O: | mama-čven-is dabadeb-is dge rodis a-r-i(-s)? |
| TAmRIK'O: | ekvs mart'-s. ekvs-i mart'-i c'el-s p'arask'ev-i-a. |
| Sopik'o: | k 'vir-is bolo dge romel-i-a? |
| TAMRIK'O: | an šabat-i-a, an k'vira(-dge). |
| Sopik'o: | sam-jer rva ra-mden-i-a? |
| TAmRIK'O: | sam-ǰer rva da agretve rva-jer sam-i oc-da-otx-i-a. |
| Sopik 'o: | čven-i jma sc'rap-ad da-rb-i-s? |
| TAMRIK'O: | ho, saat-ši t-or-met'-i mil-is sisc'rap-it. |

## Vocabulary

| c'elic'ad-i | year (astronomical) | ra-mden-i? | how many? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| čveulebriv(ad) | usually | nak'ian-i | leap- |
| k'i | however | c'el-s/c'leuls | this year |
| bolo | last | an ... an | either . . or |
|  |  |  | (if the second alternative |
|  |  |  | is another way of |
|  |  |  | referring to the first, anu may be used instead of the second an) |
| -jer | times | agretve | also |
| jmaǰ | brother | sc'rap-ad | quickly |
| ho | yes (casual) | mil-i | mile |
| sisc'rap-it | at a speed |  |  |

## Names denoting common relationships and possessives

The possessive adjectives relating to mama father and deda mother (plus a few other names denoting relationships) are placed after the noun. The possessive is then incorporated into the previous word, and only the possessive component changes for case (compare deda-čem-i my mother (nom.) with deda-čem-is of my mother (gen.) and deda-čem-s to my mother (dat.)).

## Proverb


For a lazy person every day it is a holiday

## VOCABULARY

| \%u¢̇ıugo | lazy | -m3n | for |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ymz[刀]mo | every | @¢0 | day |
|  | workless | - | $X$ is |

## Verse

```
os_6s6s (s) (Lullaby)
```



```
оздбь6обьм,
```



```
оззбьбобьм,
x,2m
оззбьбобьм,
```



```
os_6ง6пбьм,
```



```
os_бง6обьм,
дьбломд̈млдо дм@оьб,
оздбьбобьм,
домо дмьдззп д"ŋ@опьм,
озбььбоงбьм,
```



```
оззбьбобьm,
```



```
оззбзбобьм.
(Traditional)
```

Note: the term for 'lullaby' is made up of the vocative of $\Omega \Delta$ 'violet' and an affectionate
 this latter can also serve by itself in the sense of 'lullaby'.

VOCABULARY

| no | violet | 6งちゃ（） | mum；lullaby |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3um＠ | rose | （＠u－）$n-$ dn6－9 | you go to sleep |
|  | darling！ | 300＇m | yet |
|  | it dawns |  | star |
| －－дm－en－l | it rises | donzuóng | moon |
|  | it takes fright | дงбu๐mb［9］m＠ | luminary |
| дм－¢о－レ | it comes | domo | sleep |
| дm－z－৩－ da $^{\text {－}}$ | you bring $X$ | 8అ＠ | knapsack |
| טau | this（dative） | Ryan | my |
|  | lad | （20－） －$^{\text {－}}$－ 06 | you＇ll take $X$ to $Y$ |
| azumの | eye | （30－）$y-33^{3}-3^{3}$ | you fill $X$ for $Y$ |

## Exercises

1 Write out side by side the present tense of the stative and dynamic pairs of verbs meaning（a）be sitting vs sit down，（b）be standing vs stand up， （c）be lying（prostrate）vs lie down．Readers should find the answer within the body of this lesson．

2 Work out the following anagrams（which are based on material contained in this lesson）：
（a） $\mathrm{lm} 33^{\circ}$ o̊ㅇ
（e） 3 ＂פ 3 мм

（f）$ง$ ）

（g） $3^{\circ}$ мо
（d）smozs gast．j
（h）œ๐ßวœодд

3 Fill in the gaps and translate the following：
（a）uk＇
＿＿r＿＿a
（e） $\mathrm{r}_{-}$－ $\mathrm{s} \quad$＿axe＿a＿z＿
（b）o＿x＿o＿＿a＿e＿vr＿＿et＇＿
（f）d＿a＿－oe＿－t
（c）＿a＿＿re＿1＿b＿
（g）＿＿me＿i s＿＿ti＿？
（d）s＿de＿i＿
（h）d＿mo＿k＇＿＿e＿1＿＿a

4 Find or work out the equivalent of：
（a）20th；on the 20th
（f）when？
（b）Thursday；on Thursday
（g）February；in February； on the 20th February
c）brothers
（h）halves
（d）daughter
（e）probably

5 Express the following times in answer to the question romeli saatia？ What time is it？．Then give the same times in answer to the question romel saatze？At what time？（a）conventionally，and（b）as though reading the information from a timetable：
(a) 01.00
(e) 20.32
(b) 10.18
(f) 12.10
(c) 15.30
(g) 08.59
(d) 00.50
(h) 23.15

6 Translate the following into English:

『зэдолб








7 Translate the following into Georgian:
(a) That (over there) child's mother is my father's friend.
(b) Who is sitting down on that wet seat over there? Your three friends are not sitting down - they are already sitting on it.
(c) On what day are you going to the sea? We are going on Wednesday the 3rd June. The 3rd? Yes, the 3rd.
(d) When do you get up? I get up at 20 (minutes) to 8 .
(e) Who is coming to our houses on the 25 th December?
(f) For whom are you sitting on that chair? I am sitting here for my mother.
(g) Where are you going at a quarter to four? I am going home at that time.
(h) On whose chairs are those (over there) lads sitting? They are not sitting on chairs, they are lying on your beds.

8 Answer the question rodis daibade(t)? When were you born?, beginning with the verb davibade I was born, e.g.:
davibade tertmet' noembers atas cxraas ormocdacxra c'els I was born on the 11th November 1949

## Lesson 3

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- Giving your age and asking someone theirs
- The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs
- The instrumental case
- Adjective agreement with the instrumental
- More postpositions
- The past tense of 'to be', the basic verb of motion 'to come', the stative forms be sitting, standing, lying and the dynamic equivalents sit down, stand up, lie down
- Subject agreement markers on the verb


## Dialogue 1

Dareǰan and Tinatin are two women who have been friends for some time but decide there are things they have not yet discovered about each other

DAREJ̌AN: did-i xan-i-a(, rac) čven megobr-eb-i v-a-r-t da čem-tvis saint'ereso-a ra-gac - bodiš-i magram ra-mden-i c'l-isa x-a-r?
Tinatin: me oc-da-ekvs-i (26) c'l-isa v-a-r - čem-i dabadeb-is c'el-i atas cxra-as sam-[m-]oc-da-ekvs-i (1966) a-r-i(-s). šen ra-mden-i c'l-isa $\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{r}$ ?
DAREJ̌AN: samc'uxaro-d, me uk've or-m-oc-da-or-isa (42) v-a-r. šen-s oj̆ax-ši ra-mden-i da=jma a-r-i(-s)?
Tinatin: xut-i da=jma v-a-r-t. čem-i jma, merab-i, q’vela-ze upros-i-a. igi čem-ze upros-i-a or-i c'l-it. čem-i meore jma, durmišxan-i, čem-ze umcros-i-a ert-i c'l-it. nani da rusudan-i t'q'up'-i d-eb-i a-r-i-an. isi-n-i mxolod t-xut-met'-i (15) c'l-is a-r-i-an.

Vocabulary

| did-i | big, great, long | $x[a] n-i$ | time |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { did-i } x[a] n-i-a / \\ & \text { or-ic'[e]l-i-a(, rac) } \end{aligned}$ | it's a long time/ two years since |  |  |
| čem-tvis | for me | saint'ereso | interesting |
| ra-gac | something | bodiš-i | sorry |
| ra-mden-i c'l-is? | how old? | samc'uxaro-d | unfortunately |
| ojax-i | family | da=jma* | sister-brother |
| q'vela-ze upros-i | oldest | upros-i | older, boss |
| or-i c'l-it | by 2 years | čem-ze | than me |
| umcros-i | younger | t'q'up'-i | twin |
| mxolod | only |  |  |

* The use of the equals sign represents an actual hyphen in the Georgian script.


## Dialogue 2

Avtandil is a new employee at a Tbilisi factory and introduces himself to Lasha, who discovers that Avtandil previously worked in the industrial town of Rustavi

Avtandil: ga-mary̌-oba-t!
LASHA: ga-marǰ-oba-t! tkven vin brjan-d-eb-i-t?
Avtandil: me tkven-i axal-i tanamšromel-i, avtandil-i, g-a-xl-av[ $\mathrm{v}-\mathrm{]} \mathrm{a}-\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{t}$.
LASHA: sa-idan mo-x-ved-i-t?
Avtandil: upros-tan v-i-q'av-i da ak p'irdap'ir še-mo-[v-]ved-i m-is-i k'abinet'-idan.
LASHA: romel-i karxana a-r-i(-s) upro did-i - esa tu is, sada-c aka(mo)-mde i-q'av-i-t?
Avtandil: eč'v-is gareše (/ueč'vel-ad) tkven-i gacileb-it upro did-i-a. am-is garda (/garda am-isa) tbilis-i upro lamaz-i-a rustav-ze, sada-c čem-i jvel-i samušao g-a-xl-av-t.

## Vocabulary

| ax[a]l-i | new | tanamšrom[e]l-i | co-worker |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| sa-idan? | where from? | mo-x-ved-i-t | you (pl.) came |
| upros-tan | with the boss | v-i-q'av-i | I was |
| p'irdap'ir | straight, directly | še-mo-[v-]ved-i | I came in |


| k'abinet'-i (biuro) | office | k'abinet'-idan | from the office |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| karx[a]na | factory | upro | more |
| tu | or (question) | sada-c | where |
| aka(mo)-mde* | up to now | i-q'av-i-t | you (pl.) were |
| eč'v-i | doubt | gareše | without |
| ueč'vel-ad | undoubtedly | gacileb-it | by far |
| garda | besides | lamaz-i | pretty |
| jvel-i | old | samušao | work(-place) |
| * The variant with the bracketed material is older and less common than the shorter |  |  |  |
| option. |  |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

Davit tells his new, inquisitive acquaintance Gia where exactly he slept the previous night

GIA: $\quad \operatorname{sad}(a)$ zi-s tkven-i važǐ̌̌vil-i?
DAvIT: exla zi-s iat'ak'-ze, upro adre k'i divan-ze i-ǰd-a deda-s-tan ert-ad.
GIA: c'uxel rodis da-c'ek-i-t?
DAVIT: at-is naxevar-ze am otax-idan ga-[v-]ved-i, a-[v-]ved-i meore sartul-ze da jalian rbil login-ši da-v-c'ek-i.
GIA: tkven-i sajile sad a-r-i(-s)?
DAvit: zevit, bavšv-eb-is otax-eb-s šua. es rat'om a-r-i(-s) tkven-tvis saint'ereso?
GIA: bodiš-i, me ubralo-d cnobismoq'vare v-a-r!

## Vocabulary

| važišvil-i | son | iat'ak'-i | floor |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| i-jd-a | X was sitting | div[a]n-i | divan |
| deda-s-tan ert-ad | with mother | c'uxel | last night |
| da-c'ek-i-t | you (pl.) lay down | otax-i | room |
| ga-[v-]ved-i | I went out | sartul-i | floor, storey |
| a-[v-]ved-i | I went up | rbil-i | soft |
| da-v-c'ek-i | I lay down | sajile | bedroom |
| zevit | upstairs, above | šua | between |
| tkven-tvis | for you (pl.) | ubralo-d | just |
| cnobismoq'vare | inquisitive |  |  |

## Grammar

## Asking about and stating one's age

The genitive case is used, for example, in the question ra-mden-i c'l-isa $\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{r}(-\mathbf{t})$ ? How old are you?, in the answer oc-i c'l-isa v-a-r I am 20 years old (where it is sufficient for the numeral alone to stand in the genitive without the word for year: oc-isa v-a-r I am 20), or when qualifying a noun (e.g. oc-i c'l-is k'u a 20 -year-old tortoise). Note that with any phrase expressing quantity, the singular case of the noun is used (hence c'l-is(a) and not ${ }^{*} \mathbf{c}^{\prime}$ l-eb-is(a)), and also that before a monosyllabic word (such as $\mathbf{x}$-a-r(-t)) a consonant-final word (such as $\mathbf{c}^{\prime} \mathbf{l}$-is) takes an extra euphonic -a.

## The comparative and superlative grades of adjectives and adverbs

The usual method for constructing the comparative of an adjective (e.g. greener, more green) is to place upro more before the basic form of the adjective. To indicate the object of comparison (than $X$ ) the postposition -ze is simply attached to the relevant noun/pronoun (e.g. kal-i k'ac-ze upro magal-i a-r-i(-s) the woman is taller than the man). For the superlative (greenest, most green), q'vela-ze than all is placed before the sequence upro + adjective (e.g. q'vela-ze upro magal-i kal-i the tallest woman). Since the presence of -ze (plus (pro)noun or $\mathbf{q}$ 'vela all) makes the nature of the construction clear, upro more can in fact simply be omitted (e.g. kal-i k'ac-ze magal-i a-r-i(-s); q'vela-ze magal-i kal-i). Simply use the adverb (in -(a)d) in place of the adjective in these sequences to produce the comparative and superlative adverbial forms

Two common adjectives (k'arg-i good, cud-i bad) frequently make use of the following forms, in addition to the possibilities already mentioned above:

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| k'arg-i | $\mathbf{u - k}$ 'et-es-i | sa-u-k'et-es-o |
| cud-i | u-ar-es-i | q'vela-ze cud-i/u-ar-es-i |

These forms reveal the older method of forming comparatives by placing the elements $\mathbf{u}-\ldots$-es(-i) around the root of the adjective.

Adjectives and adverbs may also be intensified by the use of such qualifying words as: jalian, jlier very, met'ad especially, met'ismet'ad too (e.g. met'ismet'ad jnel-i-a it is too difficult).

## The instrumental case

Where loss of a root vowel occurs in the genitive singular, it will occur in the instrumental singular also. The usual ending is -it, which replaces the nominative -i for all consonant-final roots (e.g. čakuč-it with althe hammer, $\mathbf{c}^{\prime} l-i t$ by a year from $\left.\mathbf{c}^{\prime}[\mathbf{e}] l-\mathbf{i}\right)$ as well as most root-final $\mathbf{e} / \mathbf{a}$ vowels (e.g. satitit with althe thimble from satite, rk-it with althe horn from rka). For roots that end in $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{o}$ the instrumental is in -ti, which is added to the full form of the root (e.g. juju-ti with althe breast, lobio-ti with beans), although dro time also has dro-it (e.g. mosk'ov-is dro-it by Moscow time), and all monosyllabic nouns ending in $\mathbf{- 0} /-\mathbf{u}$ may similarly use -it as well as -ti. Those nouns that do not lose their final $\mathbf{e} / \mathbf{a}$ vowels also take an instrumental in -ti, while the few nouns that have a root ending in $\mathbf{i}$ just add -t (e.g. the proper nouns k'ot'e-ti, uča-ti, gudava-ti, giorgi-t plus the common nouns mela-ti with/by the/a fox, t'ire-ti with/by the/a dash). In the plural all nouns have their instrumental in -eb-it.

The 3rd person personal and demonstrative pronouns have the instrumental forms: m-it, am-it, mag-it, im-it (the uncommon plurals are irregular: ma-t-it, ama-t-it, maga-t-it, ima-t-it). The non-human interrogative pronoun has r-it(i) with what?. The instrumental of the interrogative relating to people or the 1st and 2nd person personal pronouns is extremely rare - the relevant forms are: v-is-it, čem-it, šen-it, čven-it, tkven-it.

## Adjective agreement with the instrumental

Vowel-final adjectives do not alter at all. Consonant-final adjectives take the same agreement marker -i as for nominative and genitive nouns (e.g. tetr-i/ cxel-i uto-ti with a/the white/hot iron, čem-i azr-it in my opinion - a variant čem-is azr-it may also be encountered).

## Postpositions

| gareše | without | garda | apart from |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| šua | between | šoris | among, between |
| -tan | at | -tan ert-ad | together with |
| -(i)dan | from (a time or place) | -gan | from (person) |

gareše and garda (the latter may also stand before its noun) govern the genitive (e.g. satbur-is gareše without a greenhouse from satbur-i; am sijnel-is garda/garda am sijnel-is(a) apart from this difficulty from sijnele). Notice the so-called long form in -a of the genitive, which is usual with this reversed order and optional with those postpositions written as part of the preceding word (the dative and instrumental also have long forms in -a). It is the dative that is governed by šua, šoris and -tan (e.g. k'edl-eb-s šua between the walls from k'ed[e]l-i; q'vavil-eb-s šoris among the flowers from q'vavil-i)

- in the phrase sxva-ta šoris amongst other things/by the way -ta is the old dative plural; mezobel-tan by the neighbour/at the neighbour's, from mezob[e]l-i - cf. bebia-s-tan at grand-mother's, from which we see that in the case of consonant-final nouns the dative loses its $-\mathbf{s}$, while vowel-final nouns keep the case marker when used with -tan (which in meaning is similar to French chez and German bei). Coupling ert-ad as one with -tan gives the meaning together with $X$ (e.g. deda-s-tan ert-ad together with mother).

When the 1st and 2nd person pronouns are used with dative- and genitivetaking postpositions, the bases are čem-, šen-, čven-, tkven- for those postpositions that are written as part of their governed word (e.g. genitive-taking -tvis for gives čem-tvis, tkven-tvis etc. while dative-taking -tan at gives šen-tan, čven-tan). For those postpositions that are written as separate words, an extra -s is added to these bases (e.g. genitive-taking garda gives čem-s garda, šen-s garda etc.; dative-taking šoris gives čven-s šoris amongst us).

Historically the postposition -gan from (a time/place) governed the instrumental. This coupling gave the endings -it-gan/-t-gan. The $\mathbf{t}$ and the $\mathbf{g}$ here merged to give $\mathbf{d}$, so that today we have the form -(i)dan, the $\mathbf{i}$ being present if it appears in the corresponding instrumental. If there is loss of a vowel in the root, then the presence of this ending will motivate it (e.g. im c'l-idan from that year, karxn-idan from the factory, or-i saat-idan from 2 o'clock, tbilis-idan from Tbilisi). Adjective agreement is as for an instrumental noun (e.g. čven-i tbilis-idan from our Tbilisi). There is evidence that, at least for non-syncopating nouns, native speakers perceive the case required by this postposition to be the nominative. For example, when two nouns are conjoined under one postposition, it is usual to use the long form in -a of the basic case for the first conjunct and to express the postposition with just the last conjunct. With a genitive-taking postposition this would give kal-isa da k'ac-is(a)-tvis for the woman and man, but with -(i)dan we find examples like kutais-i da tbilis-idan from Kutaisi and Tbilisi, with the first conjunct in the nominative. This perhaps explains why, in an example later in the book based on the ordinal 6 th, native consultants have me-ekvs-e-dan from the 6 th, even though, according to the Georgian Academy Dictionary, the final e-vowel in ordinals is not one preserved in the instrumental, which would be me-ekvs-it by/ with the 6th. However, a recently encountered example has the genitive of an ordinal preserving the final e-vowel (namely: me-or-e-s mdgomareoba the second one's situation), which suggests that ordinals might be becoming reclassified, at least for some speakers, as ending in a non-deleting -e, in which case, even if formed on the instrumental, from the 6th would be me-ekvs-e-dan. As far as adjective agreement is concerned, there is, of course, no difference between agreement with the nominative and the instrumental.

In the sense of from (person), -gan is used with the genitive (e.g. k'ac-is(a)-gan from the man, kal-eb-is(a)-gan from the women, šen-gan from you). With the verb še-dg-eb-a $X$ consists (of $Y$ ) the expression of $Y$ is conveyed
by -gan + genitive, regardless of whether a person or a thing is involved (e.g. c'ign-i še-dg-eb-a xut-i tav-is(a)-gan the book (c'ign-i) consists of five chapters (tav-i)).

In the sense of out of, from among, -(i)dan can also be applied to people (e.g. m-is-i moadgile-eb-idan p'irvel-i i-q'o beria out of his deputies (moadgile) Beria was the first).

## Summary of the past tense of irregular verbs from previous lessons

| v-i-q'av-i | I was | mo-[v-]ved-i | I came |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| i-q'av-i | you (sing.) were | mo-x-ved-i | you (sing.) came |
| i-q'o | X was | mo-vid-a | $X$ came |
| (from Old Georgian i-q'v-a) |  |  |  |
| v-i-q'av-i-t | we were | mo-[v-]ved-i-t | we came |
| i-q'av-i-t | you (pl.) were | mo-x-ved-i-t | you (pl.) came |
| i-q'v-nen | they were | mo-vid-nen | they came |
| v-i-j ek-i | I was sitting | v-i-dek-i | I was standing |
| i-jek-i | you (sing.) were sitting | i-dek-i | you (sing.) were standing |
| i-ǰd-a | $X$ was sitting | i-dg-a | $X$ was standing |
| v-i-sxed-i-t | we were sitting | v-i-dek-i-t | we were standing |
| i-sxed-i-t | you (pl.) were sitting | i-dek-i-t | you (pl.) were standing |
| i-sxd-nen | they were sitting | i-dg-nen | they were standing |
| v-i-c'ek-i | I was prostrate | da-v-ǰek-i | I sat down |
| i-c'ek-i | you (sing.) were prostrate | da-jek-i | you (sing.) sat down |
| i-c'v-a | $X$ was prostrate | da-ǰd-a | X sat down |
| v-i-c'ek-i-t | we were prostrate | da-v-sxed-i-t | we sat down |
| i-c'ek-i-t | you (pl.) were prostrate | da-sxed-i-t | you (pl.) sat down |
| i-c'v-nen | they were prostrate | da-sxd-nen | they sat down |
| a-v-dek-i | I stood up | da-v-c'ek-i | I lay down |
| a-dek-i | you (sing.) stood up | da-c'ek-i | you (sing.) lay down |
| a-dg-a | $X$ stood up | da-c'v-a | X lay down |
| a-v-dek-i-t | we stood up | da-v-c'ek-i-t | we lay down |
| a-dek-i-t | you (pl.) stood up | da-c'ek-i-t | you (pl.) lay down |
| a-dg-nen | they stood up | da-c'v-nen | they lay down |

Although in certain respects the verbs above do conform to one of the regular patterns of conjugation, it is advisable to view them as exceptional, and so they should be learned as such before we advance to the more normal types of conjugation in Lesson 4.

## Subject agreement markers within the verb for intransitive subjects

All of the verbs introduced so far have been intransitive. The subject of these and other intransitive verbs always remains in the nominative case in Georgian. But, as we noted earlier, Georgian verbs agree not only with subjects but with both direct and indirect objects. Readers will probably have noticed that, wherever $I$ appears in the translation, a $\mathbf{v}$ - has been present in the Georgian verb form. Equally, wherever the translation has we, this $\mathbf{v}$ - has been accompanied by a word-final -t. Wherever we have had you in translation, Georgian has had either nothing in place of 1 st person $\mathbf{v}$-, or an $\mathbf{x}$-, accompanied in the plural by word-final -t. In Modern Georgian 99 per cent of verbs with a 2nd person subject take the zero marker, whereas a tiny number of forms (such as parts of 'to be' and the verb of motion) have retained the older marker $\mathbf{x}$-. The agreement affix for 3rd person subjects varies according to the form of the verb, though these agreement markers are normally triggered only by 3rd person plural animate nouns functioning as subjects. The subject agreement affixes are as follows:

|  | Singular |  | Plural |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1st person | $\mathbf{v}$ - |  | $\mathbf{v}-$ |
| 2nd person | $\boldsymbol{O}(/ \mathbf{x})-$ |  | -t |
| 3rd person |  | $-\mathbf{s} / \mathbf{a} / \mathbf{o}$ |  |

The 3rd person affixes (of which we have met -s, -a, -an, -nen thus far) are suffixal (i.e. they stand after the verb root), as are the 1 st and 2 nd person plural markers, while the 1 st and 2 nd person markers themselves are prefixal, standing either immediately before the root (e.g. v-ǰd-eb-i) or before one of the so-called 'version vowels' (e.g. v-i-jek-i). (We shall learn more about 'version vowels' in later lessons.)

## Dialogue 4

Two women, Tea and Manana, are talking about the whereabouts of a naughty boy, Ilik'o

Tea: sxvata šoris, ilik'o sad a-r-i(-s)?
Manana: sk'ol-is ezo-ši dg-a-s megobr-eb-s šoris.
TeA: upro adre t-or-met'-ze (/t-or-met' saat-ze) k'ape-ši i-ǰd-a sxva bič'-eb-tan ert-ad. ra celk-i bič'-i-a igi! ak rodis gad-mo-vid-a?

MANANA: albat p'irvel-ze (/p'irvel saat-ze) gad-mo-vid-a, radgan p'irvelze (/p'irvel saat-ze) bavšv-eb-i še-vid-nen sk'ol-is ezo-ši.

## Vocabulary

| ezo | yard | sxvata šoris | by the way |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| k'ape | café | sxva | other |
| celk-i | naughty | gad-mo-vid-a | X came over |
| radgan | as, because | še-vid-nen | they went in |

## Proverb

 A camel-thief and a needle-thief are both thieves

## VOCABULARY

| -fməдп | camel | Jym@ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢ృalo $^{\text {a }}$ | needle | minozo |
| ง<ñu6 | they are |  |

## Verse

```
3mృO̊~
'The Poet'
```






```
дд з
```




(Ilia Ch'avch'avadze)

VOCABULARY

| antonzol | for $X$ | un | not |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| acomin ( $0--3 \mathrm{~B}$ ) | you sing $X$ | кппд | in order that |
| 300 | like | оु< | bird |
| zu的วzu6\% | external, outside | uno dumbm | not only |
| Ojoncm | sweet | bau | sound |
|  | you send $X$ |  | earth (to earth) |
| 30 | heaven, sky | $\partial^{3}$ | I/me |


| （＠－－）6กワ6－ง3 | you appoint $X$ | ＠） | and |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9mo | nation，people | （8Ј－）\％m＠－の | you rear $X$ |
|  | of earth |  | of heaven |
| мa̧mon（¢zonl） | God（of God） | －ヵu6 | with |
| mo3umoj－m8（ $0--\mathrm{j}^{3}$ ） | you speak | （80¢－）у－dल3－98－0 | you lead X |
| ®0\％ธ | in front，forward |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Write out in Georgian script the present and past tenses of the verbs go in and come in．Remember that the root of the verb of motion must be used with the correct choice of preverbs．Readers should find the answer within the body of this lesson．

2 Work out the following anagrams，which are based on material presented in this lesson：

（e）Jbonabonmon

（f）bogosb bondm
（c） $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{g}} \mathrm{m} \partial \mathrm{do}$

（d）roogbozmby
（h）bодぁวзмœ

3 Fill in the gaps in the following and translate into English：

（e） $\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{C}_{-\mathrm{o}}^{\mathrm{o}} \mathrm{m}_{-}$
（b）- ง＿b6＿œ＿－6
（f）- m $-30-$－-
（c）${ }^{\text {（ }}$ 3－－ว－○
（g）$-93--6$

（h）m $\mathrm{B}^{\circ}$ º－－－－ $3--$
4 Translate into Georgian：
（a）on which floor／storey？
（b）on the greenest grass
（c）81－year－old men
（d）for the／a better wife
（e）together with my two sisters
（f）at 3.15 Moscow time
（g）with／by（the）bigger hammers
（h）among women one year older than me
5 Translate into English：




 дмдоœо？






6 Translate into Georgian:
(a) From which floor did you come down? I came down from the sixth.
(b) Where were you last night? We were at Nana's (place).
(c) At what time did they go out? They went out at 7.15 and came in at 11.20 .
(d) How many years younger than you is your sister? She's three years younger than me.
(e) Between which two women is Zurab sitting? He's sitting between the most interesting women.
(f) Look! Our neighbours' sons are coming quickly out of their house. What's it all about?
(g) Who sat on the softest chair?
(h) By what train did you come to Tbilisi?

7 Answer the question modœう6o fimobs bom(๓)? How old are you?

## Lesson 4

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The three-way division of the tense system
- The marking of subject and object with transitive verbs in the present
- Word order
- The present tense of transitive verbs
- Neutral version
- Verb agreement with 3rd person plural subjects
- The loss/reduction of -o- in the declension of nouns
- The adverbial case of nouns
- Adjective agreement with nouns in the adverbial case
- The postposition -mde up to


## Dialogue 1

An English visitor, Anne, talks to her Georgian hostess, Inga, about housework


















## Vocabulary

Note that for the rest of the course verbs are given in the form of the present tense with 2 nd person singular subject（and，where appropriate，with 3rd person object）．The verbal root is highlighted in bold print．

| зวздь | plan |  | according to （＋genitive） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you plan X | ＠¢． | today |
| งдпбма | for this reason | 3ymo | bread |
| －－36－mb | you bake $X$ |  | kitchen |
| on | look，like this | sgom．．．．agoro | first ．．then |
| －－8y－mb | you arrange $X$ |  | everything |
| дıдп＠ | table | ̧uдの | bowl |
| ๑f30¢0 | flour | monemo | warm |
|  | margarine | dum๐mo | salt |
| nof［0］mo | sugar | loguv［0］¢no（－3－） | yeast |
|  | sieve | $3^{(m-0}$ | you sieve $X$ |
| Luligmen | scales | －mb－n | you weigh $X$ |
| y ${ }^{(m) 0}$ | you tip them | \％ృ＠ | on top |
| －－Ub－১る | you pour $X$ | 3mరు | a little |
| くмวの | dough | ＠o＠bu6し | for a long while |
| $\%_{0 ¢}$ | you knead $X$ | う（ronauбjon | one another |
|  | mixed | －－ģom－${ }^{3}$ | you cover $X$ |
| $\mathrm{O}^{2} \mathrm{~m}_{3} \mathrm{~g}^{3}$ | you leave $X$ | rome | role |
| －－6xuym－9 | you fulfil $X$ | 3immoron | process |
| －－®ัワ－93 | you make X rise | Lug ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | full |
| з๑＠3 | again | Bobulforn | in advance |
| － 0 －6n－3 | you light $X$ | ¢ッว［g］mの | oven |
| Luauc | into three | $3 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{n}$ | you cut $X$ |
| ＠－9 | you place $X$ | 万0¢30 | pan |
| bмедд | as a rule |  | tasty |
| диемпддмп | thankful | Lufutingamem | Georgia |
|  | flat | －3 | also |
| ）${ }_{\text {log ozo（g．n．）}}$ | i．e． | muzun | unleavened bread |


|  | special | B2030 | type |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| jumovero | Georgian（thing） | juగnoymue | in Georgian |
|  | round oven |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

Anne and Inga talk about other things


```
    дымәп?
```





```
    sbmßmるb.
```








Note the use above of the Georgian singular for the English plural．

## Vocabulary

| 3л0n¢mo | fine，kind | ว\％ゝ＠ | ready |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－30の－38 | you do／make $X$ | 3umo | garden |
|  | beautiful | Lfonnje | precisely |
| ulyon | such a | dungm－03 | you weed $X$ |
| 3mbol0］60 | vegetable plot | oुmorboma | careful |
| ајвимл | gardener |  | weed（s） |
|  | every week |  | once a week |
| $\mathrm{O}_{3} \mathrm{~B}_{3} \mathrm{~m}-0$ | you uproot $X$ | oménga | otherwise |
| 30¢0） | small |  | carrot（s） |
| зм23mしठัm | cabbage（s） | Unวの6¢0 | maize |
| －－binh－mb | you choke X | nolum | seed |
| aybus | you sow $X$ | a $_{\text {¢\％бumo }}$ | plant |
| 的－03 | you plant $X$ | мnoman | almost |
| 宬y－03 | you water $X$ | －－muau\％－〕る | you adorn $X$ |
| \％¢口－○ | you raise $X$ | ט） | nothing |
| fə［0］＜mo | husband | yฯemd［0］60 | grape（s） |
|  | tomato |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

Inga explains to Anne what the members of her family are doing around the house















＊This bracketed verb，as in the case of the bracketed verb at the end of the dialogue， represents the preferred expression，but both verb forms belong to a verb type not explained until Lesson 11.

## Vocabulary

|  | guest－，hotel | mosubn | room |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 30 mos | you sew X | j080 | dress |
| luaydum | work－ |  | room，office |
| ${ }^{\text {bog－}} 3$ | you see $X$ | yozo | coffee |
| $\mathrm{b}_{3}$－งd | you drink $X$ | 006 | at the same time |
| Bomomo | letter | Bon | you write $X$ |
| \％oznon | upstairs |  | linen |
| $33 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{o}$ | you change $X$ | －－maz－9b | you clean up $X$ |
| узวщзงб | everywhere |  | dusty |
|  | you shed X |  | tear（cf．you cry） |
| ¢ub $_{3}$ | onion |  | you peel $X$ |
| రuวరก | large bowl |  | grandmother |
| －－2\％）＠－9 | you prepare $X$ | $33^{-0}$ | you sweep $X$ |
| ju3julnymo | Caucasian（thing） | $3^{m} 3^{\text {bon }}$ | brush |
| －－ $\mathrm{L}_{30 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{y}^{3} \mathrm{~S}}$ | you wet $X$ | 的mgming bubl | as it appears |
| ®03ヶ\％ | member |  | occupied |
| －－2003的－j3 | you finish $X$ | Lu®омп | lunch |
| 302 | you eat $X$ | しऽenm－mb | you lunch |

## Grammar

## The division of the tense system

Because of the three different patterns of case marking for the subject and direct object of Georgian＇s transitive verbs，it is necessary to establish three different series of tenses，each of which will then be associated with one particular pattern of case marking．Each of the series comprises the following list of tenses，though not every verb necessarily possesses each tense form：

Series I present indicative，imperfect indicative，present subjunctive， future indicative，future subjunctive，conditional；
Series II aorist indicative（i．e．the simple past），aorist subjunctive；
Series III perfect，pluperfect，IIIrd subjunctive．
In this lesson the forms of the present indicative for transitive verbs are described．

## Subject and direct object case marking and verbal agreement for Series I transitives

All transitive verbs in each of the Series I tenses listed above take their subject in the nominative case，while their direct object stands in the dative case（e．g． $ง 6$ ก $n$ бुul bj＠uzl Anne（nom．）sees Inga（dat．））．As we have already seen in Lesson 3，the subject of an intransitive verb not only stands in the nomina－ tive but also is cross－referenced on the verb by means of an appropriate agreement marker．The same set of markers given in Lesson 3 is also used to cross－reference the nominative subject for all transitive verbs in each of the Series I tenses．In the present indicative of transitive verbs the 3rd person plural subject they is expressed by－en，except after the vowel－i－，when－an is used．

| $3-6000$ | $I$ write $X$ | $3-3$ m－0 | I cut $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bom | you write $X$ | 3仿－0 | you cut $X$ |
| Fombl | $X$ writes $Y$ | $33_{\text {coo－b }}$ | $X$ cuts $Y$ |
| 3－60 $0^{(m-\infty}$ | we write $X$ | $3-3$ m－0－n | we cut $X$ |
| ¢0 $0^{\text {m－m }}$ | you（pl．）write $X$ | 3m－0－m | you（pl．）cut $X$ |
| 何的－96 | they write $X$ | 3 3－0－06 | they cut $X$ |
| 3 3－－300－${ }^{8}$ | $I$ do $X$ | 3－20）nge－03 | $I$ weed $X$ |
| －－30の－38 | you do $X$ | дumgm－03 | you weed $X$ |
| －－jうの－jz－し | $X$ does $Y$ |  | $X$ weeds $Y$ |
| 3 －u－30の－93－m | we do $X$ | 3 －дunge－oz－の | we weed $X$ |
| － $300 n-53-\infty$ | you（pl．）do $X$ | 20inge－03－0n | you（pl．）weed $X$ |
| －－39の－93－96 | they do $X$ |  | they weed $X$ |

The reader will see from these examples that the agreement affixes wrap themselves around either the root alone (as in the case of the verb write) or the root plus one, or both, of (a) a prefixed version vowel (as in the case of the verb $d o$ ) and (b) a thematic suffix (as in the case of the verbs do, cut and weed). The neutral version and the thematic suffixes are described below.

As described earlier, the Georgian verb agrees not only with subjects but with both direct and indirect objects. The object agreement affixes will not be described until Lesson 6 in order to give readers the chance first to familiarise themselves thoroughly with the subject affixes. For the time being all transitive verbs will take a 3rd person direct object, the agreement marking for which is in fact zero, as readers will see in the set of affixes presented in Lesson 6. Since 2 nd person subjects are almost always marked by zero, verb forms will (usually) be presented in future vocabulary lists in the present indicative with 2 nd person subject (and, if transitive, with 3 rd person direct object).

## Word order

As with most languages in which the function of nouns is indicated by the use of case markers, word order is not rigid in Georgian. However, both the orders (a) subject + verb + direct object (as in English) (e.g. $\partial_{\jmath}{ }^{9} \mathrm{mb}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{g}^{\mathrm{g}} \mathrm{B}$

 neighbours are weeding the vegetable plots) are entirely normal.

## Transitive verbs in the present indicative

We have already seen that for some verbs it is sufficient for the root alone to combine with the appropriate agreement affixes for a present indicative form to be produced; the root $\mathrm{B}_{0}$ m write is one such (as an actual present it means you write $X$ ). These are the so-called root verbs; some others in the sub-group are:

| 836 | you break $X$ | $3 \sin 0^{6}$ | you twist $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| зलЈs | you tear $X$ away | $\mathrm{O}^{6} \mathrm{O}$ | you scrape $X$ |
| $\mathrm{flum}_{3}$ | you knit $X$ | $\mathrm{FO}_{3}$ | you suck $X$ |
| ${ }^{\text {r }}$ | you pick $X$ | Lingl | you squash $X$ |
| jimj ${ }^{\text {d }}$ | you amass $X$ | $\mathrm{b}_{3} \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{jog}$ | you pierce $X$ |
| coros | you bend $X$ | By30¢ | you decide $X$ |
| ${ }^{\text {\% }}$ ¢ m | you knead X | boad | you split $X$ |

Sometimes verbs which it is convenient today to treat as root verbs show the neutral version vowel -a- before the root:

|  | you shatter $X$ | --@8(-)35 | you restore $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you shake $X$ | --mR(-) $\boldsymbol{j}^{\text {b }}$ | you save $X$ |


| $0-\operatorname{mb}(-) 93$ | you sort out $X$ | －－3＠（－）95 | you make $X$ go wrong |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －-6 ¢n（ ()$_{03}$ | you ruin $X$ | －－のn¢（－）93 | you drag $X$ |
| －－85（－） O3 | you lead $X$ astray | －－酸 $(-)_{03}$ | you transgress $X$ |

However，in addition to the possible presence of the neutral version vowel， most verbs require a further element after the root．This extra element is called the thematic suffix．A number of thematic suffixes exist，and a selection of verbs for each of the suffixes is listed．

## Thematic suffix－eb

This sub－group is perhaps the largest．Most verbs require the neutral version vowel－a－，though by no means all：

|  | you build $X$ | －－fiyb－ab | you upset $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－๗－う | you open $X$ | －－る－つる | you lose（game） |
| ＠－93 | you put $X$ | 3n＠－3 | you hang X up |
| 3u®－つ3 | you give birth to $X$ |  |  |

The majority of verbs formed from nouns and adjectives belong to this sub－ group．In this case the neutral version vowel is always present．Note that a syncopating root is syncopated in the verb form：

| Du3－0 | black | $\rightarrow$ | －－803－〕る | you blacken $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| agomen | white | $\rightarrow$ | －－のjomm－${ }^{\text {d }}$ | you whiten $X$ |
| froorg］m－n | red | $\rightarrow$ | －－fromers | you redden $X$ |
| moz－o | head | $\rightarrow$ | －－003－33 | you finish $X$ |
| 3mom－n | fault | $\rightarrow$ | －－8mum－${ }^{\text {－}}$ | you accuse $X$ |
| ＠๑＠－○ | big | $\rightarrow$ |  | you enlarge $X$ |
| auzoluyob［0］mo | free | $\rightarrow$ |  | you liberate $X$ |
| ว\％）＠ | ready | $\rightarrow$ | －－2\％）＠－9 | you prepare $X$ |

## Thematic suffix－av

| booro3 | you paint（portrait） | ¢08－○3 | you paint $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| jumz－u3 | you lose $X$ | 2um－ı3 | you hide $X$ |
| Juh－ı3 | you tug $X$ | buyn－o3 | you close $X$ |
| $\mathrm{b}_{6} \mathrm{-} \mathrm{o}_{3}$ | you plough $X$ | $\mathrm{lb}_{\text {cm－}}$ | you prune $X$ |
| $3 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{O}_{3}$ | you kill $X$ | るの＠－ゝ3 | you dare $X$（cf． $\mathrm{B}_{\text {g＠－○ fate）}}$ |

## Thematic suffix－i

| （0－） $3^{88} 0_{3} 6-0$ | you send $X$ | G3ヶnのб－0 | you train $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| о๐ウィวд6－ก | you translate $X$ | 以¢－○ | you tire $X$ |
|  | （cf．oungzaı6o translation with no syncope） |  |  |


| －－дyб－о＊ | you graft $X$ | $\partial_{j}-0$ | you reap $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢3－n－ก | you spill（blood） | пу＿$_{3}$ 6－п | you corrupt $X$ |
|  | you unfurl $X$ |  |  |

＊Perhaps more familiar with a different thematic suffix in the form s－дyб－мठ．

## Thematic suffix－ob

| －－のて－mb | you warm $X$ | －－mm－mb | you intoxicate $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－2b－mb | you bring $X$ down | －－mon－mb | you amuse $X$ |
| －－œб－м8 | you melt $X$ | －－かm－mb | you dry $X$ |
| －－m3－mb | you rot $X$ | －－ng－mb | you fix $X$ in |
| L3－mb | you ruin $X$ | 3 $^{\text {a－mb }}$ | you censure $X$ |

## Thematic suffix－am

| ＠̧－১る | you place $X$ | ちぃృ－งる | you engulf $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－¢noty－১る as in |  |  | you gulp down |
| 6uogu | －งว |  | cigarette smoke |
| $\mathrm{l}_{3}$－১る | you drink／seat $X$ | －－Ub－১る | you pour $X$ |

Notice the suffix－op in $y$－moz you divide $X$ ．

## Neutral version

Georgian has a number of vowels that stand immediately before verb roots to convey certain aspects of meaning．The basic system of oppositions，known as＇version＇（＝Georgian f（oว3ง turning），is seen most clearly in Series I and II of the transitive verbs．The neutral version is so－called because it adds nothing to the verb＇s fundamental meaning．As we have seen，some transi－ tive verbs require an a－vowel before their root，while others take a zero marker in place of the a－vowel．Apart from verbs in－eb derived from nouns or adjec－ tives，which always take the a－vowel，there is no way of predicting whether a verb＇s neutral version will be in a－or zero．

## Verb agreement with 3rd person plural subjects

The agreement affixes set out in Lesson 3 allow verbs（transitive or intran－ sitive）to agree with their subjects in person（1st，2nd or 3rd）．Verbs always agree for plurality with their 1 st or 2 nd person subjects（i．e．we and you（pl．））． However，as already stated，only animate 3rd person plural subjects cause verbs to take the 3rd person plural agreement affix；inanimate 3rd person plural subjects take the 3rd person singular agreement affix on their verbs， unless the verb is one that，by virtue of its meaning，normally requires an
animate subject, in which case it can cause the personification of the subject and mark the plurality of a 3rd person inanimate entity accordingly (e.g.




## Syncope of -o- in nouns

When the vowels -a-/-e- in noun roots syncopate, they disappear completely. When the vowel -0- is affected, it too sometimes disappears completely, but sometimes it may reduce to -v-. This is indicated in vocabularies by a $-\mathbf{v}$ - in brackets after an appropriately marked noun. Some examples of disappearing -0- are: Lo3[m]6n (Lo3̄nl) soap (of soap); m3[m]mo (mb mol) orphan (of orphan);



 it follows a labial consonant (e.g. $\mathbf{b} / \mathbf{p} / \mathbf{p}$ ) or if the preceding syllable contains another -0-.

Note that it is the a-vowel in Logovomo yeast that seems to turn into -v-
 -v - dropping out between the $-\mathbf{u}-$ and -a -.

## The adverbial case of nouns

Consonant-final stems form this case by replacing the nominative ending with -ad, whilst vowel-final stems just add -d to the stem-final vowel - syncopating nouns syncopate. The case is used to make predications of the form Inga regards Emma as a fool/as a well-wisher, which in Georgian will



## Adjective agreement with nouns in the adverbial case

The same pattern of agreement illustrated in Lesson 2 for dative nouns applies with those in the adverbial case: consonant-final adjectives stand in the bare stem (e.g. ј0 mz j०(3-৩@ as a good man). The possessive adjectives of the 1st and 2 nd person (sing. and pl.) may either stand similarly in their bare stem
 man). The same is true when possessive adjectives accompany nouns in the dative, as explained in Lesson 2.

## The postposition－mde up to

This is the only postposition that governs the adverbial．In Modern Georgian the final－d of the adverbial case is lost before the postposition（e．g．buc－u－ д＠〕 up to／as far as the garden，from Old Georgian buल－৬＠－д＠））．The older form－dœol is sometimes used，being obligatory in the standard expression


## Dialogue 4












Vocabulary

| Locor | where | O－Sus［0］mo | window |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bonfo | honeysuckle | Loyzu＇myen | favourite |
|  | much，many |  | artist |
|  | portrait |  |  |

## Proverb


Rust eats iron，sorrow the heart of man

VOCABULARY

| 的うпбo | iron | yobzo | rust |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 30a | you eat $X$ | 3030 | man |
| зэ¢๐ | heart | ழom＠ | sorrow， |

## Verse

дмœ๐ $3^{\text {бubmo }} 39^{\text {bubo }}$ 'Come, let's see the vine'






```
дм@о з 
```












```
юмซुдь ддэмо, ддэщддь юъง,
```












```
пмgдь дддмщо, ддјмддь пъь,
```


(Folk verse)
VOCABULARY

| дm-@о | come! |  | you see $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 396 b п | vine | mo | what? |
|  | you eat $X$ up |  | $I$ went there |
| obo | goat | $\partial_{8}[\rho] \mathrm{mo}$ | wolf |


| 300 | you eat $X$ | mmozo | gun |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| yงбzo | rust | 2nfo | earth |
| nuzzo | mouse | 30\%O | cat |

## Exercises

1 Write out the present tense paradigms according to the pattern given in
 $\mathrm{l}_{3}$ Ја, ymo.

2 Work out and translate these anagrams based exclusively on material from this lesson:

(e) Jœazวommms
(b) $3^{\text {mondıбп }}$

(c) ふீ○ $3 \partial 6 \circ \mathfrak{\jmath}$
(g) bృмпооf:
(d) $z^{\text {no }} 3 \mathrm{~m} \Omega$ ว
(h) f (molfoso

3 Produce the correct agreement form for the verb in these sentences:
(a) od $\ddagger \jmath^{6}$ nols (sew)?
(b) $\wp_{39^{6}} 3^{\circ \mathrm{ob}}($ corrupt $) ?$


(e) @g@ -



4 Fill in the gaps:



(d) @g@- 的




5 Put the bracketed word into its appropriate Georgian form to fit the context:



(d) (wine) $3^{\circ 6} \mathrm{slb} \partial \mathrm{b}$ ?




6 Translate into Georgian:
(a) Our neighbours are saving our parents.
(b) Why are you painting our windows?
(c) When and where do you bake bread as a rule?
(d) I personally usually first prepare everything on the table in the kitchen and then bake the bread in the oven.
(e) Mothers give birth to sons and daughters.
(f) Who is hanging up the linen?
(g) Why are you breaking those bowls?
(h) How many onions are the women peeling?

7 Translate into English:

 £ 3 oбmb?




 งぃวдмл





## Lesson 5

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Subjective version
- Indirect objects
- Locative version
- Indefinite pronouns and adverbs
- Articles


## Dialogue 1

Tsira is talking with her daughter, Esma


 пмネ๐๐бьl.



 $3^{\text {b }}$ м m .






| Vocabulary |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $3^{\circ} 3^{\circ}$（cf． $3^{\circ} 3^{\circ}$ ） | it＇s cold（cold） | dumonomo | correct |
| ${ }^{\circ} 3^{\circ} \mathrm{D}$ | you put（some clothing） on（yourself） |  |  |
|  | anything | 3umom | coat |
| ¢obeo | sock，stocking | momoz（o） | something |
| ${ }_{0} \mathrm{O}^{\text {a（－）}}$ ）${ }_{3}$ | you dress $X$ in $Y$ |  | doll |
|  | ever | $\mathrm{L}_{3} 5^{5}$ | you rest |
| － dnбjo $^{\text {a }}$ | you go to sleep | som | first |
| － dobj3 $^{3}$ | you put $X$ to sleep | －mandab | you wake up |
| 30 | yes | －mandj3 | you wake X up |
| ucum | no longer | 的ずmamor | for some reason |
| $0^{\text {bogms }}$ （cf． $3^{\text {b }} 0 \mathrm{~m}$ ） | it＇s hot（hot） | －beo | you remove（from yourself some clothing） |
| monmo | hot | Oublurala］mo | clothing |
| b＠o | you remove（clothing from someone else） | しゃ＠る | anywhere |
| $3^{\circ \text { бд }}$ | anyone | am＠ol zo uno | it＇s not a question |
| $30 \mathrm{mog}(\mathrm{O})$ | someone |  | of $X$ coming |

## Dialogue 2

Paul，an Englishman，is in conversation with his male Georgian friend，Ucha






```
    эœзомол?
```






## Vocabulary

| оэщ๐ | money | odem（－）33 | you give $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | lari（rouble） | yn＠ | you sell $X$ |


| munuc | for a lari | ybウumm＠ | just，simply |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| bomu fanon［0］［m － 0 on | you write the hand | 38的 | like that（by you） |
|  | on cheque／receipt |  |  |
|  | （you sign cheque） |  |  |
|  | receipt） | ง¢30¢0 | easy |
| nбzmolo | England |  | attention |
|  | you turn（pay） |  |  |
|  | attention to $X$ |  |  |
| бЈдщзпмп | real |  | fearlessly |
| ＠u¢о | $X$ goes around | bumbn | folk |
| дид＠лб๐ | so much（by you） | $8 \cap \mathrm{O}$ | pocket |
|  | somehow | $\mathrm{abonfog}^{3}$ | you manage it |
| logemor | somewhere | ＠uдumıme | hidden |

## Dialogue 3

Two women friends，Ina and Lia，are discussing over a meal how a kindergarten is run







```
    дәмठ\mp@code{mдठl.}
oбง: g gl mo bдs.\etamos?
```









## Vocabulary

|  | when | ง80 | you entrust $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | teacher | LuBu3 $\mathrm{g}_{3} \mathrm{~m}$ | children＇s（adj．） |
|  | kindergarten | －Monal－） | you take $X$ from $Y$ |
|  | you show $X$ to $Y$ | ゅぃ | if |


| วก\％ | inside |  | sweet |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{lug}_{\text {c }}$ | completely | ¢¢¢3うठ | you keep $X$ for yourself |
| ysemo | drawer | дпэ¢m | whole |
| 060603 | you keep $X$ | ๑ข3 | again |
| baugón | noise | －$)^{5} 3^{3}$ | you build X for yourself |
| $608[0]_{3} 0$ | rubbish | yono | you throw（something which is a plurality） |
| zuingos | outside |  | Careful！ |
| symo | you cast（a plurality） on $X$ | Luła［0］mo | food |
|  | you ruin $X$ | $3 \partial^{\text {am }}$ | taste |
| 3 ）${ }^{\text {a）！}}$ | Alas！ | dбумо $^{\text {a }}$ | difficult |
|  | sharpening（paying （attention to $X$ ）） | วun6\％ | still，however |
|  | you make $X$ untasty you ruin your $X$ you harm your $X$ ） |  | health |

## Grammar

## Subjective version

We have already discussed the neutral version and its role in Series I and II tense forms of transitive verbs．In these tense forms if a transitive verb＇s direct object is affected by the verbal action and is part of the subject＇s body or belongs to the subject，or again if the subject is acting upon the object in his own interests，then in place of the neutral version Georgian employs the subjective version．The relevant exponent is the vowel－i－，which either replaces the neutral version＇s a－vowel or，for those verbs that do not take this a－vowel， occupies the slot immediately before the verbal root．Compare the following with the conjugations illustrated in Lesson 4 for the neutral versions of the


$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0-\mathrm{Zm}-\mathrm{o} \text { (bృmb) you cut (your hand) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$X$ makes ( $X$ 's nest/a nest for $X$ 's self)
we make (our nest/a nest for ourselves)
you (pl.) make (your nest/a nest for yourselves)
they make (their nest/a nest for themselves)

This mechanism allows one either to avoid having to select the appropriate possessive adjective for use with the direct object alone or to dispense with a phrase containing the postposition -ozol for. In other words, $3^{-0-39^{\infty}-0^{8}}$

 where os ${ }^{2}=$ head .

When a part of the subject's body is the object affected by the verbal action, the subjective version is (usually) obligatory (e.g. 3ymu gob you break bread vs oुjbl n-סjb you break your leg; ducmb buб you wash a dog vs øau
『əjbe you clean your nose).

Some further examples of verbs affecting the subject's body are:

```
nozl n-oुbu\sigma you scratch your head
```



```
malu n-jugz you cut your hair
```




```
Ob}\mp@subsup{3}{}{6}0\mathrm{ mb O-bm(%)
```






 are you poking (y-mog) your nose in my business?.

Some other contrasts between neutral and subjective version forms are the following:

| c3nбmL u-ub-sa | you pour some wine |
| :---: | :---: |
| ¢3пбmL ก-Lb-งる | you pour yourself some wine |
|  | you return the book |
|  | you return for yourself the book (i.e. get it back) |
|  | you reap the meadow |
|  | you reap the whirlwind (i.e. about your head) (adapted from Hosea 8.7) |
| Bomombl ${ }^{\text {Pom }}$ | you write a letter |
|  | you write your own letter/a letter for yourself |
|  | you prepare sandwiches |


|  | you prepare your own sandwiches |
| :---: | :---: |
| дıঠ̆ymb fim6－n | you weigh wool |
| добуलை п－fimb－o | you weigh your own wool |
|  | how many kilos do you weigh？ |

With the pair $৩-\Omega^{-} \jmath^{3}$ you lose（a match）vs $0-\Omega-\jmath^{3}$ you win（a match）compare
 yourselflyour own bed．

Some verbs exist in the subjective version without possessing a corres－
 patiently／show forbearance；п－ठงб you endure $X ;$ ○－しる（－）„б you listen to $X$ （note that the subjective version is not found with other verbs of perception，
 $3^{-} 9^{\partial m} m^{6-g^{b-\infty}}$ we listen／hear with the ear，we see with the eye，we smell with the nose，we taste with the tongue，where tonguellanguage $=\jmath 50) ; 0-\partial \mathrm{m} \% 3^{-}$ $\rho^{3}$ you gain a victory，which is used without a specified direct object，as are
 you rest．

The usual verb for putting on clothes is $0-\circlearrowleft 3^{-৬ \partial}$ you put on $X$ ，but this applies to clothing through which some part of the body has to pass－note the non－subjective version form differs not merely by a shift of version vowel
 on $Y$ ．For putting on hats a different root，again in the subjective version，is
 $\lrcorner_{3}$ you put a／the／his hat on the child）．For clothing that is wrapped around the body，yet another root has to be selected：Бงठっ＠l ○－ا৮－ьд you put on／wrap

 Removal of one＇s own clothing again necessitates the subjective version with the root－b＠－，as shown in Dialogue 1 ．

## Indirect objects

Indirect objects（usually marked by to in English，as with give／show／offer $X$ to $Y$ ）are almost always indicated by the dative case in Georgian－only in the IIIrd Series of transitive verbs are indirect objects treated differently（at least as far as finite verbs are concerned）．Since，as we have seen，direct objects with transitive verbs in Series I forms are also marked by the dative case，the context determines which noun is the direct object and which the indirect object in any such sentence containing two dative nouns．Just as verbs agree with the direct object，they also agree with the indirect object，as will be explained in Lesson 6．All examples of indirect objects in the present lesson require a zero marker on their verbs．

Readers will have noticed that some indirect objects can be associated with verbs without any special marker（other than the zero just mentioned）preceding
the verb root，as in bomononauбl $\iota_{3} \mathfrak{g}_{3} \mathrm{~b}$ b＠－ก you remove the glove from the


 above with indirect objects present have used an a－vowel immediately before
 woman）．This is the locative version vowel，to which we now turn．

## Locative version


 postposition may be dispensed with if the locative version vowel is placed immediately before the verbal root（other than in IIIrd Series forms）．This creates an indirect object for the verb out of what otherwise would be the postpositional object，so that the above example can be transformed into：
 locative version is found with intransitive verbs as well as with transitives



For verbs that have a zero marker of their neutral version，the contrast between neutral and locative versions is easily achieved by simply adding the a－vowel for the latter，as in：＠っдठь申っᄂ＠－วる you put down the gun compared

 it is almost impossible（and rare）to contrast the two versions（cf．lubem
 you bring down the house upon the head of the owner（доुмм $\left.{ }^{2}[\rho] \mathrm{m}-\Omega\right)$ ，where it is only the presence of the second dative noun in the latter that points to the presence in the verb of the locative version vowel）．We shall therefore call an a－versioniser in a verb form the neutral version if there is no indirect object present，whereas an a－versioniser in a verb form will be styled the locative version if there is an indirect object present．This means that in an
 a－is a neutral versioniser，since a postposition is governing the noun school and the verb thus has only a direct object．In the near parallel construction
 tive versioniser is used because of the presence of teacher in the dative case representing the verb＇s indirect object．

We have seen how the verb strip，remove clothing from someone else takes a straight indirect object without any special versioniser．On the other hand， the three verbs for putting clothes on someone else presented above all require the locative versioniser，as already illustrated．

## Indefinite pronouns and adverbs

Taking the basic interrogative pronouns mo what?, z $\because 6$ who? and mmə[0]mo which one? we can form two series of indefinite pronouns by adding either the suffixes $-\partial_{\jmath}$ or -œ๐ð. The resulting indefinites do not correspond exactly to the English forms in anything/anyone and something/someone respectively, even though this is how the forms have largely been glossed in the vocabularies above. The difference is rather that the former suffix shows the identity of the person or thing concerned is totally unknown, whereas the latter shows the identity is known to the speaker. In questions or in statements about the future, forms in - $\partial_{\rho}$ predominate, whilst - $\rho_{0}$ is more common elsewhere. This, however, is something of an oversimplification; all definitions in the Georgian Academy Dictionary that require the presence of an indefinite pronoun have the forms in - $\partial_{\jmath}$, whereas in English the some form seems to









The pronouns do, of course, decline. The case endings today are usually
 $(-)_{03}$ Are you giving $X$ anything? Yes, I am giving $X$ something), which is the ordering students should follow. Alternatively the suffix - $\partial_{\jmath}$ may, for most

 tive (moluaj) given above in the definition of interest - the end-declined genitive would be mo ( $)$ ) $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{\jmath}}-\mathrm{L}$ (which could also be the dative, as the final -e
 anyone. The corresponding indefinite possessives would be mu( $\circ$ ) $\partial_{\jmath}-\mathrm{L}-\circ / 3 \cap 6 \partial_{\jmath}-$ l-o anything's/anyone's. In speech one often hears moa for modj. In the plural
 $0^{3-\infty}$.

When the pronouns are employed as adjectives, they remain unaltered, regardless of the case of the noun they accompany (e.g. umbuon lo@aj
 know exactly) in one of the drawers (lit. in some drawer that is unknown to





 someone is here.

## Articles

It will be clear by now that Georgian possesses neither a definite (the) nor an indefinite ( $a$ ) article. The context must determine which is the appropriate translation for any Georgian noun. If one wishes to stress that only one entity is involved, it is possible, naturally, to use the cardinal gmon one with the relevant noun.

## Dialogue 4

The following is not a natural dialogue but rather an interchange of questions and answers between two men, Mindia and Dzhaba, designed to illustrate the differences in version described in this lesson



```
доб@оง: пॅь оъддб?
```




















```
    onol?
```



## Vocabulary

| $0^{0} 6 \mathrm{mb}$ | you know（someone） | ${ }^{0} 6 \mathrm{cmb}$ | you introduce $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| へしる（－）$)^{\text {¢ }}$ | you listen to $X$ |  | nightingale |
| zummbu | singing | $3 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{~m}^{6}$ | you twist $X$ |
| ข¢зงəృวก | moustache（pl．） | aimb | you twist something of your own |
| Lubjem | name，reputation | Lubjem $\sim^{\text {a }} 303$ | you earn yourself a reputation |
| J30 | stone | 80.6 | you break $X$ |
| －ogbutugeno | Abkhaz（ian）（thing） | －0̧bubymmo | in Abkhaz（sc．the language） |
|  | you break your tongue （practise pronunciation） |  |  |
| 以udj | night | cuay ${ }^{\text {cogb }}$ | you break the night （i．e．spend a sleepless night） |
| bฐomue | often | วunb（3 | even so，still，yet |
| Lubjer $\bigcirc$ Oob | you ruin your reputation （sc．shame yourself） |  |  |
| дızuмnпo＠ | for example | nosk | you break your head （rack your brains） |
| bn＠o | bridge | （3ल＠б๐ | knowledge |
| odj6 | you acquire $X$ | 3ก6） | flat |
| $\checkmark$ formosob | you let $X$ to $Y$ | ¢мммм | whereas |
|  | tenant | kau | you clear your throat （lit．voice） |
| $3^{2} 5_{30}$ | bank |  | you lend $X$ to $Y$ |
|  | client | しっajy | medicinal |
| $\bigcirc{ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | you put $X$ on $Y$ | frommos | wound |
| 30\％203 | you dress（horse） | ybuzamo | saddle |
| －¢8 | you place $X$ on $Y$ | Oforo | you cut your own $X$ |
| ¢0\％ | finger | রпmgmén Јino | of course |

## Proverb


A fire cannot hide in hay

## VOCABULARY

| $0 \times 30$ | hay | $303^{6} \mathrm{mo}$ | fire |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| onor | not | （＠u－） $0-\partial \nu_{\text {c }}-\partial^{\text {b－o }}$ | you hide |

## Verse


'Mingrelian Lullaby'
This lullaby from the Western province of Mingrelia has an altogether different content from the one quoted earlier and reflects a dark aspect of Western Georgia's historical relations with Turkey.




























(Traditional in Mingrelia)


## Exercises

1 Write out the present tenses of the neutral and subjective versional pairs:

| write $X$ | write one's own X |
| :--- | :--- |
| kill $X$ | kill one's own $X$ |
| warm $X$ | warm one's own $X$ |

2 Fill in the gaps and translate:




(e) - м $3^{\circ}-0 \quad 3-6-$ ?
(f) $3-,-0 \mathrm{c}-\mathrm{B}$ of - m - (b)


3 In each example work out the correct form of the two verbs put on and take off:








4 Complete the correct form of the indefinite:


(b) Fiŋbyc. bo@- fisbzgeno?



(d) $3^{\circ-}$ дм $3^{\circ}$ @ง?


5 Translate into Georgian:
(a) Our son goes to bed at 7 , goes to sleep at 8 , and wakes up at 7.15.
(b) We wake up our mother at 7.30 . Then she gets dressed and combs her hair.
(c) Are you doing anything? We sat down at 1 o'clock and are resting till 2.
(d) They are removing their hats and signing many cheques.
(e) Are you smelling something? Excuse me, I am wiping my nose.
(f) How much do they weigh? They weigh approximately 100 kilos.
(g) Are you entrusting your daughter to anyone? Yes, to the teacher.
(h) We are taking sweets from the children and giving money to their parents.

6 Translate into English:




 bっœдд дпœоь
 B39 3



## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

7 Select the appropriate verb and conjugate it in full to fit the contexts below:
$\partial_{\mathrm{g}}$
${ }^{2}{ }^{2} 6$
ob/ozo
(a) put on
(b) remove
(i) 60 obocb
${ }_{\beta}{ }_{39}{ }^{6}$
(c) put on someone else
(ii) droc

๓ $23 \jmath^{6}$
(d) remove from someone else


## Lesson 6

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- Future of transitive verbs
- Object agreement affixes
- Reflexives
- Emphatics


## Dialogue 1

The English visitor, Anne, discusses housework again with her Georgian hostess, Inga. Compare the following with Dialogue 1, Lesson 4

| งбо: |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| обд): |  |
| ง6o: |  |
| об马ง: |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  @ 3 O̊m $3 \mathrm{~g}^{\text {B. }}$ |
| งбо: |  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
| 5o: |  |




## Vocabulary

| zuamogismb | you will bake $X$ | @oufymb | you will arrange $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 800 | you will sieve $X$ | - ¢¢¢ | you will weigh $X$ |
| Roymo | you will throw them in | @uolbua | you will pour $X$ |
| 2m\%om | you will knead $X$ | @ouguting | you will cover $X$ |
|  | you will leave $X$ | 7jutinymj ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | you will fulfil $X$ |
|  | you will cause $X$ to rise |  | hour and a half |
| ววд@⿰㇇ (+ gen.) | after | @ufuo | you will cut $X$ in pieces |
| 006003 | you will light $X$ |  | you will put $X$ somewhere/in |
| ynen | you sell $X$ |  | usual |
| 3๐д3๐ | cotton wool | 3งazolbunomo | cotton wool-like |

## Dialogue 2

Gela and his father, Demna, prepare for an outing






```
    lomzols fob.
```









```
* The Georgian for a retreat outside town is \Deltazumog-n = Russian dacha
```


## Vocabulary

| ๑ъппмб | self (emphatic) | @uzuminco | you will comb $X$ for $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -qnbum | you sit on $X$ |  | you beautify your $X$ |


| Lotins | mirror | ¢0¢ | in front of |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Lmog［9］mo | village，countryside |  | you will rest |
| дмงд\％ง¢ృ3 | you will prepare $X$ |  | quickly |

## Dialogue 3

Bezhan asks his friend，Ambrosi，what he is doing．They use the polite form of address

| ठวЈงб๐： |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| งдઠฒmbo： |  |
| ठวлง6\％： |  |
|  |  |
| ठวปงธ๐๐： |  |
| งдઠณmbo： |  |
| ठวงงธбо： |  <br>  |
| งдる¢м๐๐： |  |
| ठวฆงб๐： |  ヵщ๐． |
| งдбпmbo： |  |

## Vocabulary

| วงб¢ | there（by you） | Lu\％mzumzungon | abroad |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| зп＠っз | again | antigm | you will write $X$ to $Y$ |
|  | next week | ${ }^{\text {bomb }}$ amoforn | you will sign $X$ |
| lubugon | document | zu（0） $3^{860} 3^{\circ}$ | you will send $X$ |
| Ub3u＠olbz $^{\text {a }}$ | different |  | country |
| lun＠uбu\％ | whence | 3olugbo | answer |
| дьмо | soon |  | you will send $X$ here |
| $\mathrm{O}_{5 \mathrm{mb}}$ | you know（a person） | дмззпиблбпо | later |
| $3003^{6 m b}$ | you will introduce $X$ to $Y$ | งaut fobuon | just now |

## Grammar

## The future indicative of transitive verbs

The normal pattern for the formation of the future indicative of transitive verbs is to add to the present indicative one of the language＇s stock of preverbs （discussed in Lesson 2）．It is unfortunately hardly ever the case that one can
predict with which of the preverbs any individual verb will be prefixed, but, once learnt, the relevant preverb will at least remain the one that is employed in all tense-mood forms outside the present sub-series (namely the present indicative, present subjunctive and imperfect indicative).

The preverb, whether simple or complex, must stand first in the verbal complex (i.e. immediately preceding any agreement prefix that may be pre-



 take off my trousers ( $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{om}}^{\mathrm{m}}[\mathrm{u}] \mathrm{mo}$ ) (note the change of preverb for headgear:


For the rest of the course all verbs will be given in the vocabularies with their appropriate preverb in brackets. By referring to the Georgian-English vocabulary at the back of this book, readers will find the appropriate preverb for all the verb roots listed so far. Note that o@- is the old form of the preverb ${ }^{0}$-, retained as a relic by some verbs.

The following general rules apply:
(1) The same preverb will be used with a particular root regardless of which version (neutral, subjective, locative) is employed.
(2) Sometimes there is no difference between present and future indicatives.
(3) Sometimes distinctions emerge in the future, where the present is, out of context, simply ambiguous (e.g. $\cap-\Omega^{-} \rho^{3}$ you win (match) compared with you make up your (bed), whereas the future allows no such confusion
 will make your (bed)).
(4) Where motion is involved, the appropriate preverb may be chosen for the direction concerned.
(5) The preverb @ゝ- may replace the normal preverb of some roots if the direct object is plural.
Some verbs employ one root in the present sub-series and another in the future sub-series. This latter root is then usually carried over into Series II and III, but again there are exceptions. Some important examples of such root suppletion are the following:

| boe--3 | you see $X$ | 6งb-১3 | you will see $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\sqcup_{3-১ \partial}$ | you drink $X$ | @o-m(-) 03 | you will drink $X$ |
| ง23-mb | you say $X$ | $0-8 y 3^{-0}$ | you will say $X$ |
| --dme (-) 23 | you give $X$ to $Y$ | an- $-3^{-y^{2}}$ | you will give $X$ to $Y$ |

The verb to give outside the present sub-series demonstrates a complication that is shared by some other verbs in connection with the use of the preverb. $\partial_{0}-$ is used to characterise an action away from speaker or hearer, such as the action here of giving something to a third individual - historically at least,
if this third individual were standing by the speaker，this could be indicated by the use of the preverb $\partial_{m}$－（e．g．$\partial_{m-L-c^{-} \partial}$ ），but this is exceptional．When the action of giving is directed towards speaker or hearer，$\partial_{\circ}$－gives way to $\partial_{m}$－，for example：

| $\partial m-\partial-3^{-} \partial^{\text {a }}$ | you will give $X$ to me |
| :---: | :---: |
| am－3－0－9 ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | $I$ shall give $X$ to you |
| an－3－0－9 ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | $I$ shall give $X$ to $Y$ |
| дм－з3－0－うд－〕б | they will give $X$ to us |

Sometimes even the present sub－series contain a preverb，in which case there is no difference between present and future indicatives（e．g．fo


## Object agreement affixes

The affixes that allow Georgian verbs to show agreement with both direct and indirect objects are set out below：

|  | Singular | Plural |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1st person | a－ | $33^{-}$ |  |
| 2nd person | $3^{-}$ | $3^{-}$ | $-\infty$ |
| 3rd person | Ø（し／3）－ | Ø（し／3）－ | $(-\infty)$ |

There are，however，certain differences in the way the language handles direct as opposed to indirect objects in its selection from this list of affixes，as is explained below．But let us examine the system operating in straightforward cases，noting that by far the commonest marker of a 3rd person object is zero． Readers may like to refer back to the subject agreement table in Lesson 3， with which，of course，they should now be fully familiar：

|  | you hide me |  | you（pl．）hide me |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $33^{-\partial \nu_{0}-ง 3}$ | you hide us | $33-$－${ }^{\text {com－uz－m }}$ | you（pl．）hide us |
|  | they hide you |  | they hide us |
| дЈल－ง3 | you hide $X$ |  | $X$ hides $Y$ |
| duç－৩3－¢ | you（pl．）hide $X$ | 2um－งろ－〕б | they hide $X$ |
| 33－дum－uz－し | $X$ hides us | а－วงме－ıз－し | $X$ hides me |
| 3－дum－u3－し | $X$ hides you |  |  |

In these examples we have at most one non－zero marker both before the root （as prefix）or at the end of the verb（as suffix）．When，according to a compar－ ison of the two tables of subject and object agreement affixes，we would naturally expect either two prefixes or two suffixes，such sequences are avoided in the following ways．

Where a 1st person subject（either singular $I$ or plural we）is linked with a 2 nd person object（you），the impermissible prefixal sequence of $3^{-3-}$ is avoided simply by dropping the $3^{-}$：

The plurality of a 1st person subject is marked by final－- ，as is the plurality of a 2 nd person object．And so，the equivalent of we hide you（pl．）ought to motivate a sequence of $-\infty-\infty$ ．But as this is impossible，only one of the two appears．This means that，in addition to the two meanings just assigned to it，


Where we have a 2 nd person plural object coupled with（a）a 3rd person singular subject，the expected suffixal sequence is $-\mathrm{l}-\infty$ ，and（b）a 3rd person plural subject，the expected suffixal sequence is $-\jmath 6-\infty$ ．These impermissible endings are resolved in different ways：（a）loses the 3rd person marker -L －， whilst（b）loses the 2 nd person pluraliser $-\infty$ ．This results in a form such as з－วuल－১z－の having a fourth possible meaning，namely he／she／it hides you

For 3rd person direct objects only the zero prefix is ever used．The plurality of 3 rd person direct objects is never marked on the verb，although this latter provision is sometimes ignored，producing forms such as（孔）（дuo）u－figb－ $\partial^{B-\infty}$ this upsets them，in place of the more prescriptively correct（ $\mathrm{g}^{\mathrm{L})}$（ $\left.\left.\partial\right\lrcorner \infty\right)$ －－V゚yb－3る－し．

What extra difficulties does the marking of indirect objects introduce？ In the case of 3rd person indirect objects，again the zero marker is the most widely used of the three variants－ l －appears if it is followed by any of the consonants： $3^{-}, \mathfrak{B}^{-}, d^{-}, \mathfrak{h}^{-}, \mathcal{Z}^{-}, \mathfrak{\beta}^{2-,} \infty^{-}, \delta^{-}$， $0^{-}$．On the other hand， $3^{-}$is used if followed by $\mathrm{f}^{-}, 3^{-}, 3^{-}, y^{-}, 3^{-}$．In Modern Georgian both－3－and－ $\mathrm{L}^{-}$disappear when preceded by the 1 st person subject marker $3^{-}$．Plurality of 3 rd person indirect objects is not indicated in the sort of transitive verb forms with which we have so far been concerned－we will see how the bracketed pluraliser $-\infty$ is used when we discuss IIIrd Series forms of transitive verbs in Lesson 15．This grammatical point is also covered in relation to indirect verbs （Lesson 13），and to the marking of indirect objects with intransitive verbs （Lesson 10）：

| a－be－o | you strip me of $X$ | 3－be－o | I strip you of $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $33^{-6}$－- －L | $X$ strips us of $Y$ | 3－be－o－ub | they strip you／ you（pl．）of $Y$ |
| $3^{-b ¢ 0-0}$ | $I$ strip $X$ of $Y$ | be－o | you strip $X$ of $Y$ |
| 3－be－o－m | we strip you／you（pl．）／ |  |  |
|  | I strip you（pl．）／ |  |  |
|  | $X$ strips you（pl．）of $Y$ |  |  |
| － $\mathrm{Bj}_{0} \mathrm{~m}$ | you write $X$ to me | － Bra $^{\text {m－o }}$ | you（pl．）write $X$ to me |
| し－G0的 | you write $X$ to $Y$ | し－60ヶm－の | you（pl．）write $X$ to $Y$ |


| $3-0^{\text {an }}$ | I write $X$（to Y） | $3-60{ }^{\text {crom }}$ | we write $X$（to $Y$ ） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $33-60$ のn－${ }^{6}$ | they write $X$ to us | 3－80 ${ }^{\text {m }}$ | $I$ write $X$ to you |
|  | they write $X$ to your |  |  |

Outside the present sub－series the verb write（to $X$ ）follows the same fluctua－ tion between $\partial_{n}-/ \partial m-$ as preverb described above for the future indicative of the verb to give．The expression bocm $\partial_{m}-\Delta-\boldsymbol{j o g}_{0}$ you will sign $X$ ，however， always takes $\partial \mathrm{m}-$ ．$\partial \mathrm{o}-\mathrm{o}-\wp 0^{2}$ n also exists and means you will ascribe $X$ to $Y$ ．

There is one final instance where the impermissible sequence of two agree－ ment prefixes is avoided．With a verb such as give we may have a sentence where the direct object is $m e$ and the indirect object is $y o u$（or vice versa）． Such a coupling should lead to both an $-\partial-$ and a -3 －standing side by side． This impossibility is avoided by paraphrasing the direct object in such a way that it becomes 3rd person and thus takes a zero prefix．The transformation is achieved by using the noun $0_{3}-\cap$ head preceded by the appropriate posses－ sive adjective，and it is also usual to apply it when a 1st or 2nd person direct object is coupled with a 3rd person indirect object．Thus：



```
Ryal mozl u-dm(-)03-05 they give me to X
```






```
they give you (your head) to me
to whom are you (pl.) entrusting us?
are you (pl.) entrusting them to me?*
they give you (pl.) to us
they give me to }
are they entrusting me to you?
```

＊Such an example is nevertheless sometimes met with the meaning Are you entrusting me to them？

## Reflexives

Georgian has no special reflexive pronoun（－self／selves）．Where necessary it employs the same paraphrase as that described above，namely the noun oos－ －head／self preceded by the appropriate possessive adjective．The 3rd person singular possessive adjective is based on the genitive of this selfsame noun， namely o⿰氵 + ＋ol－o X＇s own（in the plural the adjective is ouznubono their own）．Consider this definition from the Georgian Academy Dictionary of the

 head／self）．

Often when this reflexive paraphrase is used，the verb will stand in the subjective version，in which case no possessive adjective is permitted：

```
muzl \(\partial m-3-n-3 m-3\)
muzl \(\partial m-n-3 m-\lrcorner 3\)
nozl am-0-3m-oz-l
```

I shall kill myself
you will kill yourself
$X$ will kill himself／herself／itself

|  | we shall kill ourselves |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you（pl．）will kill yourselves |
|  | they will kill themselves |

One way of saying I shall sacrifice myself for $X$ is to use this same verbal root in the locative version（there is also a change in preverb），where we see that the locative version outranks the subjective：


```
I shall sacrifice myself for my land
```

An alternative verb without locative version is：


```
they will sacrifice themselves for their land
```


## Emphatic pronouns

Formally identical in English to the reflexive pronouns are the emphatic pronouns，though functionally they behave quite differently．Contrast I saw myself in the mirror（reflexive）with I saw you in the mirror myself（emphatic）． In Georgian there is one word $\curvearrowleft_{\text {gnの }}(\mathrm{mb})$ ，obviously again related to the instru－ mental case of oos ${ }^{-ก}$ head，which serves as the invariant emphatic pronoun：


```
I shall do it myself
```



```
they will do it themselves
```


## Dialogue 4

Zaza asks his father，Luk＇a，about life in the army




```
    sగоง6 るпдммmolonzob!
```




## Vocabulary

| zomotzago | soldier | －mazj3（0） | you tidy up $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you shave（yourself） | 3ヵ¢no | face，mouth |
| ๑రงб（＠） | you wash your $X$ | Lumbaj | breakfast |


| Fonbjalab | you will quickly eat $X$ | On | lo! |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3'ndmeso | fight(ing), battle | Guaymozo butur | you have been (somewhere) |
| gumo | army |  | youth |

## Proverb


One censures a friend to his face, an enemy behind his back (lit. face)

VOCABULARY

|  | friend | 3 n ¢ | face |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| リ-dmıb-ง3 | you censure $X$ | дठ[弓]लо | enemy |
| эృงб(๐) | behind |  |  |

## Verse


'The Lad and the Butterfly'




















(Ak'ak'i Ts'ereteli)

| VOCABULARY |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | variegated |  | butterfly |
| (@u-) 0 -omm-mb | you intoxicate $X$ | (8u-) $0-3$ Kny- ${ }^{3}$ | you make $X$ dizzy |
| ou | violet | ¢ | $X$ (dative) |
|  | you sneak up on $X$ | (@u-) 0 - 30 m | you catch $X$ |
|  | $X$ rejoices | -mgóno | affection |
|  | you tell/will tell/ told $X$ to $Y$ | nozo | head, self |
| momo | with what? | $0-m R(-) y^{6}$ | you preserve your $X$ |
| ๆృб | you |  | how? |
|  | you tire $X$ | дпуme | whole |
| @@っ | day | дmuluzaбum@ | restless |
| \% ${ }_{\text {¢ }}$ | flight, flying |  | meadow |
|  | you live | $\partial^{\circ}$ | I/me |
|  | without a care | of | there |
| y\%uzn¢0 | flower |  | $X$ unfolds |
| Ryan | my | Lo\%m@m | nourishment |
|  | something to suck | mor | that which |
| 3-0- $3^{-L}$ | you have it/them | Of30cmo | sweet |
| (80-) $0-80$ Mn-38 | you spend $X$ |  | will/and at $X$ 's will |
|  | you fly about | augnua | but |
| @ツozindjm | long-lived | amo b-o-m | you are not |
| ( $0^{0-}$ ) $y-y_{3}-0^{3}$ | you release $X$ | 6ymu(m) | don't any longer |
|  | you keep $X$ from $Y$ | ${ }^{\text {bomo }}$ | hand |
|  | you fly off | 50\% | gentle |
| noofymu | as if | 6กว[0]6ก | sign |
|  | gratitude | $(2 m-)_{3-2-3 m-0 ~}^{\text {b-u }}$ | $X$ whirls around |
| бум-бумь $^{\text {¢ }}$ | slowly |  | you |

## Exercises

1 Write out the present and future tense conjugation for the expressions $I$ (etc.) put on/shall put on a shirt, I (etc.) take/shall take the hat off the child and I (etc.) take/shall take off my socks.

2 Fill in the gaps and translate:


(c) $\mathrm{ob}_{-} \mathrm{E}_{-} 3^{\circ}-\mathrm{a}^{\circ}-\left(\mathrm{B}_{-} \mathrm{\partial}_{-}-3^{\mathrm{ob}}--\right.$ ?
(d) $\partial_{-} \partial_{-}-\left(3 \partial^{\partial_{-}}-{\partial \iota_{-}}^{-}\right.$


(g) --- Ø̊ma - m- $3-3-3--$ gn $^{\text {m }}$
(h) $\beta_{-\gamma^{6}}-3^{\circ \circ}(-6) \partial_{-}-3-{ }^{\circ} 3--\gamma^{6}$

3 Change the verbs in the following into their future form:




(c) 的し $\lrcorner \partial \partial m \partial \partial 6$ ?




4 How are the bracketed words conveyed in Georgian? Translate each example:


Jomb

(f) $3^{\circ 6}$ дma $_{\text {(3 }}$ al (you) ?

 цом ® $^{\text {b }}$




5 The following examples, each to be put into a single Georgian verb form, are designed to test your ability to combine the relevant agreement-affixes for subjects and objects:
(a) they will see us
(i) it will devour us
(b) I shall tire you
(j) we shall write to them
(c) you (pl.) will leave us
(k) you (pl.) are rearing us
(d) X is sending you
(l) you will give it to me
(e) they will send you (pl.) here
(m) they will give it to X
(f) they lead us into error
(n) X will choke you (pl.)
(g) I shall lose you
(o) we shall put them (= hats) on you (pl.)
(h) you (pl.) will drag us in here
(p) they will take them (= coats) off us

6 Translate the following verb forms into English, noting any ambiguities:
(a) $3 \circ 3\left(\stackrel{)}{3} z^{b} \circ z^{6} \circ \infty\right.$
(e) $3^{\circ} 3^{6 m \delta}$
(b) 26$\lrcorner \mathrm{b}$ дап
(f) $33^{\circ} 3^{6 m b l}$
(c) ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ} 3^{\circ} 3^{\text {a }} 939^{\text {b }}$
(g) земео
(d) д $^{\circ}$ bœ๐๐б
(h) дงъпиям

7 Translate into Georgian:
(a) After lunch what will your parents say?
(b) The soldiers are giving the lad the money, and soon he will give it to us.
(c) Will you (pl.) send the soldiers to our village?
(d) Who will comb my hair? Your mother will comb your hair.
(e) No, mother is preparing the sandwiches. I shall wipe my nose, wash my hands and comb my hair myself.
(f) When will you introduce your pretty sister to us?
(g) To whom are you writing that letter and when will you write to me?
(h) Soon we are going to Tbilisi, and then I shall write to you from Georgia.

8 Translate into English:







 далецмдд.

 дмд (3д $^{2}$ дб?





## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

9 Work out the meaning of the following verb forms and then produce the equivalent expression by inverting the subject and direct object or, for those verbs with three arguments, the subject and the indirect object.
(a) демпоь $^{\text {a }}$

(b) (д๖ъ) 6$\lrcorner b \supset_{3}$
(h) (дэю) дпзвддп




(e) $(\partial っ \mathrm{~b} / \partial\lrcorner \infty) \alpha^{\circ} 3^{6 m} \mathrm{c}^{2}$

(f) $\partial_{m \partial_{3}}{ }_{c}{ }_{3}$ b
(l) (ob) $3^{\circ}\left(3^{\partial} a 3^{\infty}\right.$

## Lesson 7

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- Objective version
- How to say too, also
- The emphatic interrogative particle meaning what/where on earth?!
- Relative clauses
- The potential negative
- The vocative case
- Adjective agreement for the vocative


## Dialogue 1

The boy, Dachi, asks his mother, Tsutsa, about her telephone call to her sister, Ksenia







```
    mмgmmo bom?
```









Vocabulary

| （r）303（＠）－ | you ring | ＠genjm | mum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠っや」 | aunt（mother＇s sister） | yerosio（＠）－） | you ring $X$ |
|  | you inform $X$ of $Y$ | 马mino | rumour |
| 3Ј0nmo | fine，kind | リ3ingos（0－） | you dial $X$ for $Y$ |
|  | number |  | handset <br> （lit．earpiece） |
| Buyaumgem！ | Greetings to $X$ ！ | 6ubjzuén Lusama | in half an hour |
| дuми\％nง | shop | bl6o（80－） | you open $X$ |
| ŋy๐＠ | you will buy $X$ for $Y$ |  | you will bring $X$ （inanimate）for $Y$ |
| florokmo | husband | $30^{\text {m }}$ | not（possible） |
| 30రumo | small | Uuhyd［0］mon | present |
| ＠onmjorn！ | So long！ |  | So long！ |
| дงдп＠ | aunt（father＇s sister） |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

Badri asks his son，K＇oba，about school







```
    3\mp@code{bamby%.}
```






```
    bпORyzom, y०mb!
```


## Vocabulary

| －6fo3m | you（will）teach $X$ to $Y$ | Forno－znonbz | writing－reading |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | mathematics | a | grammar |


| nozuannubmbu | politeness | －бzmoluy | English（thing）（adj．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ソるว ${ }^{\text {（80－）}}$ | you understand $X$ （someone） |  | each other |
| ммைбए | only，except that | 2un6\％ | however |
| －bono | such as this | Oggong（＠u－） | you believe $X$ |
|  | director，head | зммпঠ்п弓 | politics |
| Tylubjo（＋gen．） | about |  | never mind！ |
| узวмвงб | everywhere | gronbun | uniform（adj．） |
| yotul | it stinks |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

T＇ogo and his wife，Zhuzhuna，discuss plans for an old painting


```
    oszol bsbjmm<6mmд%
```









## Vocabulary

| y 3 Mng ${ }^{\text {（ }}$（¢－） | you intend $X$ for $Y$ | 5ubuğ | picture |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ${ }^{\text {bjemmb［0］}}$ | artisan | ッブるうち¢（8ง－） | $\begin{array}{r} \text { you clean } \\ X \text { for } Y \end{array}$ |
| Lubjmmubm | workshop | Of\％ous（9y－） | you wrap $X$ |
| סुलlobu | post office | Foncob | you will take X |
| ${ }_{23} 80_{3} 6 \bigcirc$（80－） | you send $X$ to $Y$ | －Juginuma | Australia |
| วงผัวงธ | last year |  | envelope |
|  | you will hand $X$ on to $Y$ | 3nduazomo | cousin（uncle＇s child） |
| aumino | stamp |  | you collect $X$ |
|  | certainly |  | you will send $X$ hither to $Y$ |
| 20＾¢3 ${ }^{3}$ | you will receive $X$ | auous $(=$ aunu +3$)$ | them（dat．）too |
| y6ubu3（gy－） | you keep $X$ for $Y$ |  |  |

## Grammar

## Objective version

The fourth, and final, version that is essential to an understanding of the structure of transitive verbs in Series I and II is the objective version. This is a mechanism that creates indirect objects for a verb out of two sources: (a) postpositional phrases containing the postposition -ozol for, and (b) the possessor attached to the verb's direct object. Here are two examples. The sentence I am writing a letter for/on behalf of my friend could be translated into Georgian as:

Alternatively, we can employ the objective version, drop the benefactive postposition, and turn the noun friend into the verb's indirect object, thus:


Note that, as mentioned in the previous lesson, I am writing a letter to my
 construction we can express the straight equivalent of I am painting my parents' house, thus:

Here again the possessor in the genitive can be shifted to a dative indirect object if the objective version is utilised, e.g.:


Obviously there is no great difference in meaning even in English between the expressions I am painting my parents' house and I am painting a/the house for my parents, but, to the extent that there is a difference, the objective version has the same ambiguity in Georgian.

In future vocabularies, verbs presented in their objective version forms will have 2 nd person subject and 3rd person indirect object, thus: $y-3 \% \Delta_{3} 6-ก$ (子u-) you send $X$ to $Y$.
From a formal point of view, the objective version marker is the pre-radical vowel $y-$, as long as the indirect object is 3rd person - standing before a vowel, the object agreement prefix for such 3rd person indirect objects is, of course, zero. However, if the indirect object is 1 st or 2 nd person, the objective version vowel is 0 -, preceded by the appropriate object agreement prefix. Study these examples:



bumolu $\begin{aligned}-ก-\partial \jmath 6-\jmath^{3} & \text { I am building you a maize store }\end{aligned}$

|  | We are building you a garage |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | What will they write for us? |
|  | They will write us top marks (=5 out of 5) |
|  | What are you (pl.) making for $X$ ? |
|  | We are making a bookcase for $X$ |
|  | What is X making for you (pl.)? |
|  | $X$ is making us a cupboard |

* Since in speech the 1 st person subject prefix $3^{-}$is regularly dropped before a following $-ঘ$, this example could also mean What are we making for $X$ ?

Verbs which have no neutral version forms but basically exist in the subjective version can, nevertheless, substitute the objective version for their fundamental subjective version. Outside the present sub-series there are two roots for the notion convey (i.e. bring/take), namely -б०б (used of inanimate objects) and -уз०б (for animate objects):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 3^{\circ} \mathrm{L} \text { дm-ก-узงб? Whom will you bring? }
\end{aligned}
$$

Here the versioniser denotes the subjective version. Now consider:

|  | What will you bring $X$ ? |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | What will you bring me? |
|  | Whom will $X$ bring you? |

Here we have the objective version. Such being the case, out of context a form such as $\left.\partial m-\partial-\cap-y_{3}\right\lrcorner 6-\mathrm{L}$ is ambiguous - in subjective version the meaning is $X$ will bring me (hither), whereas in objective version the meaning is $X$ will bring animate $Y$ tolfor me.

Just as some verbs basically exist in subjective versional forms, so other verbs basically exhibit the objective version. The normal expression for the blowing of the wind (fuomo) is a typical example:


```
The wind blows from Mtac'minda
(The Holy Mountain, which overlooks Tbilisi)
```

In the above example there is no indication of any object; if such an object is required, it can easily be supplied as a dative indirect object:


```
The wind is blowing on me
```

In the example just described the preverb will be @๐-. But if it is a person that is doing the blowing onto something, then the preverb will be $\overbrace{\partial}-$ :

[^2]Note also the usual function of this verb root in neutral version is to indicate inflation with air, ${ }^{1}$ in which case the preverb will be $8^{0-}$ :


```
The radish(es) will fill my stomach (\partialugs[j]mo) with wind
```

This example has the objective versional variant:

As with the locative version, the objective version also has a role to play with intransitive verbs. Compare the following alternatives, where 330 mon means side:



```
(My) wife is seated/sitting down at my side
```

where it is the $m y$ accompanying the postpositional phrase that becomes the verb's indirect object.

## Expressions with too, also, as well

To link nouns or pronouns in a way equivalent to the English expression also, too, as well simply add the suffix -( to the noun or pronoun concerned. For
 ৪ง-@ก-৩б - $\partial_{\jmath \jmath}$ They are going out - me too. An example of this marker was given in Dialogue 1, Lesson 4.

## Emphatic interrogative particle

The specific indefinite suffix -coo is composed of the particle just described and the element -œu. This latter is used by itself in association with interrogatives as an equivalent to the English pray, on earth! (e.g. bo@œ๐
 are you doing?!). With non-interrogatives it is equivalent to $\partial \mathrm{bm}$ мм@ only


## Relative clauses

Georgian can build relative clauses in exactly the same way as English, i.e. by means of a relative pronoun, standing, of course, in the appropriate case.

1 The neutral version form is not unknown also in the sense of the wind blowing, but an
 form given above.

These pronouns are based on the three interrogative pronouns: $3^{\circ} \mathrm{Who}$ ?, mo What?, кмдəm@ Which one?. To turn these into their relative counterparts,
 The first two predominate in expressions such as: y३วщ๐ $3^{\circ} \sigma_{0}$ all who,
 However, in the plural, or when the pronoun is linked to a full noun, the



Where the relative pronoun is governed by a postposition or stands in the genitive when linked to another noun in its clause, the suffix - $\bigcirc$ either stands at the end of the entire phrase or may be omitted:

I shall give you the book which you see on the table

You will see the woman who came yesterday

The one who went out is my enemy (дљ[j]mo)

The beautiful woman from whom you will borrow the money is their daughter


The woman for whom I shall clean the window is our neighbour

Everything I see is mine, isn't it?


Who is that woman at whose side you are standing?
In similar fashion we can produce relatives from the following interrogative



## The potential negative

We have already met the negative adverb un not (cf. טmono). This is only one of three negatives in the language. In order to negate the possibility of carrying out some action, the negative 30 m is used in conjunction with the verb indicating the action that cannot be achieved. Contrast the following:

| undocol | $X$ is not going |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ cannot go |


|  | Are they really (zuбง/6vovy) not going? |
| :---: | :---: |
| зubu/6vony 30 m дo@oub? | Can they really not go? |
| duzul uńm zuzusjong | I shall not do that |
|  | I shan't be able to do that |

## The vocative case

The vocative is used when addressing someone. It has rather marginal status. Proper names simply stand in their bare root, which means dropping the - $n$ of the nominative (unless, of course, this vowel is part of the root), e.g. moz ${ }^{\circ}$ !
 nouns with consonant-final roots replace the nominative -n with -m, e.g. ठn fm ! lad!, 弓०(zm! mate!, which, though the vocative of the noun for man, may be used when addressing females with whom the speaker (male or female) is on familiar terms. As for vowel-final roots, historically they simply added -3

 an archaic flavour, so that the vocative usually does not differ any longer from the nominative (e.g. @๑œ๐! Mother!).
 lady/mistress/madam/missus are very common. Conversations conducted in
 a reinforcement of this politeness, where in English we would not necessarily say anything.
Regardless of the sex of the addressee, $\mathbf{B u O}_{\mathrm{m}}^{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{m}$ ! is used if one wishes to have something repeated, or when granting someone permission to speak.

## Adjective agreement with the vocative

In the vocative, consonant-final adjectives replace the nominative $-\infty$ with
 Bumm! My good and little friend!). When the 2nd person pronouns are used in association with the vocative, they lose their final -6 (e.g. ॠŋ/of 30



The customary way of referring to individuals is to use the relevant first


 + Ak'ak'i's surname or Mrs + Elene's surname. In the vocative these words


## Dialogue 4

The teacher，Shalva，asks a favour of a male pupil，Ramaz





 ьдьмьд．










## Vocabulary

| аитзz60 | request |  | you fulfil $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －30mos（＠）－ | you oblige $X$ | उuठ̆mbm！ | sir！ |
|  | French（thing）（adj．） | youthatio（zu＠）－） | you translate $X$ for $Y$ |
| Lughubajon | France |  | you return $X$ to $Y$ |
|  | you fulfil $X$ for $Y$ | $30^{m_{3}}$（cf． $\operatorname{smon}_{3}$ ） | neither（possible） （cf．neither） |
|  | early in the morning | －uphos（am－） | you do $X$ in time |
| 3m＠っかの | sorry，apology | の\％m○（2m－） | you find time |
| วกб | at home | －00（－）93（8u－） | you spend（night） |
|  | excuse（reason） | かnuzaz＠ | impression |
|  | you effect $X$ |  | opposing |
|  | you（will）show $X$ to $Y$ | jun（jumzo） | good |
| zudmbus［0］mo | way out |  | Not at all！ |

## Proverb


The elbow is close，but you＇ll be unable to bite it

VOCABULARY

| （6）п＠๐y\％ | elbow |  | close（it is） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| augmoa | but | 30 m | not（possible） |
| $3-3^{8}(-)_{9} 6\left(y-3^{3}(-)_{9} 5\right)$ | you bite $X$ |  |  |

## Verse

VOCABULARY

|  | you see $X$ | 3⿹¢口 | fate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | peak | －f | there |
| ajomero | white | טing（omoto | area |
|  |  |  | （is an area） |
| $\partial_{0}$ | I／me | moubo | room |
|  | you lie | ＠o | and |
| 30 （ $30 \%$ ） | sky（in the sky） | дппzu＇ñ | moon |
| งдuмиa | tonight | mofun | verse |
| （＠u－） Ojom $^{\text {m }}$ | you write $X$ |  | since，as |
| $0-\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{n}=$ | you await $X$ | Un33＠っ¢0 | death |
| $\begin{aligned} & 0-m^{(-) m @-\jmath^{3-n}} \\ & \left(\varrho u-\jmath-m^{(-)} m @-\jmath^{B-o}\right) \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |


| 3-0-6®-〕 | you want $X$ | ubmo | now |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | running | of | here |
|  | around | dnmo (dnmo-s) | sleep (is sleep) |
| амдмблвง | memory | (@)-) mR -93-0 | you remain |
| дмп弓дб¢опо | cleaned up |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Write out the future paradigm for the verb in a sentence such as $I$ (etc.) shall write a letter, then write out the equivalent paradigm for the expression $I$ (etc.) shall write it for myself. Now adapt this for I (etc.) shall sign the cheque, and again for $I$ (etc.) shall write to $X$.

Finally translate the following:
I shall write it for you/you (pl.)
you will write it for me/us
X will write it for me/us/you/you (pl.)
we shall write it for you/you (pl.)/X/them
you (pl.) will write it for me/us/X/them
they will write it for me/us/you/you (pl.)/X/them
2 Fill in the gaps and translate:



(d) $\mathrm{d}-$ ■ $-\quad-$ dgn- $3-$


(g) $\partial_{-}$д० $_{-} \partial_{-} \partial_{-} \partial_{-}$§ $\circ 6$
(h) -bm3-o- $\partial_{-\infty}-33-\mathrm{bm}-\mathrm{m}_{-} \mathrm{b}_{-}$

3 Complete (and translate) the following sentences with the correct form of the appropriate relative pronoun:









4 Express the following using a single Georgian verb:
(a) I shall return it/them to you (pl.)
(b) you will build it for me
(c) X will write it on it
(d) they will clean X for Y
(e) X will bring (some person) to us
(f) they will send $X$ to you
(g) you will fulfil it for us
(h) you (pl.) will translate X for us

5 Now translate the following verb forms into English (noting any ambiguities):
(a) $3^{3} 3^{2} 93^{b} 3^{6} \mathrm{n} \circ \mathrm{m}$
(e) дm $^{2} 33 \partial^{2 \infty}$
(b) $\left.)_{\circ}\right)^{9}$ ถัง 6

(c) д๐дпуз ${ }^{56}$ ю
(g) дмдоуззбаб

(h) $333^{\circ} 33^{\text {b }}$

6 Translate into English:

 ழ方?




 дм $33^{\circ} z^{\text {м }} \boldsymbol{3} 9^{6}$ ?






7 Translate the following into Georgian:
(a) We and our teachers understand each other very well. They will teach us many languages.
(b) I shall see you tomorrow. In half an hour I shall ring my mother and later take this book to her. I shall show it to her and return it to you next week.
(c) The village where my parents are going is very pretty. Some day I shall bring you a photo of it.
(d) Will you bring your brother to me? Will you (pl.) give me a sweet? Yes. Fine! I shall bring you my brother.
(e) You see the beds on which the sick people are lying (prostrate), don't you?
(f) I shall take the letter which came today to Aunt Eliso, mother.
(g) The one who came in first will pour the wine for us.
(h) We are unable to go out, because outside it is cold and the wind is blowing from the Holy Mountain.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

8 In the sentences below all the verbs have been omitted. The missing verbs are presented after the sentences, but their order has been scrambled. Match the appropriate verb to the appropriate context:



(d) ठьธ̊м
 bsbfinogme of -






## Lesson 8

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The syntax associated with transitive verbs in Series II
- The ergative case of nouns
- Adjective agreement with nouns in the ergative
- The conjugational patterns for transitive verbs in Series II


## Dialogue 1

The English visitor, Anne, once again discusses housework with her Georgian hostess, Inga
(Compare with Dialogue 1 in Lesson 4 and Dialogue 1 in Lesson 6)









```
        @>30゚m32.
```










## Vocabulary



## Dialogue 2

Misha tells Dato about his group's exciting adventure of the previous day

| ¢ | boçfobzgeom |
| :---: | :---: |
| додь: @ьом: |  no bubgon? $^{\text {and }}$ |
| д๐ðง: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| @๐O< |  |
| д๐วง: |  |

## Vocabulary

| Fub 30 ¢ | you went (away) (cf. anb 3 @ you went (up to)) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9fujumbo | excursion | ठу\% | wood, forest |
|  | one of |  | you will notice $X$ |
| anfo | earth | ๆousum | you said $X$ to $Y$ |
| кппд | that |  | that very, the same (oblique form) |
| - ¢ ¢blbo | you will explain $X$ to $Y$ |  | to be done |
| yoummun | older, boss | дэชับวзว | woodsman |
| lun@ubus | from where |  | local |
| วปควก | doctor | ndubjo (zuдm-) | you call $X$ out |


| LuLfmoorm | emergency (adj.) | @ubaumgるu | help |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2งธJงбง | vehicle | yln6su3 (80-) | you examine $X$ for $Y$ |
| amojbncmo | broken | Şп3пmの | pain |
|  | pain relieving | byalo | needle, injection |
| зงдмกరుб | you will bring it out | Lojuc30 | stretcher |
|  | you unfold $X$ | -63 ${ }_{3}(-)_{9} 6$ (@u-) | you lay $X$ down |
|  | you will move $X$ and lay $X$ down elsewhere |  | you lift $X$ up (note the L - is functionless) |
| วупузงб | you will take someone in | f0n y306 | you will take someone away |
| İlubuanto | appropriate |  | you afford $X$ to $Y$ |
|  | news | ¢omm | time |
|  | you spend (time) |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

Nugzar questions his friend, Mamia, about the way he spent the day before yesterday

| бэз ${ }^{\text {bomo: }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| дьдоз: |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
| дьдоз: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  дмздюпо. |
|  |  |
| дьдоз: |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  |




＊Perhaps a more regional（west Georgian）form than the verb in brackets．

## Vocabulary

| ૩ขวก6¢๐๐ | day before yesterday |  | hands and face |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢й¢ом | radio | Hosu3（ho－） | you switch $X$ on |
| uog\％${ }^{\text {a }}$ | breakfast | 3otugbo | answer |
| ง（m）zo6 | no one | y3sbug ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | you will answer $X$ |
| －Doosjorgo（＠u－） | you finish $X$ | 2mblyбjos | （academic）talk |
|  | university | ${ }^{6} 08$ | day after tomorrow |
| foonnombu3 | you will read $X$ |  | you seat X（inside） |
| ¢̧3O | jeep | lu＠nmo （пLuconmj） | lunch（you will lunch） |
| 30 | but，whereas |  | cartoon film |
|  | beautiful（one） | 2bjor | beast |
| － ¢ул $^{\text {（ }}$（＠u－） | you begin $X$ |  | crying |
|  | as soon as | Rolbyenom | you（pl．）sat down and in something |
| 3ృ6\％n6ก | petrol | ）yn＠o | you will buy $X$ |
|  | dinner | дууещ๐ | spouse |
|  | as usual | $\mathrm{mog}^{\text {bos }}$（80－） | you clean $X$ |
| Fuynj［0］mo | crockery | งชงбง393 | you（will）bath $X$ |
| \％¢口3［0］ mo | fairy－tale | 8৩ツ口（з）${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | （radio／TV） programme |
|  noouz（zuam－） | television you switch $X$ off | ¢nワu3（zudm－） | you switch X off |

## Grammar

## The syntax of Series II transitive verbs

In this lesson we shall look at the aorist indicative of transitive verbs．The aorist indicative and the aorist subjunctive together constitute the tenses of Series II，and transitive verbs in Series II require a different syntactic construc－ tion from the one we have so far been studying with the two Series I tenses （the present and future indicatives）already described．In Series II the subject
stands in the ergative case，which has no other function in the language than to mark subjects of transitive verbs in this series；verb agreement is achieved by means of the subject agreement affixes（the appropriate 3rd person endings are given below）．The direct object stands in the nominative case，the indi－ rect object in the dative case，both continuing to be linked to the verb by means of the object agreement affixes：

```
3० (3-du fum-0 @u-n-6ub-ง
The man noticed the woman
(ag) \(30 \mathrm{~K}^{-0}\) @u-3-0-6งb-9
I noticed the man
fom-дง ( \(\partial\), б) \(\quad\)-бงb-ง
The woman saw you
```





```
The pupils (дmpoogj) gave an apple ( \(3 \mathrm{om}_{\mathrm{mo}}\) ) to the teacher
```


## The ergative case

Nouns with consonant－final roots form the ergative by adding－$\partial \stackrel{\Delta}{ }$ to the root，



The ergative case of the $1 \mathrm{st} / 2$ nd person pronouns（singular and plural）is the same as the nominative and dative forms already encountered：$\partial_{\jmath}, \partial_{\jmath} \sigma$ ， $h_{3 \jmath}{ }^{5}, \propto_{3} f_{3} 5$ ．The 3rd person demonstrative pronouns，on the other hand，have
 （д১д৩o）that（by you）one（those ones）；กдงб（คдงo）that one（over there） （those ones）．The interrogative pronouns have the forms： 306 who？；mo－a


## Adjective agreement for the ergative

Adjectives with consonant－final roots add the same－дゝ as do consonant－final
 д／bう－ృ১－дゝ big／green tree／trees）．

## Declension types and agreement patterns

Now that all the Georgian cases have been introduced，here are the declen－ sions of nouns，pronouns and a whole noun phrase incorporating demonstrative + adjective（consonant－and vowel－final）+ noun（sing．and pl．）．

## Nouns

CONSONANT－STEM NOUNS

| Nom． | Juocon | Jum－98－n | aubom－o | 2ube－ラb－ก |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Voc． | ju¢m－m |  | aubuem－m | aubem－${ }^{\text {b－m }}$ |
| Dat． | Jo．m－l | Jom－93－し | ১ubom－U |  |
| Erg． | Ju¢－${ }^{\text {du }}$ | дим－うる－дı | aubuem－дı | 2uber－9 ${ }^{\text {－}}$－ |
| Gen． | Jum－n | Jum－jb－n | aubm－ol | 2uberob－ol |
| Instr． | Jum－nom | fuem－j ${ }^{\text {－nom }}$ | aubm－nos | 2uber－ə ${ }^{\text {－non }}$ |
| Adv． | јЈゃ－৩＠ |  | 2ub¢－৩¢ | 2ub¢－эВ－৩＠ |
|  | woman | women | pear | pears |

VOWEL－STEM NOUNS

| Nom． | 3＜nom | $d y d y$ | วงวu | Lnmuau\％ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Voc． | 3 ¢ 3 m（－3） | dydy $(-3)$ | วงวง（－3） |  |
| Dat． |  | dudy－b | дงдง－レ |  |
| Erg． | зкım－2 | dudy ${ }^{\text {d }}$ d | дьдง－д |  |
| Gen． | 3＜n＜m－l | dudu－l | дงд－กレ／วuวง－し | しnलıaı\％－n |
| Instr． |  | dydy－mi ${ }^{2}$ | วゝд－пn | しnलuaı\％－non |
| Adv． | उ－nठm－＠ | dudy－œ | дऽวı－¢ | しncuau\％の－＠ |
|  | crowd | breast | father | beauty |
| Nom．（pl．） | 3＜n3m－g ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | dydy－ob－o | ১৩コ－๑ઠ－ก |  |

## Pronouns



[^3]In the non-nominative cases the forms without the initial vowel are the socalled anaphoric pronouns (he/she/it/him/her/it/they/them), while those with the initial vowel are the demonstrative pronouns (that onelthose ones over

 follow the same pattern.

Interrogatives

|  | who? | what? | which one? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nom. | 306 | no |  |
| Dat. | 30 | mol | кnmajel |
| Erg. | 306 | mod | мпдəyma |
| Gen. | 30 b (0) | moll 0 ) | trmamel |
| Instr. | [30Lnos] | mons(0) | mmamen |
| Adv. | [30L0@] | moc | кпламо¢ |

## Noun phrases

| Nom. |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Dat. |  |
| Erg. |  |
| Gen. |  |
| Instr. |  |
| Adv. |  |
|  | This big green tree/These big green trees |

 งว for appropriate changes of meaning. To illustrate the vocative consider $\partial_{\jmath}$,


## The aorist indicative forms of transitive verbs

There are two basic conjugational patterns: the weak and strong aorists. The former is characterised by the suffixal vowel -〕 when the subject is either 1st or 2nd person (sing. or pl.), whilst the strong aorist utilises the vowel -o in these contexts. The 3rd person plural subject agreement affix is always $-\jmath \mathrm{l}$, while a 3rd person singular subject will select either -m or -o from the subject agreement affixes, as will be explained in detail below.

Where the future indicative is built on a different root from the present (e.g. bg@-ง3 you see $X$ vs $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{ob}}$-ง3 you will see $X$ ), the aorist will follow the
future indicative model（apart from in a few cases of suppletion）．It retains the appropriate preverb（if the future itself takes one）－preverbless aorists do exist but are relatively rare．Shifting from Series I to Series II does not cause any alteration to the versional structure of the verb．As we shall see， such factors as the verb＇s thematic suffix，whether or not there is a vowel in the root，and the nature of the root＇s final consonant may be important in determining which conjugation type or sub－type is followed in the aorist． While a given aorist formation will be illustrated below，by taking one partic－ ular combination of preverb＋version＋root，the same conjugation type will be followed by the root in question even when used with other preverbs and／or versions．For example，under verbs in thematic suffix－av below the root －fon－is illustrated in combination with the preverb＠o－in neutral version． However，exactly the same conjugation is followed by this root when coupled
 （will）take $X$ to yourself as wife $=y o u$（male）（will）marry $X$ ）．

## Root verbs

In root verbs the aorist is weak，3rd person singular subject being marked by $-\circlearrowright$ ．The following examples for changing subject with constant 3rd person direct object are of（＠u－）Bo m you（will）write $X$ and（ $\mathrm{\partial m}_{\mathrm{m}}$ ）flumg you（will） knit $X$ ：

| ＠）－3－70 | I wrote $X$ | $\partial_{m-3-\text { flm }_{3}-0}$ | I knitted X |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠－－70 $0^{\text {m－9 }}$ | you wrote $X$ | am－fumz－o | you knitted $X$ |
| ＠o－Forn－s | $X$ wrote $Y$ |  | $X$ knitted $Y$ |
|  | we wrote $X$ | дм－3－flı3－0－п | we knitted $X$ |
| ＠い－70ヶの－コーの | you（pl．）wrote $X$ | am－flız－0－п | you（pl．）knitted $X$ |
|  | they wrote $X$ | $\partial m$－flma－gl | they knitted $X$ |

Some root verbs with the vowel－- －in the root change this radical -0 －to $-\cap$－in the IInd Series．This applies to all verbs with the element $(-)_{\jmath} 6$ ，which should perhaps be regarded as part of the root in Modern Georgian．As for verbs with the parallel element $(-)_{\partial 3}$ ，this vowel too changes to $-0-$ and the




|  | $I$ cleaned $X$ |  | $I$ decided $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you cleaned $X$ |  | you decided $X$ |
| 8－－¢วった＠－ง | $X$ cleaned $Y$ |  | $X$ decided $Y$ |
|  | we cleaned $X$ |  | we decided $X$ |
|  | you（pl．）cleaned $X$ |  | you（pl．）decided $X$ |
|  | they cleaned $X$ | 8u＠ー－®yzno゙っし | they decided $X$ |


|  | $I$ saved $X$ | ＠っ－3－ง－6z¢m（－） $0-3$ | I ruined $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you saved $X$ |  | you ruined $X$ |
| ชง＠ง－৩－¢R（－）пб－ง | $X$ saved $Y$ | ＠๐－১－6z¢（－）п－৩ | $X$ ruined $Y$ |
|  | we saved $X$ |  | we ruined $X$ |
|  | you（pl．）saved $X$ | ＠u－১－6zm（－） $0-0-\infty$ | you（pl．）ruined $X$ |
|  | they saved $X$ |  | they ruined $X$ |

 drink $X \leftarrow \sqcup_{3}$－১д you drink $X$ ）．

A small number of verbs in $-\supset 3$ and whose root ends in－${ }^{2}$ lose（what is in their case）this thematic suffix altogether，change the root－final $-\partial$ to -3 and employ the strong endings．Consider for example the aorists of（ $80-)_{0-}$
 $X$ to $Y$ ：

|  <br>  | I snatched $X$ from $Y$ you snatched $X$ from $Y$ |  | I named $X$＇$Y$＇ you named $X$＇$Y$＇ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 80－0－nomzo | $X$ snatched $Y$ from $Z$ |  | $X$ named $Y$＇$Z$＇ |
| 80－3－u－mon3－n－n | we snatched $X$ from $Y$ | ＠u－3－১－mf3－n－m | we named $X^{\prime}$＇$Y^{\prime}$＇ |
| fio－u－Mnoz－n－n | you（pl．）snatched $X$ from $Y$ | ＠u－u－的3－0－m | you（pl．）named $X^{\prime}$＇$Y$＇ |
|  | they snatched $X$ from $Y$ | ＠u－৩－mf3－0 | they named $X$＇$Y$＇ |

Also belonging to this group is $0-3^{\partial-03}$＇you put clothing $X$ on $Y$＇$\rightarrow$ aorist Bu－u－ $33^{-n}$ ．However，the subjective version form，as we have seen，is $0-\left(33^{-}\right.$ $ง$ ，which is what is known as a＇back formation＇from the strong aorist ho－n－ $33^{-\infty}$ to a present that could be expected to produce normally a strong aorist，namely one with the thematic suffix－っる．

Note also the anomalous aorist of $-\not-\not \partial-\jmath 3$ you feed／will feed $X$ to $Y$ ，where the－03 has not become part of the root but retains its original causative function：

| $3-৩-3 \pm$－ | I fed $X$ to $Y$ | $3-3-708-0-\infty$ | we fed $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－Jua－〕 | you fed $X$ to $Y$ | －－Jua－ŋ－の | you（pl．）fed $X$ to $Y$ |
| ง－Jっa－ง | $X$ fed $Y$ to $Z$ | －－302－〕 | they fed $X$ to $Y$ |

## Thematic suffix－eb

The thematic suffix disappears in all cases．There are then three sub－groups as far as the formation of the aorist is concerned：
1 If there is a vowel in the root，the aorist is weak with 3rd person singular subject in－－
2 Most vowelless roots also have weak aorists，though this time the 3rd person singular subject is in－m．

3 Some verbs of this type，without root vowel and where the root ends in $-\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m} / 6$ ，take a strong aorist（3rd person singular subject in -m ），though when the subject is either 1st or 2 nd person（sing．or pl．）either an $-\jmath^{-}$ or，more rarely，an－১－appears in the root．
The verbs to illustrate these three sub－classes are：（дп－）- － n＠－$^{\circ}$ you（will）






|  | I passed $X$ to $Y$ | ＠－－3－8งゃ－つ | $I$ bore X |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you passed $X$ to $Y$ | ＠u－bue－つ | you bore $X$ |
| дп－ง－f゙me－u | $X$ passed $Y$ to $Z$ | ＠－－bue－ง | $X$ bore Y |
| дп－3－ง－f゙me－0－の | we passed $X$ to $Y$ | ＠－3－8つ¢－う－の | we bore $X$ |
|  | you（pl．）passed $X$ to $Y$ | ＠－bu＠－コ－の | you（pl．）bore $X$ |
| 2n－১－fime－り | they passed $X$ to $Y$ | ＠u－bu＠－っし | they bore $X$ |
| $\partial m-3-0-3-9$ | I won（match） | －－3－3－6m－〕 | $I$ switched on $X$ |
| ১m－0－る－つ | you won | －－u－6ヵ－う | you switched on $X$ |
| $\partial m-n-a-m$ | $X$ won | －－u－6m－m | $X$ switched on $Y$ |
| dm－3－0－z－0－m | we won | －－3－3－6の－0－の | we switched on $X$ |
| dm－0－る－ラ－の | you（pl．）won | －－u－6m－コ－の | you（pl．）switched on $X$ |
| am－n－z－g | they won | －－u－6の－gl | they switched on $X$ |
| 2n－3－د－3ab－n | I located $X$（dative） | ＠u－3－u－s0m－0 | $I$ reduced $X$ for $Y$ |
|  | you located $X$ | ＠๐－১－ 30 m －п | you reduced $X$ for $Y$ |
| дп－د－зб－м | $X$ located Y | ＠u－১－j＜－m | $X$ reduced $Y$ for $Z$ |
| дn－3－১－১う¢－n－n | we located $X$ | ＠u－3－১－30¢ | we reduced $X$ for $Y$ |
|  | you（pl．）located $X$ | ＠u－－－30m－0－の | you（ pl ．）reduced $X$ for $Y$ |
|  | they located $X$ | ＠u－১－3m－2 | they reduced $X$ for $Y$ |
| 2m－3－ง－6¢0 | $I$ did $X$ in time |  | we did $X$ in time |
|  | you did $X$ in time |  | you（pl．）did X in time |
| am－u－L®¢－m | $X$ did $Y$ in time |  | they did $X$ in time |

Note the following two oddities：（＠u－）＠－〕 you（will）put X down；（子u－）y－ $\mathfrak{y}_{3}-0^{8}$ you（will）release $X$ ．The former has two possible aorists，of which the weak variant is the one that learners should use：

| ＠－3－＠－つ | 以－3－¢03－0 | I put $X$ down |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠－－＠－つ | ＠－－¢3－○ | you put $X$ down |
| ＠๐－＠－¢ | ＠っ－＠3－৩ | $X$ put Y down |


| ＠๐－3－＠－9－の | ＠u－3－ツ33－0－m | we put $X$ down |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| や－－＠－コ－の |  | you（pl．）put $X$ down |  |
| ＠－－＠－つ | ＠－－＠3－つ | they put $X$ down |  |
| $3^{u-3-m-y_{3}-0}$ | $I$ released $X$ | $30-3-$－－ $\boldsymbol{y}_{3}-0-\infty$ | we released $X$ |
|  | you released $X$ |  | you（pl．）released $X$ |
| $8^{\sim-y-y_{3}-\text {－}}$ | $X$ released $Y$ | 3 － | they released $X$ |

Another peculiarity of this verb is that the objective version vowel is deter－ mined not by an indirect object but by the direct object，e．g．：focm－n zu－v－$\eta_{3}-\jmath$ l



## Thematic suffix－av

The thematic suffix disappears．There are again three sub－types：
1 If there is a vowel in the root，the aorist is weak（3rd person singular subject in－৬）．
2 Some of those without a root vowel are simply strong in the aorist （3rd person singular subject in－ь）．
3 Roots lacking a vowel but ending in $-\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{m} / 6$ are again strong in the aorist （3rd person singular subject in－১）but incorporate an－১－within the root when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person（sing．or pl．）．
 follow either the weak or strong paradigms．The verbs illustrated below are：

 plough X：

| ＠っ－3－2um－〕 | I hid X |
| :---: | :---: |
| ＠๐－дЈゃ－つ | you hid $X$ |
| ＠๐－дЈм－৩ | $X$ hid Y |
|  | we hid $X$ |
|  | you（pl．）hid $X$ |
| ＠っ－Dum－gl | they hid $X$ |
|  | $I$ killed X |
|  | you killed $X$ |
| dm－3m－s | $X$ killed Y |
| дm－3－30m－n－n | we killed $X$ |
| am－jum－n－on | you（pl．）killed $X$ |
| дm－3m－g | they killed $X$ |
| ам－з－bงб－ก | I ploughed $X$ |
| $\partial_{\text {¢－buб－o }}$ | you ploughed $X$ |
| $\partial m-b 6-\Delta$ | X ploughed Y |


| ¢0－3－63－0 | I burnt X |
| :---: | :---: |
| ＠－$\beta_{3}$－ | you burnt $X$ |
| ＠o－ $\mathrm{OB}^{\text {－}}$ | $X$ burnt $Y$ |
| ＠u－3－83－0－m | we burnt $X$ |
| ＠u－$\beta_{3}$－－－ | you（pl．）burnt $X$ |
| ＠－－73－〕し | they burnt $X$ |
| 3－30㐌－0 | $I$ hit $X$ with $Y$ |
|  | you hit $X$ with $Y$ |
| 3－3（n）－ | $X$ hit $Y$ with $Z$ |
| 3－30ヶn－n－m | we hit $X$ with $Y$ |
| 3－30ハーの－の | you（pl．）hit $X$ with $Y$ |
|  | they hit $X$ with $Y$ |
| वm－з－bงб－o－on | we ploughed $X$ |
| dm－bub－n－m | you（pl．）ploughed $X$ |
| дm－b6－〕l | they ploughed $X$ |


 grant permission to $X$ ），which may also mean you（will）spin $X$ ，though this


| ＠u－3－0－833－0 | $I$ defended $X$ | ＠u－3－（0－）Mon－3 | I spun X／added $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 以u－n－ $303-0$ | you defended $X$ | ＠u－（u－）的の－〕 | you spun（etc．）$X$ |
| ＠u－n－（33－১ | $X$ defended $Y$ | ＠u－（১－）nom－m［sic！］ | $X$ spun（etc．）$Y$ |
| ＠u－3－n－833－0－m | we defended $X$ | ＠u－3－（u－）Mon－コ－の | we spun（etc．）$X$ |
| ＠u－n－ $3 \sim 3-0-\infty$ | you（pl．）defended $X$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you (pl.) spun } \\ & \text { (etc.) } X \end{aligned}$ |
| ＠u－0－03－〕 | they defended $X$ | ＠u－（u－）Mmo－〕 | they spun（etc．）$X$ |

\＆$_{\mathrm{@}-\iota_{3}}$ you（will）pay $X$ in recompense behaves in the same way as spin．Also weak in the aorist is（ $\left.\partial_{0}-\right)^{\circ} 6 \%_{-} \iota_{3}$ you（will）compose $X$ ，though the 3rd person singular subject selects－৩．

## Thematic suffix－i

The thematic suffix disappears．There are then once again three sub－types to consider：

1 If there is a vowel in the root，the aorist is weak（with 3rd person singular subject in $-৩)-\left(\partial_{m}-\right) \partial_{j}-\bigcirc$ you（will）reap $X$ also follows this pattern．
2 Some of those roots with no vowel will insert an－－－immediately before the final consonant of the root（but note the illustrated verb）in all aorist forms and then follow the weak paradigm（3rd person singular subject is in－৩）．
3 Some roots with no vowel and ending in $-\sigma / \mathrm{m}$ are strong in the aorist （with 3rd person singular subject in－৩），adding within the root the vowel -0 －when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person（singular or plural）．

The conjugations are illustrated by the following verbs：（зง－）（0－）$\frac{\square}{8} \nu_{3} 6-ก$ you
 through $X$ ；（子）－）子似－о you（will）cut $X$ in two：

| $80-3-(0-)^{3} 83^{3} \mathrm{E}-3$ | $I$ sent $X$ | 80－3－8um＠－2 | $I$ reared $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you sent $X$ | 30－8งm＠－9 | you reared $X$ |
| $30-(0-)^{3} 8^{3} 0^{3}$－－ | $X$ sent $Y$ | 80－8งウ＠－土 | $X$ reared $Y$ |
| $80-3-(0-)^{3} 803 \mathrm{c}-0-\infty$ | we sent $X$ | 8u－3－8土m＠－0－m | we reared $X$ |
| $80-(0-) 3^{2} 03^{3}$－0－0 | you（pl．）sent $X$ | 3u－8ume－う－の | you（pl．）reared $X$ |
|  | they sent $X$ | 8u－8um＠oble | they reared $X$ |
|  | I gnawed through $X$ | 30－3－30 mon | I cut $X$ |
|  | you gnawed through $X$ | $80-72 \mathrm{~m}-0$ | you cut $X$ |
|  | $X$ gnawed through $Y$ | 80－7300 | $X$ cut $Y$ |





```
80-3-Эว⿻𨈑п-n-\infty we cut X
```

Some verbs which follow the 2 nd pattern are：

| （＠）－） $23-0$ | you（will）sweep $X$ | （＠u－） $033 \mathrm{~m}-0$ | you（will）count $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （80－）onbin－0 | you（will） $\operatorname{dig} X$ | （＠o－） $\mathrm{m} 3^{\text {m－0 }}$ | you（will）shed（blood） |
| （＠u－） $\mathrm{mm-n}^{\text {（\％）－}}$ | you（will）tire $X$ | （ou－） 6 m－0 | you（will）lower $X$ |
| （zu－）$\partial_{m-0}$ | you（will）unfurl $X$ | （0）－）$y$ m－0 | you（will）throw them |
| （80－） $\mathrm{U}_{3}$ m－0 | you（will）make $X$ |  | down |
|  | filthy | $\left(g_{y-}\right) 03 \mathrm{~m}^{-0}$ | you（will）alter $X$ |
| $(\partial m-) n-30^{0-0}$ | you（will）wait |  | you（will）stuff $X$ |
| （80－）60－0 | you（will）remove |  | somewhere for $Y$ |
|  | clothing from $X$ | （＠u－） $\mathrm{OM-O}^{\text {coser }}$ | you（will）empty $X$ |
| （＠o－） 6 ¢ | you（will）punish $X$ |  |  |

Some verbs which follow the 3rd pattern are：

|  | you（will）corrupt $X$ | （œ口－）－－－${ }_{33}$ 6－ก | you（will）conclude $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you（will）crumble up $X$ | （ $0-2 m-)^{6} 3^{\text {m }}$－ 0 | you（will）uproot $X$ |
|  | you（will）create $X$ |  | you did $X^{*}$ |
| （дм－）Јб－п | you（will）make X elastic |  | you（will）train $X$ |
| （80－）bl6－o | you（will）open $X$ |  | you（will）corrupt $X$ |

＊The suppletive aorist of the future $\cap$－qua you will do $X$ ．

## Thematic suffix－ob

The thematic suffix disappears．There are two conjugations：
1 Most verbs are weak in the aorist，with 3rd person singular subject taking -m ．Sometimes a root ends in -3 ，which is effaced by the $-m$ of the the－ matic suffix．In such cases this root－final－3 reappears when not followed by an $\boldsymbol{0}$－vowel，and occasionally this ${ }_{-3}$ slots itself inside the root．
2 Some verbs，lacking a root vowel，are strong in the aorist indicative（with 3rd person singular subjects in $-m$ ），though either an－0－or an－১－is inserted inside the root when the subject is 1st or 2nd person（singular or plural）．


 mb you（will）lean $X$ against $Y$ ：

| 3u－3－u－ので－ | $I$ warmed $X$ | ＠๐－3－১－b¢R $3_{3}-\bigcirc$ | I strangled $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8u－u－ので－ | you warmed $X$ | ＠o－o－bch $R_{3}-0$ | you strangled $X$ |
| 8u－u－のが－m | $X$ warmed $Y$ | ＠u－u－b¢nh－m | $X$ strangled $Y$ |


| 3u－3－3－mi－3－の | we warmed $X$ |  | we strangled $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3u－u－no゙－う－の | you（pl．）warmed $X$ | ＠u－u－b¢R $3_{3}-0^{-\infty}$ | you（pl．）strangled $X$ |
| 3u－u－nる－9 | they warmed $X$ | ＠๐－১－b $\mathrm{m} \mathrm{B}_{3}$－9 | they strangled $X$ |
|  | I intoxicated $X$ |  | $I$ dried $X$ |
|  | you intoxicated $X$ | 8u－১－ŋ（3）m－9 | you dried $X$ |
|  | $X$ intoxicated $Y$ | зu－u－gn－m | $X$ dried $Y$ |
|  | we intoxicated $X$ |  | we dried $X$ |
|  | you（pl．）intoxicated $X$ |  | you（pl．）dried $X$ |
|  | they intoxicated $X$ |  | they dried $X$ |

＊The variants without -3 －are the ones to follow．

| ＠o－3－0－3yom－0 | $I$ seized $X$ | дп－3－১－y | $I$ leant $X$ against $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠u－n－3yotm－0 | you seized $X$ |  | you leant $X$ against $Y$ |
| ＠－－п－3ym－m | $X$ seized $Y$ |  | $X$ leant $Y$ against $Z$ |
| ＠u－z－n－3yom－n－¢ | we seized $X$ |  | we leant $X$ against $Y$ |
| ＠u－n－3yonm－0－m | you（pl．）seized $X$ |  | you（pl．）leant $X$ against $Y$ |
| ＠u－0－3ym－9 | they seized $X$ | an－u－ym＠ | they leant $X$ against $Y$ |

Some other verbs with -3 reappearing at the end of the root are：

```
(зง-\partialм-)ఎ->b-mठ you (will) bake X
(@--)৩-Б@-мठ you (will) confide X to Y (where the -3 is optional)
(8}-)৩-mb-mठ you (will) smelt (metal
    or (zu-)\-mल-mb
(@u-)৩-\partialb-mठ you (will) hurl/bring X down
(zu-)৩-non-mठ you (will) amuse X (where the -3 is optional)
(\partialŋ-)৩-\deltay-m\delta you (will) notice X (about Y) (where the -3 is optional)
```



```
(@u-)৩-し-mठ you (will) plunge X in Y
```



```
(@)-)০-(\mp@subsup{)}{}{-mठ} you (will) stuff your X with Y/X into your Y
    (where, in addition to @u-n-03-0, @u-n-033-0 and
    @u-0-(33-0 are also given in Tschenkéli's Georgian-
    German Dictionary)
```

Some verbs with re－emerging root－internal $-3^{-}$are：



The verb（zu－） $0-3^{6-\mathrm{mb}}$ you（will）introduce $X$ to $Y$ follows the pattern of seize in the aorist（note the form of the root with 3rd person plural subject $=80-$

 （＠๐－ง－дуэб－п）．

Also to be included here is the aorist for tell $X$ to $Y$ ，which has supple－ tive different forms in both the present and future sub－series to be introduced later．The indirect object obviously correlates with the verb＇s objective version vowel．Note the 3 rd person singular subject form：

| $3-$－－abukn－o | $I$ said $X$ to $Y$ | $3-\boldsymbol{y - m b u k n - 0 - \infty}$ | we said $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| y－abuగn－0 | you said $X$ to $Y$ | y－abuかn－o－a | you（pl．）said $X$ to $Y$ |
| y－obkm－0 | $X$ said $Y$ to $Z$ | －－abm－引 | they said $X$ to $Y$ |

## Thematic suffix－am

The thematic suffix disappears．The aorist is strong（with 3rd person singular
 suppletive aorist of $\lrcorner \partial \delta-m \delta$ you say $X$ ，which is $\curvearrowleft \jmath_{3}-ก$ you said $X$ ：

| Ro－3－0－03－0 | I put on $X$ | 3－の䄧－0 | I said $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ro－n－（33－0 | you put on $X$ | のf3 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | you said $X$ |
| Ro－n－ $33^{\text {－}}$ | $X$ put on $Y$ | のf3－o | $X$ said Y |
| Ro－3－0－03－0－m | we put on $X$ | $3-\infty 3^{-n-\infty}$ | we said $X$ |
| ho－n－c33－n－m | you（pl．）put on $X$ | のf3－n－m | you（pl．）said $X$ |
| Ro－n－33－9 | they put on $X$ | のf3－9 | they said X |

The aorist of the verb（zu－）$y$－mog you（will）split $X$ in two is：

| $80-3-y 03-0$ | $I$ divided $X$ | 3u－3－ya3－0－m | we divided $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $8^{0-y 0} 3-0$ | you divided $X$ | $8^{0-y 03-n-\infty}$ | you（pl．）divided $X$ |
| $8^{0-y(-) m}$ | $X$ divided $Y$ | 30－y3－9 | they divided $X$ |

Obviously the same pattern is followed in the aorist for（＠u－）$y$－moz you（will） divide $X$ into more than two；it also characterises the aorist of the homonym ＠u－y－мо3 you will remain．And thirdly the pattern is repeated with $y-y \circ z^{-\infty}$ you did $X$ tolfor $Y$ ，which is the suppletive aorist of the future $v-\% \Delta \partial$ ．Note the construction with this verb：（ $⿰ \underset{3}{ }$ （nom．）did you（erg．）do to your brother（dat．）？．However，if the implication of doing something to $X$ is rather taking／putting $X$ somewhere，then $X$ will stand not in the dative but the nominative（e．g．mo y－yojo f fobe－ob－ก？What （nom．）have you done with the socks（nom．）？，where we note the retention of the objective version vowel despite the fact that there is no longer a 3rd person dative present）．

The verb give $X$ to $Y$ in the aorist is peculiar insofar as，when the subject is either 1st or 2 nd person（sing．or pl．），an e－vowel appears before the root，as will now be illustrated．Recall that the preverb alters according to whether the indirect object is $1 \mathrm{st} / 2 \mathrm{nd}$ person，on the one hand，or 3rd person，on the other：

| дп－3－0－0－0 | I gave $X$ to $Y$ | am－a－0－0 | $X$ gave Y to me |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Дก－0－0－ก | you gave $X$ to $Y$ | $\partial_{m-z-03}$ | $X$ gave Y to you |
| an－l－${ }^{-}$ | $X$ gave $Y$ to $Z$ | $\partial m-33^{-} 0^{-0^{-0}}$ | you gave $X$ to us |


| ¢n－3－3－（3－n－¢ | we gave $X$ to $Y$ | $\partial m-33-3^{-0}$ | $X$ gave Y to us |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2п－ŋ－0－0－の | you（pl．）gave $X$ to $Y$ | $\partial m-8-0^{-u-\infty}$ | $X$ gave Y to you（pl．） |
| るの－L－0－つ | they gave $X$ to $Y$ | $\partial m-z-9-0^{-0}$ | I gave $X$ to you |

The future you will give $X$ to $Y$ is，of course，$\partial \partial_{0}-\mathrm{L}_{-} \mho^{-} \partial$ ．This is not to be confused with the root verb $L-3 \jmath^{\partial}$ you（will）hit $X$ ，which takes subject and indirect object，though in colloquial speech this is often treated as a direct object（thus standing in the nominative rather than the expected dative in Series II）．The aorist indicative of this latter is regular for a root verb，namely し－ふวд－ə you hit $X$ ．

## Dialogue 4

Husband and wife，Roin and Irma，discuss the whereabouts of some tools















```
        дьдmbsдऽмпоs?
```



```
        доуощо.
```




```
        œっдのठっmgls.
```



```
        \(z^{\text {odっm }} 33^{\text {? }}\) ?
```




## Vocabulary

|  （bymми［0］бの | plumber artisan） | sulyme | past（of time） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| るulycm 3 ¢ | last week | ydumu3（＠u－） | you hide $X$ for $Y$ |
| Luojabo | chisel | Ј〕бก | you did $X$ |
| $\cdots \chi_{3}$ | you said $X$ | 9yob | you did $X$ to／with $Y$ |
|  | you lose X for $Y$ | Lorbm3 | you will ask $X$ for $Y$ |
| －0．6miza | you（will）lend $X$ to $Y$ | วゝ๑ | in that case |
| fo3um | I＇ll go | －33 | again，likewise |
| しっafiybumm＠ | unfortunately | วง¢ึวงб | last year |
| аmz30） | they gave $X$ to us | zulumgorn | key |
| －¢03（8u－） | you open $X$ | дмбubus | you will find $X$ |
| ${ }^{\text {bogerufym }}$ | tool |  | attentively |
| －0ヵzumajuga（＠u－） | you look over $X$ | งวธృる（дп－） | you find $X$（dat．） |
| ＠ujうO゙ロल0 | locked | zudmuoz［u］mo | way out |
| unaluby | work | bjemorun | wage／salary |
| ขวuģo（2m－） | you raise $X$ for $Y$ | Luatomm | necessary |
| змеппзのうmп | police |  | thief |
| ¢иппmbo | district | Эom（＠u－） | you arrest $X$ |
| Змmºros | police（－station） | nounjos（＠u－） | you summon $X$ |
| mo myuzo butit | what＇s it got to do with you？ | n30ヶno3（am－） | you steal $X$ |
| dunciosu（80－） | you burgle $X$ | 3 ¢ $33^{3}$ | you will find $X$ out |

## Proverb


Where a hawk is nesting，a dove will be unable to rejoice

## VOCABULARY

| Locor | where | コ3um＠［0］6\％ | hawk |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you nest |  | dove，pigeon |
| 30 m | not able | （8u－） $0-60$ m－9 ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | you rejoice |

## Verse


＇Work First，Then Frolic＇





































```
    (Rapiel Eristavi)
```

* This is an old use of the aorist subjunctive with future meaning.

| VOCABULARY |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| som | first | 「ֹrmas | work（ing） |
| aymo | then | bठпma | jump（ing），frolic |
|  | you study $X$ |  | chatterbox |
| 2\％） | sun |  <br>  | you look in on $X$ with wide eyes |
| 3－0－y－moz－u | $X$ is enough for you | ᄂfozms | study（ing） |
| دbmo | now | jư̇zo（－0） | （it is）good |
| 303mu | going outside | $8^{0-2 m(-® ๐)}$ | come out！ |
|  | you＇ll play a bit | um（0） 0 ¢ | no one |
|  | you tell／will tell／told $X \text { to } Y$ | วงวงฐృбก | your father |
| دMo | no | 2\％ว－Jomo（0） | lady sun |
| som | first | （8u－） $0-\infty 03-3^{3}$ | you complete $X$ |
| （＠）－） $0-\mathrm{Bl}^{\text {y }}$－ $0^{8}$ | you begin $X$ | Bomo | write／writing |
| Rogn | bird | amgoro | sing（ing） |
| $3 \% 9$ O3no（0） | wagtail | $\partial_{j}$ | I／me |
| muouon | master |  | you visit $X$ |
| $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{g}} 6$ | you | ovy | if |
|  | you abandon $X$ | ว๐ŋ | in that case |
| 8033うのกmo | lesson | －－y y m－9 | you look at $X$ |
| Buलn（buço） | garden（in garden） | bomo | fruit |
| उ०लuб๐ | child | d | that one |
| （＠）－） $\mathrm{mem}^{\text {cos }}$ | you tire $X$ | 8u－am－en－b－u－m | you come out |
| zuring | outside | $\begin{aligned} & \partial-\text { dub-o } \\ & \left(y^{2}-b-d J b-g^{B}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you call to $X$ |
| amyzoring | friend，companion | 306 | who？ |
| Пวल๐б | just now | of | here |
| 2m－3¢du6－＠－9b－o | you present yourself here | 9monbub | for a time |
|  | you laugh to $X$ |  | you serenade $X$ |
| dol | $X$（dat．） | umab［u］me | cherry |
| ＠umisbajou | shame |  | you hand $X$ to $Y$ |

## Exercises

1 Write out the aorist indicative paradigms，with the verb changing only for its subject，of：
（a）I did X with Y （as in the expression what did I do with $X$ ？）
（b）I shed（blood）
（c）I introduced X to Y
（d）I pruned X
（e）I brought X down
2 Fill in the gaps and translate：


（c）$\partial_{-} \delta_{\infty}-\delta_{-} \delta_{-3-3-}^{-}{ }_{-6} 3-\boldsymbol{b}_{2}$



（g）ond－a－b $\mathrm{b}_{-3-3-\text {（no }-\mathrm{o}-\mathrm{md} 3-- \text { ？}}$
（h）B＿д＿o＠o－э＿6＿o＿o－১－ৎ－
3 Put the correct case endings on the nouns in the following，assuming that the subject precedes any other nouns：



（f）onozemo－＠o－gis6bogagm－ 3obucos
 （plate）？





4 Work out the correct form of the verb in the following：
（a） $\mathscr{y}_{j} 6$ mo（say to）od domb？


 （bring for）


 （lean against）



5 Convert the following verb forms into their aorist indicative equivalents：
（a）${ }^{2} 3^{\text {qu }} 3^{6 \circ}$ on
（e）$\partial っ d$ мәзの
（i） $\mathrm{b} \quad \mathrm{z}$ до
（b） $3^{\text {bm＠oの }}$
（f） 3 ロfonmo




（d） $\mathrm{\partial b}_{\mathrm{z}}$ дの
（h） 30 ob 万
（l）๐ฤิบวกงธ

6 Express the following，each in a single Georgian verb form：
（a）we saw you
（e）you（pl．）hit
（i）I gave X to you （aorist） X
（b）they reared us
（f）I tired you（pl．）
（j）I corrupted you
（c）I wrote to you
（g）they counted X
（k）you gave X to Y
（d）you（pl．）let me go
（h）you said X to me
（l）we ate it

7 Translate into Georgian:
(a) Did the soldiers take anything away from you?
(b) I planted a few plants and then I washed my hand(s), woke up the baby and put the green dress on her.
(c) Why did you put your coat on? Did you go somewhere? I went to the neighbours' - I got something back.
(d) What did your mother do the day before yesterday? She got up at 8 , got dressed and read the newspapers.
(e) How much did you lend me? Since you were ill, I lent you 1,000 lari. By the way, you have already returned to me that book which I lent you.
(f) The parents entrusted the children to me yesterday. At school I showed them many interesting things. Then their parents gave me a lot of money.
(g) My wife went to bed at 11.30 . At 2 the baby began crying and woke us up.
(h) Did the soldiers execute our friends? No, our friends killed themselves.

8 Translate the following into English:
 งm๐.








 oym.

 ajoal.




## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

9 Below you will find jumbled up ten sentences in the order subject－ object（s）－verb．The first column contains the subjects，the second the objects， the third the verbs．Your task is to unscramble the sequences to produce ten grammatically correct and semantically sensible sentences．To ease the task， personal pronouns that would normally be omitted are written in brackets． All sentences are in the simple past．Once you have unscrambled them，trans－ pose them into the future tense（with all necessary changes to the marking of subject and object（s））：

| дудьœว ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （ $\mathrm{g}_{\text {g }}$ ） |  |  |
|  | （ $\beta_{3}{ }^{\text {］}}$ ） |  |
| ＠̧эд | （ヵヵ3う「） | дмззоуз ${ }^{\text {¢б }}$ |
|  |  |  |
| （วృ๐） |  |  |
| （ ®уј $^{\text {¢ }}$ |  |  |
| （ヵ』зว ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | bomozams | ＠งyโ3 |
| д๑ูงпдง | Bgat＠ol \％̌ymo | $303^{\circ} 3^{\circ 6 \mathrm{o}}$ |
|  | （29，${ }_{\text {g }}$ ）ob jo．mo | доэช＂о |

## Lesson 9

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- Colloquial relative clauses
- Temporal clauses meaning when
- Temporal clauses meaning while
- Manner clauses meaning as, like
- Temporal clauses meaning as soon as
- Temporal clauses meaning after
- Noun clauses introduced by that
- Causal clauses meaning because, as, since
- Simple conditional clauses
- The present indicative of the verb know


## Dialogue 1

A father and child ( $\partial_{3 \circ \mathrm{mo}}$ ) discuss the whereabouts of a new pen

| дьдь: |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  <br>  |
| дьдь: |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
| дьдı: |  |
| $\mathrm{g}_{\text {опмо: }}$ |  |
| дऽдı: |  |
| $\mathrm{g}_{3}$ пмо: |  <br>  |

## Vocabulary

| зu¢¢ 0 ］aの | pen | bygmoz［0］6n | hooligan |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 330ヶロッ3（2m－） | you steal $X$ from $Y$ | 3ņugn | jacket |
| ajóno | mayor | ymozomo | former，ex－ |
| دb¢мм（8［9］m＠） | close（－friend） | งరీymbu | apparently；it would appear |
| а＠п＠［0］mo | rich | mzubo | family |
| upmóng | precisely | 2uzпôma | for that reason |
| ¢nmenteo | when on earth | \％りしర゙ゃ | exactly |
| $\bigcirc{ }^{\circ}$ | you know it | วงวกб | then |

## Dialogue 2

An art－loving child discusses with his father a coming visit to an exhibition

| ²0¢＠ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| дっдゝ： |  <br>  |
| $\mathrm{g}_{3}$ пmo： |  <br>  |
| дงдı： |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| д3ощо： |  <br>  |

## Vocabulary

| зงдмозјбง | exhibition |  | sculpture |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ๑дழ⿰б๐ | so many | 8mलm | last |
| mozo | since | domnonuen | basic |
| －¢omo | early／earlier | saut forbuon | recently |
|  | （how so？）the same | 的うзmuas | advertisement |
| anty＠zom | according to（＋gen．） |  | council |
| вуммзงбп | artist | 80\％วのก | newspaper |
| ozjmingo（8u－） | you repeat $X$ |  | early（adj．） |


|  | popular | nubus | at the same time |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you mention $X$ | つృ＠っろ的 | work |
|  | not yet | 3n¢ony | while |
| $33^{\text {бu }}$ | Vienna | のЈзロ＠ | （by）himself |
| дпзуп¢о | you will sell $X$ to $Y$ | u3botnojmo | Austrian（person） |
| noy umo | as soon as，or not？ | оुпfinmb | you think $X$ |
| дмдзуп＠ | you will sell $X$ to us |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

Aza and her friend Leila discuss Aza＇s mother＇s visit to the hospital
 œoодоб。．















## Vocabulary

| ＠uलmのмп | tired | $5_{0 ¢ 0} 3$ | pray！ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ควృœ๐ | hope | mozou lufar | what＇s it all about？ |
|  | one of |  | （lit：in what is the business？） |

[^4]| Eungluza | relation（kin） |  | as soon as |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | news＊ | nomiza［g］men | kidney |
| （3）M0 | one（of pair） |  | you remove $X$ from out of $Y$ |
| mosumojmb | you talk |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you reach } X \\ & \quad(=\text { dat. } /-\partial @) \end{aligned}$ |
|  | in detail | ᄂuбua | while |
| m3gmozou | operation | Lofyomo | poor，wretched |
| amjnorbz $^{0}$ | regards，greetings |  |  |
| ＊cf．mo งazuzoง？what＇s going on？ |  |  |  |

## Grammar

## The formation of colloquial relative clauses

We have already seen how relative expressions can be produced exactly as they are in English．Colloquially，however，Georgian regularly employs a variant construction．The relative clause will not contain the relative pronoun standing in the appropriate case．Rather the clause will be marked by the invariant particle $\begin{array}{r}\text { m } \\ (\partial) \text { ，which，being a general indicator of subordination，}\end{array}$ may be used to mark most，though not all，types of subordinate clause，the context determining the meaning to be assigned to any given occurrence of it．In speech it is regularly pronounced without the final $-\partial$ ．

The subordinator $\operatorname{mm}(\partial)$ does not introduce its clause but is placed some－ where before the verb，and the clause as a whole tends to precede the noun it is qualifying，e．g．


```
The man who came yesterday is our new neighbour
```


The woman（whom）you will see tomorrow is our new neighbour
In such cases，if the relativised noun is not the subject of the relative clause （as in the first example above）or the direct object of that clause（as in the second example above），then its role within the relative clause is usually indi－ cated by the presence of a resumptive（demonstrative or personal）pronoun， though not all speakers would necessarily use this construction in careful speech，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { That/The woman to whom I gave the/a cake (סmóno) is my mother }
\end{aligned}
$$



```
That/The bed underneath which the cat left a/the mouse (o)&3~) is yours (pl.)
```



```
That/The girl (дmgm) with whom you came yesterday is my daughter
```



```
That/The lad in whose pocket (%\capO)
```

The noun which is being qualified by such clauses may actually stand within the clause, leaving behind a pronoun within the main clause. Compare the following with the above examples:







One of the first batch of examples is not included here. The reason is that,
 it could mean three things: (1) the cat which left the mouse under the bed is yours; (2) the mouse which the cat left under the bed is yours; (3) the bed under which the cat left the mouse is yours. If we wish to keep the relative clause as we have it here, then meaning (3) can be secured as follows:


Because this last construction can lead to such ambiguity, it is likely to be avoided when the meaning of the sentence is not immediately clear.

## Temporal clauses meaning when

Subordinate clauses of time when are introduced by either of the conjunctions $\operatorname{mogeglog}_{3}$ or mmzo. Care should be taken not to confuse them with the question form inm@ol when? There is no strict ordering of main and subordinate clauses. The verb of the clause will stand in the appropriate tense of the indicative mood. In English, when reference is to the future, we use the present indicative after when (e.g. When we get to know Zaza, we shall explain everything to him). In such circumstances, however, Georgian requires the future indicative, so that the above example will translate as:

[^5]Compare the past tense:

```
имm@
When we got to know Zaza, we explained everything to him
```





```
What do you do, when you are ill?
```

As stated earlier, the element mm( $\partial$ ) can be used to mark various types of subordinate clause, and temporal clauses meaning when fall into this category. As with relative clauses fashioned this way, the subordinator prefers to stand somewhere inside its clause. The previous five examples can, thus, be transformed into:






## Temporal clauses meaning while

When the verb in a temporal clause indicates ongoing activity, English can substitute the conjunction while for when. Georgian similarly can replace mm@glog//mmo with lubua/zo@ing. These conjunctions have other meanings, but, when they are found with the present indicative (as well as the imperfect indicative, to be introduced in Lesson 14), they signify while. The ordering of main and subordinate clauses is free, e.g.:


```
When//while you are watching (`yฯmj3) a video, do you drink beer
(my@o)?
```




```
aren't you?
```



```
Couldn't you drink the red wine while it was cold (%\cap३०)?
```

Note: since the verb to be and a few other verbs have no imperfect indicative, the aorist indicative may be substituted.

## Manner clauses meaning as, like

 how?). The main clause will often contain $\mathrm{olj}_{\boldsymbol{j}(30)}$ (just) so. The ordering of main and subordinate clauses is free, e.g.:


```
or
```



```
(or \({ }^{2}\) „бLul \(=\) that of yours)
We shall paint your house (just) (as beautifully) as we painted your sister's house
```

As with its English counterpart, mazmenc $_{\text {may }}$ may stand before just a noun (or pronoun) that is qualifying some other (pro)noun in the sentence and thus stands in the same case as the (pro)noun qualified, the sense being as, like, in the capacity of, e.g.:


```
I, as his parent, entrust this child to you
```



```
I, as his parent, entrusted this child to you
```




## Temporal clauses meaning as soon as

There are two strategies available: (1) the relevant clause is introduced by the
 (2) the subordinate clause takes the form of an alternative question, which is produced by the words am uno or not placed after the verb. When this strategy is employed, the subordinate must precede the main clause. As with clauses meaning when, English uses the present indicative even when reference is to the future; Georgian requires the future indicative in such cases, e.g.:




```
As soon as the teacher went out of the room the pupils began to be naughty
(OJm fmbo)
```





```
As soon as you receive the parcel (৩\partialงБงoon), you will write to me, won't you?
```

If $\operatorname{mm}(\partial)$ is used in the subordinate clause, the nuance as soon as can be conveyed by adding $\partial \iota \sqsupset ワ ก б ~_{3 \partial}$ right then to the main clause, e.g.:


## Temporal clauses meaning after


 Where English in actual reference to the future employs the present indicative in such clauses, Georgian requires the future indicative. The ordering of main and subordinate clauses is free, e.g.:


```
Will you bake the bread after you clean the house?
```



```
After I cleaned the house, I baked the bread
```



```
I'll take you home after I finish this dessert (Romm%o/@うlgmön)
```


## Noun clauses

When clauses function as nouns, they are called noun clauses and in Georgian are introduced by mm( $\partial$ ) that, which this time usually occupies first position in its clause. Where appropriate, the main clause may contain ol oुणOOn that (= the) fact or ol gomgamgo that ( $=$ the) circumstance in the appropriate case. The ordering of main and subordinate clauses is free, e.g.:




```
I see that you are here
```



```
The fact that no one (omozn6) stood up when we went into the room set us thinking
(@uzzugnfmu)
```



```
I have already explained to you that such behaviour ( Loforjomo) is forbidden \(^{\circ}\)
(ojéndumumn)!
```



```
You will explain to me, won't you, the reason \(\left(\partial_{n} \%_{0} \%_{\circ}\right)\) that this room is empty
```



## Causal clauses because，since，as

Such clauses can be constructed in a variety of ways．The most colloquial con－
 Answers to questions containing the word noठma why？usually begin with пдпठмд $\dot{m}(\partial)$ for the reason that（＝because）．When not in answer to the question why？，the expression for the reason that（＝because）will be conveyed
 that（юм（д）），e．g．：
 aし




the waiters（ moुの


Why are you leaving？Why？－Because they are not paying me attention！
It is worth noting that after such＇question word＇questions the answer is often construed colloquially by repeating the question word followed by＠๐．

A clause with the general subordinator $\operatorname{mm}(\partial)$ tucked inside the clause some－ where before the verb may be interpreted as one of cause，just as such a clause can be interpreted as one of time．The context clarifies the correct interpretation，e．g．：



```
(まっかっ)
or Since you are near me, I am not gripped with fear
```


## Simple conditional（if）clauses

Though we cannot yet examine the full range of conditional clauses（because we have yet to learn all of the relevant tense－mood forms），some of these can be discussed now．When a clause introduced in English by if refers to a simple activity that is ongoing at the moment of speech，then Georgian will render this by using the conjunction onv，usually at the beginning of the clause， in association with the present indicative，e．g．：

[^6]
If your father is in the garden, he is probably sowing seed(s)
But when reference is to a simple action/event yet to happen, even though English still uses the present indicative, Georgian uses either the future or the aorist [sic] indicative, e.g.:



```
If you drop the letter (hoงд@⿰弓) in the (post-)box for me (-\partial-п-), I'll be obliged
(lit: you will lay an obligation (३umo) on me)
```




```
If the enemy is victorious, we shall kill ourselves
```





## The verb know in the present indicative

There are two verbs that require an ergative subject and nominative direct object with the present indicative (and generally throughout the present subseries), and this is because these forms historically belonged to Series II. Both verbs mean know; the following is the usual form:

| $3^{-0-} 3^{-0}$ | I know (something) | $3^{-n-0} 3^{-0-\infty}$ | we know |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $0-\mathrm{O}^{-0}$ | you know | o-(\%-0-n | you (pl.) know |
| -- $\mathrm{c}^{-0-\mathrm{l}}$ | X knows | --0-0-১6 | they know |

The other verb is rather restricted, tending to be limited to the expression


 in the future indicative) seem to behave like verbs with thematic suffix -n , the $-\infty$ in their case is not this thematic suffix, as will be clear when we
 0-סу $3_{3}-$ ). Study these examples:


```
Does you father know that you are here?
```



```
(My) parents always (умзวलпоzol) know where I am
```





## Dialogue 4

A mother and child discuss how they will acknowledge a relative＇s Christmas present

| ＠ว＠๐： |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| วзомо： |  <br>  |
| ＠g＠ゝ： |  <br>  |
| วзомо： |  <br>  orob gl grafo！ |
| ＠ว＠๐： |  <br>  |
| ²омо：$^{\text {¢ }}$ |  <br>  |

## Vocabulary

|  | uncle＇s wife | Lumb（o）m | Christmas（adj．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | tomorrow＇s（adj．） | умзјмо | each |
| 33006 |  |  |  |
| aut gja＠oz mors | after |  | you remind $X$ of $Y$ |
| 6กว6uz | it means |  | of course |
| \％omaogo | lazy |  | of course |
| Luzu＇nm＠ | openly，publicly | دलnoting | you（will）confess $X$ |
| du＇momu | indeed | －¢－3－0－土が－j3 | I confess |

## Proverb




A tongue sweetly speaking will entice a wolf from its lair
$=\mathrm{A}$ tongue sweetly speaking will fetch a snake up out of its pit
The alternative version is a quote from the Georgian national epic The Knight in the Pantherskin by Shota Rust（a）veli（fl．1200）．Note the use of the instru－ mental alone for the notion＇out of／from＇．

VOCABULARY

| $\partial_{3}[0] \mathrm{mo}$ | wolf | Lmenm | hole | зงдм－п－уз ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | you will bring |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ${ }^{6} 5$ | tongue |  | sweetly |  | animate $X$ out |
| 2myzumo | speaking | ззЈмп | snake | $6_{3}{ }^{\text {ringen }}$ | pit |
| งдм－ก－узงб | you will b | animate $X$ | out |  |  |

## Verse

In this early piece by Luk＇a Razik＇ashvili（1861－1915），who took the pen－ name Vazha－Pshavela＇Lad of Pshav＇，note inter alia how Georgian can combine a（3rd person singular）pronoun（interrogative or personal）with a verb marked not by the expected 3rd person singular but either a 1st person plural or 2 nd person plural agreement marker and the resulting meaning．











```
(Vazha-Pshavela)
```


## VOCABULARY

| $\partial_{0}$ | I／me | 的（a） | if |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| రুпñomo | cry（ing） |  | you yearn for $X$ |
|  | you（pl．） | 306 | who？（dat．） |
| no | what？ | 8－п－6＠－」 | you want $X$ |
|  | pray | gimos | one |
| － 0 － $06-0$（ $0--0^{8}$ ） | you laugh | U630 | （an）other |
|  | you cry |  | such（as this） |
| －－m－n（－し） | $X$ is | J3oy［0］5u $^{\text {a }}$ | world |
| 301003 | who（dat．） | дm－z－f゙m6－し | you like X |
| ou | that one | 6v | don＇t！ |
| （＠u－）（L－）re－9 | you sit down | Ryanub | by me |
|  | crying |  | pipe |
|  | patron，master | Ojon | foot |
| （mmzmén | how？ |  | you extend $X$ to $Y$ |
| augmoa | but | （ $30-$ ） $0-3-3^{3}$ | you learn $X$ |
| gronbjemos | just the once | 306 | who？ |
| （ $6-$ ）¢\％－コ－b－১－¢ $=$ | －b－১－¢（ $0-$＠\％－つる－o） | you stand |  |
| دbmm（ L）$^{\text {a }}$ | close | ＠る̧mのn（¢zonl） | God |

## Exercises

1 Write out the present tense forms of the verbs I（etc．）know（a fact）and I（etc．）know（am acquainted with someone）．Add the aorist paradigm for the verb meaning $I$（etc．）introduced $X$ to $Y$（changing this last verb only for the person and number of the subject）．In each case include the relevant personal pronouns．

2 Fill in the gaps and translate：
（a） $\mathrm{a}_{-} \mathrm{m}_{-} \mathrm{o}_{-}$？
（b）$-\partial \partial_{-} 3^{\circ}-\partial_{-} \partial y_{-}$＠- ？



（f） $\mathfrak{m}-$ § $---3-$ かる -- ＠$b_{-} b_{\infty}-$ ？


3 Transpose the relative expressions below into more colloquial forms－at least two alternatives in each case（other than（d））are possible：







 длямддамоь．
4 Transpose the following colloquial relatives into more formal equivalents：




反эдмдо＠っ？







5 Translate the following conditionals into Georgian:
(a) If I see you tomorrow, I shall return the book to you.
(b) If you say that, they will kill you.
(c) If they are sitting in the guest room, they are probably listening to the radio.
(d) If I give you this apple, will you pour the wine for me?
(e) If your daughter is well, what is upsetting you?

6 Transpose the following subordinate clauses into more colloquial forms:






7 Translate into English:




 Iglobab?






8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) They all know that if they do this, we shall punish them.
(b) Since they went to Georgia yesterday, how shall we see one another on Thursday?
(c) Do you know this man? If you do not know him, I shall arrest him.
(d) I shall give you the book I bought for you today at the shop when I see you tomorrow.
(e) When they arrest me, I shall not hide this from the policemen.
(f) Do you know that everyone who is sitting in this room is gripped by fear?
(g) When I was in Tbilisi my friend showed me the exhibition of the artist who sold your father a painting.
(h) The girl from whom we took away the radio knows that we shall return it to her.

## Lesson 10

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The present and future indicative forms of intransitive verbs
- The meaning of this type of intransitive verb
- The syntax of intransitives
- How to associate indirect objects with intransitive verbs
- The future forms of the verbs be, come/go, run, be sitting/ standing/lying, sit down, stand up, lie down

Note that intransitive verbs will often be quoted in subsequent vocabulary lists with 3 rd person subject, since many do not naturally occur with 2 nd (or 1 st ) person subject.

## Dialogue 1

Nora and her friend Laura return home to find the children missing






```
    `yomb z
```









|  |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 6mms: |  |
|  |  |

## Vocabulary



## Dialogue 2

While the master is away, his workman Ucha and a friend Mindia get up to mischief!


 доъо œるобм?

















## Vocabulary

| Un5¢03（80－） | you test $X$ | дмуммп¢бумь¢ | unexpectedly |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you are returning |  | $X$ will come in／ go down |
| －6utgbo（g）－ | it is kept＊ | วucm［0］bo | wine cellar |
| 3 \％ome | it is cool | 36 jms | it is dark |
| un 3 unino | it is no good | $3^{\circ} \mathrm{B} \%$ | stairs |
|  | you follow $X$（down） | －＠zomo | place |
|  | $X$ is lost to $Y$ | auzumnonn | example |
| －3006mo | fire |  | $X$ fastens on $Y$ |
|  Lubemb | the house catches fire |  | $\begin{gathered} X \text { costs } Y \\ \quad \text { (so much } \\ =\text { nom.) } \end{gathered}$ |
|  | of this sort | 20゙y30 | you will say $X$ to $Y$ |
| $\bigcirc$－f6jou | it will be |  | look，over here！ |
| 3mome | bottle | ก6L6〕30（80－） | it can be opened （e．g．bottle）${ }^{\dagger}$ |
| bzuбfzumo（－0－）／ <br>  | Khvanch＇k＇aral Kinjmarauli ${ }^{\ddagger}$ | ふやす。（20－） | you go wrong |
| 2ృర゙っ＠ | too | avyo | dark（of colour） |
|  | colour | olajou | it is drinkable |
| 6umofo | dregs | วก\％ | inside |
| dońl | at／to the bottom | seobo（ho－） | $X$ sinks down in， lands |
| ＠๐п¢（－）33 | it will be drinkable | Mnjobo（＠u－） | you are staying |
| Ryau＠ | in silence | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{3}$ ¢ | I shall go up |
| smbou | it is better |  | you sneak in upon $X$ |

＊Compare Əुб๐bzo keeping，to keep．$^{2}$
$\dagger$ Compare jumo（zu）๐लృbง the door opens（will open）．
＊Types of red wine from Rach＇a／K＇akheti．

## Dialogue 3

Father P＇ant＇e and daughter Ek＇a visit a clothes shop












```
    зп@э().
```






```
    дコッるбаठังธ!
```


## Vocabulary

|  | you treat $X$ |  | skirt |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （80－） | with care | 2jбп 子u＠ous－ | it is for you to pay |
|  | $X$ happens to $Y$ | bejemo unold | for／blame falls |
| 9 $936 ృ$ \％ | you are saying |  | on you |
|  | $X$ to $Y$ | aluy fubn | fat |
|  | it fits $X$ | mb | oh |
|  | you look | anbejbu（am－） | it suits you |
|  | you agree with $X$ | bやするの（8u－） | you are getting thin |
| fmbu | weight |  | you reduce |
| luy | altogether |  | you are disappearing |
| zuab＠ouno | thin | －\％からする（80－） | you are growing |
| 3uluzjo | understandable | －3aj30 | $X$ is edible |
| мलைбழ | except only | \％manjtuo＠ | measuredly |
| ＠っこర | diet | $\mathrm{g}^{\text {baumgono（＠u－）}}$ | you help $X$ |
| bub¢buб／\％mдzgom | sometimes | бьдезпмп | real |
| з $363^{\text {¢ }}$ | it will harm you | зп¢оз | to boot |
| dzomo | expensive |  | for a while |
|  | you make do | Bj＠6пう的 | lucky |
|  | with a little |  | you make do with $X$ |


| $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{OH} \mathrm{n}$ | little |  | you conceive a desire |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you are satisfied |  | for $X$ |
| （＠）－） |  | yumo | refusal |

## Grammar

## The formation of the present and future indicatives of intransitive verbs

The transitive verbs which we have been examining so far represent the so－called Class 1 type of conjugation．The intransitive verbs we are about to examine follow the so－called Class 2 pattern．Many Class 2 intransitives func－ tion as the passive equivalents to their active Class 1 forms，but not all Class 2 verbs possess a Class 1 equivalent，and the meaning relation is not always simply that of passive－to－active（see grammar section that follows）．

The usual way of forming the future indicative for a Class 1 transitive verb is to add the appropriate preverb to the present indicative and the same construction is used for creating the future indicative from the present indica－ tive of Class 2 intransitives．For those intransitives that correspond to Class 1 transitives，the same preverb（s）will be used as for the transitive form．

There are three types of formation：（a）prefixal；（b）suffixal；and（c）mark－ erless．The present and future indicatives are similar in that in all three types a 3rd person plural subject selects the ending $-ง Б$ ，preceded by a formant $-\_$－．This formant is present throughout the conjugation except when the subject is 3rd person singular，marked by the subject agreement suffix－u；any version vowel associated with the relevant root in its transitive form will disappear． In all but some sub－types of the prefixal intransitive the thematic suffix－っb－ precedes the suffixal elements just mentioned．While these features alone characterise the markerless type，the suffixal intransitive differs by adding a －œ－before the thematic suffix－$\jmath^{3-}$ ，whereas the prefixal adds no such suffix but places the vowel 0 －immediately before the root．The conjugations are illustrated with the present indicatives of be cut open，redden／blush，warm up respectively：

| Prefixal | Suffixal | Markerless |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $3-0-339^{\text {a－3－}}$ | 3－form－ए－${ }^{\text {b－o }}$ | $3-\infty 8-3^{3-0}$ |
| － $339^{\text {a－}}{ }^{\text {b－n }}$ | Fొome－＠－つb－○ | の8－38－ก |
|  | Fronm－＠－つる－u | の8－〕3－」 |
| $3-$－ $3350 \sim-3^{\text {－－－－}}$ | 3－foome－ए－j3－n－の | $3-\infty 8-3^{3-n-\infty}$ |
| －－ $33 \mathrm{j}^{\text {a－9 }}$－n－n | Foome－e－jb－n－の | の8－〕る－ก－の |
| －－33）の－38－п－งб | Fonce－＠－j3－0－د6 |  |

(If readers refer back to Lesson 2, they will see that the verbs for sit down, stand $u p$ and lie down presented there are of the markerless intransitive type.)

By adding the appropriate preverb here ( $80-$ in all three cases) the future indicatives will be produced.

The occurrence of these three patterns will now be explained according to the different types of verb.

## Root verbs

Though there are some exceptions, the norm is for root verbs to be of the prefixal type, as illustrated above for cut open. Those root verbs that change the radical - - - to $-ก-$ in the transitive aorist indicative, as explained in Lesson 8, undergo this same change in all intransitive tense-mood forms throughout Series I and II. This is shown by the verb squash (cf. (zo-) bigl you (will) squash $X$ ):

Note: the radical -৩- in foa you eat $X$ disappears in the intransitive to give $\cap-3 \partial-\jmath 8-\lrcorner X$ is edible.

Those verbs in $(-)_{)^{6}}$ that follow the prefixal pattern also change this internal



Verbs in $(-)_{03}$ retain this element but do not then take the thematic suffix
 down:
 have suppletive intransitives of the markerless variety ((zu-) ठy@-〕ठ-৩ X breaks
 that are not of the prefixal type drop the $(-)_{0} \sigma$ and follow the markerless
 lead $X$ into error are constructed as follows:

|  | I (shall) stay/remain |  | I (shall) go wrong |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (@)-) mR -j $\mathrm{j}^{\text {-0 }}$ |  | $\left(y^{\prime 2}\right) 0$ ) 0 e-ja-0 |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| (@)-)3-mh-ab-n-m |  |  |  |
| (@)-) mh-j3-0-¢ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

The verb（ $\left.\partial_{m-}\right)^{\prime}-$ b＠（ -$)_{0} 6$ you（will）effect／arrange／do $X$ can be regarded as the transitive equivalent of the very useful markerless intransitive（ $\partial \mathrm{m}-) \mathrm{b} @-\jmath \mathrm{\jmath}$ it is happening（will happen）．The same is true of the pair：（ $0 \cup-) \cup-6 \varrho(-)_{\jmath} Б$ you（will）render X useless and（ $\ddagger \supset-)$ b＠－১১－৩ X becomes（will become）useless．

## Thematic suffix－eb

Most verbs of this type that either（a）have no vowel in the root，or（b）do not employ the neutral version vowel－১－in their transitive forms follow the prefixal pattern，e．g．：

| （＠）－）- － $00-0^{3}$ | you（will）light $X \rightarrow$ | （＠）－）－－6の－〕ठ－১ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | it catches（will catch）light |
| $(80-) \sim-m-3^{3}$ | you（will）open $X \rightarrow$ | （zu－） $0-$－$-3^{\text {a－u }}$ |
|  |  | it open（will）open |
| （＠）－）8u＠－93 | you（will）give birth to $X \rightarrow$ |  |
|  |  | it is being（will be）born |
|  | you（will）hang $X \rightarrow$ |  |
|  |  | it is being（will be）hung／hanged |

The majority of verbs in $-\jmath^{3}$ ，however，use the suffixal formation e．g．：

| $(80-) 0-30^{00-58}$ | you（will）do $X \rightarrow$ | $\left(z^{(0-)} 30^{\infty-\varrho-0^{z-}}\right.$ <br> $X$ is being（will be）done |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you（will）build $X \rightarrow$ | $\text { (u-) } y_{\jmath} 6-\varrho-0^{z-u}$ <br> $X$ is being（will be）built |
| （8u－）- －¢0¢－－3 | you（will）enlarge $X \rightarrow$ | $X$ is getting（will get） big（from＠っ＠－○ big） |
|  | you（will）whiten $X \rightarrow$ | (zu-) <br> $X$ is turning（will turn） white（from øうロウ́n－○ white） |
| $(80-) 0-903^{-} 0^{3}$ | you（will）make X sovereign $\rightarrow$ | $X$ becomes（will become）sovereign （from $\partial_{\jmath}$ эə sovereign） |

Many verbs of this type，such as the last three above，are formed on noun or adjective roots．In such cases，the force of the intransitive is that of becoming

 heavy）also exists（cf．мळん $X$ is pregnant）．If the noun or adjective ends in $-\boldsymbol{y}$ or $-m$ ， $\mathbf{a}-3^{-}$is inserted
 widen) from oुபֹnल wide).

## Thematic suffix -av

The prefixal pattern applies in all cases. For verbs with a vowel in the root, the thematic suffix disappears altogether (e.g. (@u-) $\partial \mathrm{um-ง}_{\mathrm{m}}$ you (will) hide $X$

 the thematic suffix is retained, but reduces to - ${ }^{-}$(e.g. (@u-) $)$--noo-৩3 you (will) $\operatorname{spin} X \rightarrow$ (@u-) $0-$-noo-з-0る-৩ $X$ is being (will be) spun). If the root itself ends in $-_{3}$, then the expected remnant of the thematic suffix also is lost (e.g. (@u)
 vowelless root ends in $-\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{\sigma} / \mathrm{m}$, then the 3 -remnant of the thematic suffix slots


 being (will be) tied up).

## Thematic suffix -i







One oddity is the verb (३u-)b@-○ you (will) make X become (something); it has the markerless intransitive ( $30-) \mathrm{b} 叩-\bigcirc \mathrm{\jmath}-\mathrm{O} X$ becomes (will become) (something). This contrasts with the verb ( - -)b@-○ you (will) remove $X$ from the
 removed/is (will be) removable).

## Thematic suffix -ob

Some verbs of this type employ the prefixal pattern, others the markerless. Those that are prefixal retain the thematic suffix $-m \delta$ and do not add $-\jmath^{\delta-}$


 is suffocating/drowning). Of those that follow the markerless paradigm, since the root is no longer followed by an m-vowel, any root-final -3 effaced by the $m$-vowel of the normal thematic suffix will reappear, slotting inside the root for those verbs that have this pattern in the transitive aorist indicative,

 （＠u－） $0 \mathrm{~g}^{(m-\jmath る-ゝ ~} X$ is getting（will get）drunk）．Sometimes verbs of this type possess both a prefixal and a markerless intransitive；in such cases，the prefixal will be more a true passive，whilst the markerless will have the force of a

 be）baked）．

## Thematic suffix－am

The prefixal pattern is followed．The thematic suffix is retained but reduced to $-\partial$ ；if the root ends in -3 ，this disappears because of the following $\partial$－remnant
 be）bound／is（will be）bindable， $\mathrm{L}_{3}$－১д you are drinking $X \rightarrow$ ○－し－д－っる－৩ $X$ is drinkable；for the root of $0-\infty \neq-\partial-\jmath^{3-}$－it may be said see the transitive aorist indicative $๓ \jmath_{3}-\circ$ you said $X$ ）．

## Thematic suffix－op

The prefixal pattern applies with－moz being retained and without the extra
 $\bigcirc X$ is being（will be）splittis（will be）splittable）．

## Other constructions

Not all Class 2 verbs are the intransitive equivalents of Class 1 transitives． For example，the verb die is a Class 2 verb of the markerless type without any corresponding Class 1 form $\left((2 m-)_{j 3 \varrho-\rho^{8-\lrcorner} X}\right.$ is dying（will die），cf．
 grammarians the verb just quoted yields to a suppletive root of the prefixal
 kill them as against $\left(\partial_{m-}\right)_{\mathrm{J}} \mathrm{m}^{-\iota_{3}}$ you（will）kill $X$ ）．

Similarly suppletive for the number of the subject are the roots signifying fall，the singular root being markerless，the plural being suffixal（gмळmmo



We have already discussed（am－）b＠－うる－ง it is happening（will happen）and （子u－）bœ－っる－১ X is becoming（will become）（something）；the latter form has an exact homonym（子u－）它＠－১る－ゝ meaning $X$ is growing（will grow）thin，for which there is no Class 1 equivalent．When accompanied by the preverb $\mathrm{s}^{-}$，the intransitive form of this root also lacks any Class 1 equivalent（ $\circlearrowleft-b @-\jmath る-৩$ some dream／wish will be realised）．

## Meaning and syntax of Class 2 intransitive verbs

As we have seen，some of the intransitive verbs above have been translated as passives，as in $0-38036-08-\bigcirc X$ is being sent．In such cases the agent may be expressed by use of the free－standing postposition $\partial_{n} g^{\prime}$（some verbs also allowing the non－free－standing－з०6）by＋the genitive case．The subject of Class 2 verbs in all tense－mood forms will be nominative，e．g．：


```
This parcel (১дงбง०O) will be sent to Moscow by the secretary
(= \partial@⿰弓⿱\mp@code{[0]6n)}
```

It is possible to find examples of all three sub－types of Class 2 intransitives used passively in association with an agent，e．g．：




And，for a markerless intransitive，we can adapt St John 3：17（from the 1982 New Testament published in Sweden by the Institute for Bible Translation） to give：


```
The world will be saved by Jesus
```

However，Georgians seem to prefer to avoid Class 2 intransitives in a passive sense，utilising instead the appropriate transitive form with an unspec－ ified 3rd person plural subject in circumstances where the agent does not have
 They／People positively evaluate their work $=$ Their work is（being）positively evaluated）．

The force of the Class 2 formation for many verbs is simply that of an intransitive activity（with no implication of there being an agent and certainly no possibility of stating one），e．g．：

|  | The door is opening |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | The girls are hiding |
|  |  |
|  | I get angry（3－8（n）\％－＠－38－0）easily |
|  | $X$ is smirking＊（the preverb is $\mathrm{z}^{\circ-}$ ） |
| $0-3^{8(-) n 6-98-0}$ | $X$ bites／is biting （only in the present sub－series， <br>  you will bite $X, y-\jmath(-) \wedge 6-\jmath$ you bit $X$ ） |

＊The first alternative may also mean $X$ is being cut／is cuttable．

Perhaps the most common sense in which prefixal intransitives are used is that of indicating that the nominative subject is potentially capable of under-
 it can be reduced in size $\leftarrow\left(\mathrm{am}_{\mathrm{m}} / \partial_{0}-\right)_{\jmath} \mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{am}} \mathrm{o}_{\mathrm{o}}$ you (will) reduce $X$ in size, ○- ¢लб-эठ-ง it can be weighed).
As indicated in the translations given for some of the earlier examples, some Class 2 intransitives may have more than one of these senses. One simply has to learn which is/are appropriate to any given verb. One further
 you see $X$, and like its transitive counterpart it is only found in the present sub-series. It may be used in the sense $X$ can be seen/is visible, or it may be used as a simple intransitive $X$ is looking (in some direction), in which sense




The next section will describe how indirect objects can be marked with Class 2 formations. An indirect object of a Class 2 verb in any tense-mood form will always stand in the dative case.

## The marking of intransitive verbs with indirect objects

For prefixal intransitives an indirect object may only be expressed in one way, namely by changing the prefix 0 - to $0^{-}$, in front of which the relevant object agreement affix is placed. If the indirect object is 3rd person plural and animate, then this plurality may optionally be marked by use of the suffix -の (i.e. the bracketed element from the table in Lesson 6) as long as the

 are hiding from the parents, i.e. with no possibility of adding the pluraliser). These bipersonal intransitives correspond in meaning to any of the equivalent transitive forms with indirect object. If we take the verb write, we can produce three transitive forms with indirect object, namely: (@u-) m- ©jer you
 write $(X)$ to $Y$. And so the corresponding bipersonal intransitive in this case is ambiguous, at least in the present sub-series (e.g. $83^{-0-00} 0^{m-}-\jmath^{b-ง}$ it is being
 men; in tense-mood forms taking a preverb the meaning to will be indicated by use of $\partial_{\circ}-/ \partial_{m}$, while the other two senses will require @๐-).

The potential force may also characterise these bipersonal forms, where the indirect object will indicate who has the capacity to carry out the verbal action. So, the above forms have a fourth meaning (welthe men can write $X$ ). Such forms, where the dative indirect object might be felt to be almost the subject itself, come close to the indirect (Class 4) verbs, to be discussed in Lesson 13. Study the following:



```
I am/You are/ \(X\) is losing patience
```



```
Money will be sent to you
```



```
A prize is being given to \(u s\)
```

The transitive future of give contains the thematic suffix -əว. The intransitive future is prefixal with this $-\jmath^{2}$ retained and no extra $-\jmath^{8-}$; the same interplay between the preverbs $\partial_{0}-$ and $\partial m$ - occurs as with the transitive forms, e.g.:

| $\left.\partial_{m}-\partial-\right)^{-c^{-}} y^{\text {a }}$ | it will be given to me |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | it will be given to you (pl.) |
|  | you (pl.) will be given to us |
|  | it will be given to them |
| 2m-z-9- $3^{-} 9^{\text {a-n }}$ | I shall be given to you |
|  | we shall be given to $X$ |
|  | you (pl.) will be given to $X$ |

Some prefixal intransitives exist only as bipersonals (with or without a corresponding transitive form), a feature that is common to some suffixal and markerless intransitives below:

| (@)-) $¢$-мm@-ృ8-ก | you are waiting (will wait) for $X$ (no transitive form) |
| :---: | :---: |
| - -6@-m8-ก | you (will) trust $X$ <br> (cf. (д৩-) ৩-бৎ-мठ you (will) reveal $X$ to $Y$, <br> and ( $\left.\mathrm{a}^{\circ}-\right) \cup-\mathrm{-}$ @-mठ you (will) entrust $X$ to $Y$ ) |
|  | you (will) live long enough to experience $X$ <br>  |
|  | you (will) attack $X$ <br> (cf. ( $\left.\left.\partial_{\jmath}(\partial m)-\right)_{y-b(-)}\right)_{33}$ you (will) send $X$ to attack $Y$ ) |
| $\left(\partial_{0} / \partial_{\partial}-\right)^{\prime}-R_{3}(-)_{33^{-0}}$ | you (will) grow accustomed to $X$ <br>  |
|  | you (will) greet $X$ <br> (cf. (дп-/дm-) $৩-\iota \nu ल \partial-\jmath^{8}$ you (will) get $X$ to greet $Y$ ) |
| $\left(y^{2}-\right)^{2}-\mathrm{b}-y^{3-0}$ | you (will) touch $X$ <br> (cf. ( $\left.\partial_{\partial-)}\right)-\mathrm{b}-\jmath^{8}$ you (will) bring $X$ into light contact with $Y$ ) |
|  | you (will) sneak in upon $X$ <br> (cf. (əŋ-) ৩-3৩(n-〕る you (will) sneak X in (to Y)) |
| (80-) $)^{-8^{6-m 8-0}}$ | you (will) introduce yourself to X/familiarise yourself with $X$ <br>  |

Although some verbs exist in all three forms (transitive, monopersonal intransitive and bipersonal intransitive), the meaning relation might not be
 $(-) y 6-\jmath^{8}$ you (will) convince your friend of the truth of this (lit. in this). The

 means you are seeking to affirm; it is used only in the present sub-series and is often followed by a noun clause introduced by $\operatorname{mo}(\partial)$, such as:


```
The sick man is trying to make a convincing statement to the effect that
he is well
```

Sometimes a verb which is formally bipersonal of the prefixal type has no easily identifiable indirect object:




```
compared with
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline  & they (will) collapse/flop down with plural subj \\
\hline  & \(X\) is setting (will set) out hurriedly \\
\hline  & \(X\) slackens (will slacken) \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
```

For suffixal and markerless intransitives there are three ways of associating an indirect object with the verb, depending on the meaning and/or the verb.

1 The appropriate agreement affix is simply placed immediately before the root, e.g.:




```
compared with
```

|  | $I$ (shall) meet you |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you (will) follow $X$ |
|  |  |

With the preverb $\mathrm{z}^{\circ}$ - ( $\mathrm{z}^{2} \mathrm{~m}$ - if the dative noun is 1 st or 2 nd person) this verb is a way of saying get married to for a woman, e.g.:

I, Liana, shall marry Zaza (lit. follow out Zaza as wife)

 you (will) marry your daughter to Zaza). The equivalent expressions for male





We have already encountered a number of intransitive usages for the root －bœ－．Another one relates to the verb（зง＠๐－）о－bœ－○ you（will）pay（X）．The bipersonal intransitive means it（i．e．responsibility for repayment／restitution） devolves upon $X$－at least，this usage did once exist，though two of the native speakers who commented on this book bridled at an example originally included in Dialogue 3．The following example is adapted from one by the writer Egnat＇e Ninoshvili（1859－1894）quoted in the Georgian Academy Dictionary：


```
If you give me a receipt ($3~\delta~6
(bృм-دbल⿱八)}\mp@subsup{}{}{1
```

2 The locative version vowel－১－stands between agreement prefix and root， and such examples can usually be linked to the notion on implied by this version，e．g．：

|  | it dries（will dry）on $X$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| （＠）－）－－33＠－〕z－৩ | $X$ dies（will ${ }^{2}$ die）on top of／along with $Y$ |
|  | $X$ pesters（will pester）$Y$ <br>  |
|  | you（will）put $X$ in cold water） |
|  | it is（will be）reduced to $X$ |
|  |  |

 without root vowel，the intransitive is suffixal．

3 The objective version vowel－o／v－stands between agreement prefix and root and usually signifies the same sense of possession or benefaction we saw with transitive verbs，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { for you }
\end{aligned}
$$

[^7]|  | $X$ is warming (will warm) up for $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Our $X$ is breaking (will break) dow |
|  | $X$ grows (will grow) angry with you |
|  | $X$ loses (will lose) X's temper with |

 suit) $X$.

## Some anomalies among the intransitives

Intransitive verbs, by definition, should not take direct objects. However, some Class 2 verbs are combined with two dative nouns, one of which is clearly the indirect object, whilst the other appears to function as a direct object. The verb $0-y^{36}-\jmath^{3-o}$ you tell $X$ to $Y$ is one such of the prefixal type; in the future it has the suppletive form $0-0^{-} y_{3}^{-\infty}$, e.g.:


```
Children tell/will tell fibs ( \(\left(\begin{array}{rl}\mathrm{y} & \mathrm{m} \circ \text { ) to their parents } \\ \hline\end{array}\right.\)
```



```
I tell/will tell the truth (しnдงмळलョ) to my wife
```



```
What are you ( pl.\()\) saying/will you (pl.) say to \(u s\) ?
```

 to $Y$ :


```
Men (will) promise everything to women
```



```
What are you (pl.) promising (will promise) me?
```

Some similar verbs are combined with just one dative noun; one is for example the verb whose suppletive but transitive future indicative we have already
 doing $X$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { What are the workmen }\left(\partial_{\mathrm{y}}^{\mathrm{g}} \mathrm{~g}_{\mathrm{\jmath}} \mathrm{o}\right) \text { doing in my room? Nothing }
\end{aligned}
$$

This verb can, however, be given an indirect object by incorporating the objective version:

## งশn

They are doing nothing bad to us

What are you (pl.) doing to $X$ ?

Similarly the verb sense／understand $X$ may be associated with either two or three arguments：
 this pattern：


```
I normally devote a week to this sort of job
```

In the present sub－series alone the intransitive form of write can be used with such a problem－dative as a virtual alternative to the transitive expres－


When give is used in the present sub－series without a specified indirect object，the formal intransitive is obligatory with a problem－dative（？）direct object，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { duzumnonl } 3^{-0-d_{m}(-)} 3_{33^{-0}} \quad \text { I am giving an example }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Some irregular future indicatives

The futures are presented in the order：be，which is derived from a root meaning make（i．e．that which is being made now will be／exist in the future）； the root of motion，which with the preverb $\partial_{m}$－means come；the root for run， which with the preverb $\mathrm{\partial m}_{\mathrm{m}}$ means run hither，be sitting，be standing，be lying， sit down，stand up，lie down：

| $3^{-0-76-)^{z-}}$ | $\partial \mathrm{m}-[3-]_{3} \mathrm{Jm}$ | $\partial m-3-0-m 8(-)_{7} 6$ | $3-0-8$ e－3， 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $0-36-9^{8-0}$ | дm－6－30m |  | $\bigcirc-8 \mathrm{e}-3^{3-0}$ |
| $\bigcirc-36-\jmath^{3-}$ | дм－3 |  | －－se－j8－১ |
| $3-0-\sqrt{6-\jmath^{B-0-\infty}}$ | $\partial m-[3-]_{3} \times m-\infty$ |  | 3 3－n－lbe－yz－n－¢ |
|  | дm－6－30m－n | am－n－mb（－）$)^{\text {b－の }}$ | －－lbe－${ }^{\text {b－on－m }}$ |
| －－Э6－эz－0－งб | дм－3m－的 |  | －－Ub＠－วる－n－ub |
| 3 －0－03－98－0 | 3 －0－63－93－0 | ＠u－3－sए－うる－○ | －－3－e3－9b－n |
| $\bigcirc-\mathrm{CO}^{-3-0}$ | $0-63-9^{8-0}$ | ＠－＞＞－98－п | －－¢3－98－0 |
|  | －－63－93－ט | ＠－－̧ए－9－－ | －－¢3－ab－u |
| 3－0－¢3－93－0－m | $3-0-13^{3-9} 3-0-\infty$ | ＠u－3－bbए－9z－n－m | －－3－93－jb－n－m |
| －－¢る－つる－n－の | －－63－0 ${ }^{3-0-\infty}$ | ＠u－Ubや－うる－n－の | －－ez－jb－n－m |
| －－ツ\％－98－0－u6 | －－63－98－0－งб | ＠u－Ub＠－っる－n－১б | －－＠る－98－n－u6 |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { @u-3- }-6_{3}-0^{3-n-\infty} \\ & \text { @u- } B_{3}-0^{3-n-\infty} \\ & \text { @- } B_{3}-0^{3-n-u 6} \end{aligned}$ |  |

Note that bipersonal forms of the verb of motion also exist. In the present (sub-series) the object agreement affixes usually just stand before the root (though the objective version is also possible), whereas in the future (subseries) the objective version is essential. Examples are of the form meaning come:


```
I am catching/shall catch a cold (Lyֹウ@м)
```



```
Money is coming/will come to you (pl.)
\((=Y o u(\mathrm{pl}\).\() are receiving/will receive money)\)
```

Compare the same form but with a different preverb:


```
Smoke ( \(\mathbf{3 m \mathrm { m }}\) ) is rising/will rise from them
```


## Dialogue 4

Scholars Lasha and K'ot'e talk on the phone about a conference and politics


















## Vocabulary

| Oon＠gou（Ro－） | it is taking place |  | conference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \％งan［0］ mo | winter | －2umonjo（zu－） | it is taking place |
| anfiョñymb／ œ๐амлаз | at the end | ＠uдœ⿰弓冫⿰亻⿱丶⿻工二又 <br> agludmormmzo | at the start possibility |
| のレアがっるの（＠u－） | you are attending $X$ | zum＠ungzmabo | you will pass away |
|  | your $X$ is dying |  | you promise $X$ to $Y$ |
| のomo（am－） | you make time | （\％）－／（＠u－） |  |
| amblogbjo | talk，paper | luzumum． | sad |
|  | news，report |  | scholar，scientist |
| ¢об | ago（＋gen．） | Rojuzm | Chicago |
|  | you are passing |  | famous |
| （zงдм－） | away from $X$ |  | no one any longer |
| nombs | generation | дmaı3［0］mo | future（noun or adj．） |
| $33 \mathrm{mRjobn} \mathrm{(@)-)}$ | you remain to us |  | situation |
|  | political | maymagleabu | it is getting better |
|  | $X$ is changing | （80－） |  |
| ajouvionn | leader | bumbo | people |
|  | you understand | Buenmo | yearning |
|  | $X$ for $Y(=Y$＇s $X)$ | zum＠ołว26u | perestroika |
| 3 unmoub | process | ®yobo（＠u－） | it is beginning |
| m（3¢jbu | dream | Lozummmbo | glasnost |
|  | meeting |  | $X$ is fulfilled for $Y$ |
| 3sgrobo（＠u－） | $X$ is believable to $Y$ | lob ¢930（o－） |  |
| аmaızum | till we meet again |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

## Proverb


Strike while the iron is hot

## VOCABULARY

| $33)^{\text {m－u3 }}$（3u－дm－） | hammer out |  | iron |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ᄂงธงว | while | $3^{\text {bomon（ }}$ ） | hot（it is） |

## Verse


＇Jack Frost and the Little Pupil＇















```
ŋбщмщь дьмь дьдмдкобь,
```







```
yобzьд дьдобзд доъ заб додьпппь
```








```
дмдодппдвоь д\mp@code{Јmg@ zolgmo."}
```





















（Nik＇o Lomouri）

## VOCABULARY

| yo6zo | freezing | ＠） | and |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 30రుumo（0） | small，little one | 2mfuogo | pupil |
| ппймо | snow | ＠⿴囗口丂ŋбпмп | covered，spread |
| Oomoumo | broad |  | meadow |
| onomfm（b） | as if | мкд八 | deep |
| domo | sleep | ho－z－9－dn6－3z－0 | you will nod off |
| bonton | thick | Oy\％ | forest |
| Bocor－foamutaymo | veiled | Lubo | face |
| Limymoue | completely |  | your $X$ turns to stone |
|  งがun＠o． | from nowhere | （2m－）n－しる－п－U | $X$ is heard |
| amis | neither／nor |  | prey（of hunted animals） |
| bว」 | sound | 3030 （3080） | man（of men） |
| dubomo | cry，yell |  | all round |
| 30 | sky，heaven | 3＠＠） | edge |
|  | as far as | ＠3－১－し（0－＠3－03－৩） | $X$ stands |
| unhuads | silence | 300 | like |
|  | dead person | งว | this（oblique） |
| амозумо | enveloped | mu6＠umaб | gradually |
| （8u－）demogn－ए－jz－n | you grow strong | bงб ．．．b ¢ | now ．．．now |
| טलฎ」 | up there | dono | mountain |
| Roamedu | down here | $\bigcirc 80$ | X |
|  | regally |  | you seat yourself |
| nobor | and at the same time | のзงmo | eye |
|  | you move $X$ away from $Y$ |  | well－trodden |
| 380 | path | 3－0－6＠－১ | you want $X$ |
| domo | strength | （zu－дm－） $0-\beta_{j} 6$ | you reveal $X$ |
| ¢06（） | in front | （＠u－） $3-b_{3}$＠－ $0^{3-0}$ | you meet $X$ |
| дмдоз［ง］mo | coming，future | $\mathrm{a}_{3}$ \％uzimo | traveller |


| บวว尔（0） | look here！ | ふొ¢っく | to boot |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you appear | $3_{3} \mathrm{n}_{3}$ | child |
|  | book |  | armpit |
| byoron | swift | 6ubnzo | step |
| $3^{\text {mosbuma }}$ | lively，alive |  | you scamper there |
| ol | that one | L＿gmes | school |
| วงวกбろว | rightaway |  | towards $X$ |
| （2п－） 2 ¢ | you turn towards $X$ | 2molbutjou | anger |
|  | you stand before $X$ | レумлмп | stupid |
| ufinogre | quickly | дก－u－dut－${ }^{\text {b }}$ | you will shout at $X$ |
| m－mb（－）$)_{3}$ | you give $X$ as advice to $Y$ |  | right now |
|  | you return | ว๐๐ | home |
| Ryano6 | by／with me | 30¢3ろmbu | stubbornness |
| $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{g}} \mathrm{b}$ | you | （Jom） $80-8-0-30$ | your $X$ will（not） succeed |
| dumo | soon |  | your X changes |
| Booymo | red | \％omo | colour |
|  | you know $X$ |  | greatness，glory |
| am－z－n－aing $b-0-0$ <br>  | may you perish！ <br> （lit．twist your neck） | apum̧¢ | bitterly |
|  | you hear $X$ | узјмо（0） | all |
| $)^{\text {b }}$ | this | 3－303－0 | you are cold |
| дпуmen | whole | ठ）$\square_{0}$ | body |
| duaduz－j8（n－－38） | you shudder | 2ın6 $^{\text {¢ }}$ | even so |
| （＠）－）¢a－9b－n | you come to a standing halt | ${ }^{\text {bomo }}$ | hand |
| \％³6ృరు | rub（bing） |  | you bound off |
| Oj\％ | foot |  | you make X thump as you go |
| （zu－） 2 mosb－e－9z－0 | you get angry | 8 ¢m | heart |
| am－z－＠n－し | $X$ comes to you | 2bбjmbu | boldness |
|  | you increase $X$ | Lylun | cold bite |
| 3036mo | fire | （＠）－）- － $00-0^{3}$ | you light $X$ |
| －20 | that one＇s | mмyo | cheek |
| yemo | ear |  | you grow anxious |
| dmojen | greatly | $\mathrm{h}_{3} \mathrm{\sigma}^{\text {¢ }}$ | our |
| дヵलைए | entirely |  | your X freezes |
|  | alas！ | ＠りや | mother |
| － $33^{3}$ | straightaway | （8u－） 0 －しる－o－し | $X$ rings out |
| $\begin{aligned} & \left(z^{\prime}-\partial m-\right)_{8-03}-3- \\ & \text { @-9 }-0 \end{aligned}$ | they fall from you | Lufyomo | wretched |
|  | tear | auzinoa | but |


| 30 | however | luge | entirely |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you grow fearful |  | you keep your foot in place |
|  | you have a little rest | ข $33^{3}$ | suddenly |
| dumo | power | ммб\％ | strength |
| moç domen $3-0-\mathrm{fl}_{3}$－ | with all the power you possess | дงバ＠u¢ | smartly |
|  | you hurry away hither | วงธ | $X$（erg．） |
| дп－mo－n－b－১－¢n | you run away |  | window |
| mufo | light |  | you forget $X$ |
| ๑วإ | that one（dat．） | 3uforuy 0 | bragging |

## Exercises

1 Write out the present and future indicative for $I$（etc．）（shall）hide from $X$ and $I$（etc．）（shall）promise $X$ to $Y$ ，changing both verbs for their subjects only．Then write out the present and future indicative for $X$ becomes／will become angry with me（etc．）and they（will）surrender to me（etc．），changing these verbs for the dative indirect object only（i．e．me，you，X，us，you（pl．）， them）．

2 Fill in the gaps and translate：



（d） $9^{\mathrm{b}}-3^{\circ 6}-3-6 \mathrm{~b}-\mathrm{b}-9^{\mathrm{b}}-$ ？

（f）$-9^{6}$ っ＠


3 Wrap the appropriate agreement markers around the verbs in the following：



（d）дงдっ дง๓ -33 ＠ว ${ }^{2}-(-)$





4 What is the meaning of the following verb forms?


(b) $3^{\text {пd }} \mathrm{m} 3^{\circ}$ п
(j) $\mathrm{y}^{(\mathrm{y}} \mathrm{d} \mathrm{g} \partial \mathrm{O}(\infty)$

(k) $39^{\text {¢@mठоの }}$


(e) $3390 ீ 43^{\circ \infty}$


(n) m" $^{\prime \prime} 3^{\circ}(\boldsymbol{\circ})$


(h) $\partial \jmath^{2}$ дбの


5 In the following examples change over the roles of each verb's subject and indirect object, making the verbs future instead of present. Follow the










6 Translate into Georgian:
(a) Is this wine drinkable? Is this cake eatable? No, if we drink the wine and eat the cake, we shall become ill.
(b) My parents' patience is running out. What is upsetting them? It is not yet late. Everyone will be here on time (i.e. before nine).
(c) What will happen tomorrow, if the workmen do not wake up early, get up at six, get dressed, get shaved, run down here and get sat down in the train? Their boss will get angry with them.
(d) If I am not mistaken, we shall return to school at eleven and shall stay inside. When the president comes in, we shall all stand up and greet him.
(e) What are those men over there doing? They are drinking bad wine. When they get drunk, they will fall down, and policemen will come and arrest them. They will spend the night at the police station.
(f) When I am in Georgia, shall I ever get accustomed to the local wine? Everything will be in order, because the Georgians will get you accustomed to it. All their wines are drinkable.
(g) If ever you lose your son in town, what will you do? As soon as I lose him I shall start to look for him.
(h) Who will meet your parents? If I set out now, I shall be at the station when they come. And so I shall meet them myself.

7 Translate into English:








 yзコщ.


 $3^{\circ} \mathrm{j} 6 \mathrm{j}$ ठेпо?










## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

8 In the following examples respond to the present tense questions in two


 built for you (pl.). What did you say to them, mummy? I told them that a house will be built for them.' Note that the subject of the basic question varies, but this does not affect the forms of the verbs in the answers.

(b) $33^{\circ}\left(3\right.$ @ $9^{6}$ ? ?
(c) g$^{2} \mathrm{~m}^{\mathrm{mb}} 83^{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{dmj3}$ ?
(d) yobol (field) $2 \circ 66 \circ$ ?

(f) $3^{\circ \text { mb }} 33^{\circ} \varrho \jmath^{\text {b }}$ ?
(g) mosbl дподдmдるб?


## Lesson 11

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation of the aorist indicative for intransitive verbs
- The syntax of aorist intransitives
- The present, future and aorist indicative formations of the medial verbs
- The syntax of medial verbs in Series I and II (present, future and aorist indicatives)
- Verbs whose tenses can be altered through use of a version vowel


## Dialogue 1

A child explains to his mother how one lesson came to be wasted that day
 bmocmo om oym.































## Vocabulary

| 8333900 mo | lesson | moejbu（80－） | $\begin{aligned} & X \text { (dat.) misses } Y \\ & \text { (nom.) } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3momo | fault | дmy3n＠ | $X$ came tolover $Y$ |
| jesusumozjor | you（will）talk to Y |  | misfortune |
| のッチ́n力 | apparently |  | $X$ happens to $Y$ |
| grinogénos | one of |  | you go mad |
| 3mulon | class | эузว ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$（дмп－） | you relate $X$ to $Y$ |
| yymu yaço（＠u－） | you listen（lit．cast ear） $\text { to } X$ | yaymingo（zu－） | you repeat $X$ to $Y$ |
| ¢u－ob nym | had just |  | you dine |
| のひの ${ }^{1}$（am－） | $X$ is heard | moturno | loud bang／crash |
| bภృరం（fuam－） | you jump up suddenly |  | you rush there |
|  |  | $\cdots-39{ }^{\text {b }}$ | ．．．towards <br> （＋gen．） |
| วృวกбృชum | afraid |  | you look out |
| Loqumgmo | horrible | bobubumzo | sight |

[^8]|  | $X$ unfolds to $Y$ |  | before the eye |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you lose your mind |  | you start crying |
|  | both |  | you（pl．）rush out |
|  | same |  | you rush out here |
|  | you gaze intently at $X$ |  | shattered |
|  | you（pl．）die for $X$ | Lumdmem | future daughter－ in－law |
|  | you learn $X$ |  |  |
|  | you feast |  $(\partial m-)$ | drink gets the better of $X$ |
|  | you get tipsy | 30¢つろ | to boot |
|  | $X$ feels sick | lyozro | table／spread |
|  | $X$ becomes a bore to $Y$ |  | you will come away from there |
| nubuaguyozng | fellow feaster |  | you think |
|  | it is revealed |  | you（will）visit Y |
| logmmo | fiancée | эјงб | back |
|  | journey | のnomfan | almost |
|  <br> （＠๐－） | you complete $X$ |  | dizziness comes over $X$ |
|  | $X$ will faint | $\begin{aligned} & \text { domo } g_{n(-)} \text { o3 } \\ & \left(\partial_{m}-\right) \end{aligned}$ | sleep overcomes $X$ |
| Lozumozo | tyre |  | X bursts |
| \％ | one way or another | yumoum＠jo（zu－） | $X$ slips out for $X$ |
| Luqo | steering wheel | 2xabjbu（＠u－） | $X$ crashes into $Y$ |
| $b^{3}$ | tree | ก2 ¢̧alı | at that very $(-30)$ second（ （弓コ口） |
| －लy3jobo（＠u－） | X perishes | งbuçu\％ | young person |
| dzonozulo | dear |  | the year before last |
| By＠jungm | cursed by fate | 3 moga | tuberculosis |
| 3nठm | cancer |  | tragedy |
| （v）Mnhjo（zu＠u－） | you survive $X$ | доеммоь | Thank God！ |
| yluadnamg ${ }_{\text {（an－）}}$ | you offer condolences to $X$ | लa̧tuoll |  |
| $z_{3}[0]$ mo <br> －Junǵnmbol！ | Touch wood！（lit．the cross to hereabouts） |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

A teacher explains to her pupils the names of some domesticated animals, the sounds they make and what some produce (For these materials I am particularly indebted to my own Georgian teacher, Shukia Apridonidze)





























## Vocabulary

|  | you (will) learn $X$ | ワoбuymo | domestic(ated) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | animal | Lubjun | ( first) name |
| amontımzu | story | duemo | dog |


| yos（0－－${ }^{\text {B }}$ ） | you bark |  | you growl |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ is given as name to $Y$ | м9330 | puppy，whelp |
| 030 | evil，fierce |  | you bite |
| Loomg ¢fum | affectionate |  | Fido |
|  | you（will）mew |  | you purr |
| \％mgn | some |  | you caw |
|  | you exist | －6＠u\％s | proverb |
|  | cawing | 3infyomo | claw |
| －30ヶfuro | you scratch | 36ஏరం | kitten |
| oुolim／gnligbos（－u－） | pussy | ${ }^{\text {doba }}$ | you call $X$＇$Y$＇ |
| \％иоुbymmbnon | of a summer |  | fur |
| $L_{03}{ }_{3} 3^{\circ}$ <br>  | plurality falls（will fall）out for $X$ |  | pig |
|  | you honk | gug［0］ mo | bristle |
| Buf［0］mo | rope | のmn | string |
| guzmoln | brush | bmincor | meat |
|  | fat | 3 mgo | piglet |
|  | you squeal | ajornhumo | show（ing）off |
| on | look！ | 2m＠rnyofyธృ3 | you come honking |
|  | with eyes shut | ＠ubumo | you gaze joyfully upon $X$ |
| ＠ucruyRumbo | you honk over $X$ | $3^{6} 3[0] \mathrm{mo}$ | sheep |
|  | you（will）bleat | 30 ¢3 30$] 60$ | lamb |
| дoठ̧ym | wool |  | yoghurt |
| узวщ๐ | cheese | jumofn | butter |
| บ®yobumo | inoffensive | －3bun＠obo（80－） | you become bitter |
| 3bomo | bitter，sharp | oुumo | flock |
| 3m¢రీ） | herd（of pigs） | aro | goat |
|  | you bleat | dmembo | cow |
|  | you（will）moo | ＠uдubolo－ ungḃgen | characteristic |
| nofo | horn | נఅや | tail |
|  | udder | ＠¢¢0］mの | female |
| bumo | bull | วงว［ง］m＠ | male，cockerel |
| 63 m | calf | juagho | water buffalo |
| aygo | working（adj．） | Lufmb［g］mo | livestock |
| \％งбठ゙ | sluggish | $\begin{gathered} 3 \cap b_{3} \cap y^{3} \\ \left(n--y^{3}\right) \end{gathered}$ | you neigh |
|  | you snort | $33^{\circ} 3^{\circ}$ | foal |
| 30 र́n | donkey |  | you hee－haw |
| Rmb［m］ $\mathrm{m}_{0}$ | donkey foal | ̧ロyס゙ | obstinate |


| zmeno | mule |  | you will sit on |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3nl［0］mon | neck | Oु৩O［0］ mo | mane |
|  | etc． |  | broad－footed |
| B3 ${ }^{\text {momegja }}$ | narrow－footed | Ubzuธun的栜 | differently |
| 3п¢пуठ゙y\％ | creature | 3 3ńnors | rat |

## Grammar

## The formation of the aorist indicative of intransitive verbs

In Lesson 10 we saw that intransitive verbs belong to one of three types：the prefixal，the suffixal，and the markerless．We now have to examine the changes that occur when we move from the two Series I forms（i．e．the present and future indicatives）presented in that lesson to the Series II aorist indicative． We shall begin with the suffixal and markerless types of intransitive．

As with transitive aorists，those roots that require a preverb in their future forms will normally take the relevant preverb in the aorist．The thematic suffix $-\jmath^{8}$－disappears；the characteristic vowel of the aorist indicative，which appears when the subject is either 1st or 2nd person，is－o；the 3rd person subject is marked by－o when singular，but by $-6_{\jmath} 5$ when plural．This pattern can be

 get warm：

| 3u－3－7norm－c－0 | I blushed | $30-3-\infty 800$ | I got warm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8u－frome－e－o | you blushed | 8u－00－○ | you got warm |
| 8u－fione－ए－১ | X blushed | 8－－0゙－0 | $X$ got warm |
| 3u－3－finom－e－n－0 | we blushed | 3u－3－m8－n－m | we got warm |
| 8－－fonm－＠－ก－の | you（pl．）blushed | 8u－noi－n－a | you（pl．）got warm |
| 8u－foome－ए－бうб | they blushed | 80－mる－6〕б | they got warm |

This pattern applies almost without exception to suffixal and markerless intran－ sitives，as further shown by the aorist indicatives of：（＠u－）$)_{3}-\mathrm{mh}_{\mathrm{h}}-\jmath^{3}-\cap I$（shall）



| ＠o－3－¢h－ก | かっ－3－ชゃ－○ | 8u－3－bや－の | zuдm－3－300－ए－○ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠－－¢R－○ | かっ－ふゃ－○ | 8u－b＠－0 | 子uдm－3年の－ए－ก |
| ＠๐－ヶh－ง | かృ－ひや－১ | 子u－bや－১ |  |
| ＠u－3－¢h－n－m |  | 3－3－bツ－o－m | 子uдm－3－30の－ए－п－の |
|  | かృ－ひए－ก－の | 子u－b＠－n－m | ชuдm－3лの－＠－п－п |
| ＠ゝ－ヶึ－бうб |  | $80-\mathrm{be}-6 \jmath^{6}$ |  |

There are a very few markerless intransitives which extend their roots in the aorist indicative by inserting the vowel－ 0 －when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person．Consider the aorist indicatives of the verbs（＠u－） $\boldsymbol{\beta}^{-\infty} \boldsymbol{o}_{3}$（n－$\rho^{3-\Omega} I$（shall）

 vowel－ŋ－the verb eat one＇s fill changes the root－final－- －to $-b-$ ：

| ＠u－3－の30 | I got drunk | $30-3-939$ m－n | I crept out |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠－－の30ヶの－の | you got drunk | $80-\mathrm{d}_{30} \mathrm{~m}^{\text {m－0 }}$ | you crept out |
| ＠o－a3m－〕 | X got drunk | $3^{0-8} 3^{\text {mon－u }}$ | $X$ crept out |
|  | we got drunk | $80-3-939$ m－n－m | we crept out |
|  | you（pl．）got drunk | $80-\mathrm{d} 30$ m－n－m | you（pl．）crept out |
|  | they got drunk |  | they crept out |
| $80-3-\mathrm{d} j \mathrm{~b}-0$ | I ate my fill | дก－3－yอ3－ก | I followed $X$ |
| 80－djb－0 | you ate your fill | дп－3－yอ3－п | you followed $X$ |
| $8^{0-\text {－}}$－- － | $X$ ate his fill |  | $X$ followed $Y$ |
| 3u－3－djben－m | we ate our fill | дп－3－yอ3－0－п | we followed $X$ |
| 8u－djb－o－m | you（pl．）ate your fill |  | you（pl．）followed $X$ |
| 8－－dल－бృб | they ate their fill |  | they followed $X$ |

As the fourth verb in this last group illustrates with its 3 rd person indirect object marker -3 －，indirect objects are marked in the aorist indicative in the same way as throughout Series I（by（1）attachment immediately before the root of the object affix；（2）object affix plus objective version vowel； （3）object affix plus locative version vowel）．Here are some more examples of indirect objects with the aorist indicative：








```
Their cheeks (mмyu) turned red
Why did you (pl.) follow us here?
Whom did your sister marry
    (lit. follow as wife)?
```



```
    (lit. on Zaza on the lip)
Why did they pester me?
Your face (Lobj) turned white
My son died
```

The formation of the aorist indicative with prefixal intransitives is not quite so straightforward．If suffixal and markerless intransitives take only the strong conjugation in the aorist indicative（by virtue of permitting only the $n$－vowel when the subject is either 1st or 2nd person），prefixal intransitives allow both strong and weak conjugations．The general rule is that，apart from verbs in $(-)_{33}$ ，the formation of the aorist indicative of prefixal intransitives will resemble the patterns given in Lesson 8 for the equivalent transitive forms， except that the 3rd person plural subject will be marked by the ending $-\sigma_{0} 5$
and before the root there will of course appear either the vowel－o－，if the verb has no indirect object，or the vowel－- －，if there is such an indirect object．Any thematic suffix attested in Series I forms（namely either－ŋठ， combined or not with remnants of $-\iota_{3}$ and $-ง \partial$ ，or occasionally -mb ）is not carried over into Series II．The following examples are given in the normal order of thematic suffixes，except that verbs in $(-)_{03}$ will be left until last．

## Root verbs

Root verbs that take a prefixal intransitive follow their transitive counterparts in being weak in the aorist indicative；if the root has a vowel－0－that alters to－- －in the transitive aorist indicative（and in Series I forms for the intran－ sitive conjugation），this change also occurs in the intransitive aorist indicative．
 （will）squash $X$ ：

| Ro－3－9－60向－つ＊ | I registered |  | I was squashed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ro－o－ 00 ¢n－コ | you registered | 8u－0－6mion | you were squashed |
| Bo－a－80 $0^{\text {m－o }}$ | $X$ registered | zu－o－bincl－s | $X$ was squashed |
|  | we registered | 8u－z－0－bimbloz－m | we were squashed |
| Ro－a－forn－a－a | you（pl．）registered | 8u－n－bmol－z－a | you（pl．）were squashed |
|  | they registered |  | they were squashed |

＊Note the presence of the version vowel－- －
The small number of verbs in $(-)_{33}$ that have a strong transitive aorist indicative，losing the $(-)_{03}$ altogether and changing their root－final -2 to -3 ， have strong intransitive aorist indicatives too，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { @๐-๑-的 } f_{3} \text { - ' } X \text { ' was given as name to } Y
\end{aligned}
$$

## Thematic suffix－eb

Those verbs with this thematic suffix that take a prefixal intransitive（i．e．those that possess intransitive forms not produced suffixally）follow the corres－ ponding transitive conjugation（with 3rd person singular subject marked appropriately by either $-ง$ or $-\infty$ ）．They have 3 rd person plural in $-\sigma_{\jmath} 6$ ．The
 （will）set $X$ alight（the intransitive form of which can have the meaning you are set alight emotionally）；（2m－）ง－レg（n－〕る you（will）do X in time（the intran－ sitive form of which only exists with an indirect object and means you live long enough to witness $X$ ）：

| ＠ゝ－3－ก－১コ＠－9 | I was born | －－3－0－600－0 | I was set alight |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you were born | －－ก－6ヵ－〕 | you were set alight |
| ＠u－○－bu＠－」 | $X$ was born | －－n－6m－m | $X$ was set alight |


| ＠u－3－0－8つ¢－う－の | we were born | 3－3－0－60－3－a | we were set alight |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠－－ก－bu＠－う－の | you（pl．）were born | －－n－あの－コ－の | you（pl．）were set alight |
| ＠ゝ－ก－bue－бృб | they were born | ง－ก－бの－бјб | they were set alight |
|  |  | enough to | ss $X$ |
|  |  | ng enough to | itness $X$ |
|  |  | g enough to with | ness $Y$ |
| ам－3－0－L80 ¢n－0－の |  | ng enough to | tness $X$ |
|  |  | ed long enou | to witness $X$ |
|  |  | they lived long enough to witness $X$ |  |

## Thematic suffix－av

As in the equivalent transitive aorist indicative there are three sub－types：weak， strong without change to the root，and strong with root expansion when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person．The verbs illustrated are：（＠っ－）るゝм－৩3 you（will）


| ＠u－3－0－2Jm－0 | I hid | ＠๐－3－п－ $\mathrm{F}_{3}$－0 | I was burned |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you hid | ＠u－0－83－0 | you were burned |
| ＠っ－ก－дuल－৩ | X hid | ＠u－п－83－১ | $X$ was burned |
| ＠u－3－0－2um－0－の | we hid | ＠u－3－0－ $\mathrm{B}_{3}^{-0-\infty}$ | we were burned |
| ＠u－n－дコ¢－う－の | you（pl．）hid | ＠u－0－83－0－m | you（pl．）were burned |
| ＠u－0－2ucm－6ృ5 | they hid | ＠๐－о－$\square_{3}$－бృб | they were burned |
| дm－3－0－jum－n | I was killed | 9m－3－n－zJm－n－a | we were killed |
| am－o－jum－0 | you were killed | dm－n－zum－n－a | you（pl．）were killed |
| $2 m-0-3 m-3$ | $X$ was killed | $2 m-n-3 m-6)^{6}$ | they were killed |

## Thematic suffix－i

The same three sub－groups exist as in the transitive aorist indicative：weak for roots containing a vowel，weak with root extension in－－－for all three persons，and strong with root extension in $-0-$ when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd
 ○ you（will）rear $X$ ；（＠๐－）子似－ก you（will）cut／wound $X$ ：

| $3 \sim-3-0-\frac{88036-3}{}$ | I was sent | 80－3－0－8つ何以－2 | I grew up |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $80-0-380_{3} 6-0$ | you were sent | $80-0-8 \pm$ m＠－9 | you grew up |
|  | $X$ was sent | $80-0-80$ m＠－0 | X grew up |
| $30-3-0-38035-9-\infty$ | we were sent | 3u－3－0－8つから＠－9－の | we grew up |
|  | you（pl．）were sent | 80－0－8つウや－う－の | you（pl．）grew up |
|  | they were sent | $8 ง-0-8 ง$ ¢＠－5〕б | they grew up |


| ＠）－3－0－30 m－n | I was wounded |  | we were wounded |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠ゝ－ก－30m－n | you were wounded | ＠u－0－$\ddagger 0$ m－n－の | you（pl．）were wounded |
| ＠ゝ－0－3似－১ | $X$ was wounded | ＠๐－0－3¢－6ృб | they were wounded |



## Thematic suffix－ob

Verbs in－mठ that take a prefixal intransitive formation exhibit the same divi－ sion between the weak and strong conjugations as their transitive counterparts． Where a root－final -3 is restored in the transitive form of weak aorist indica－ tives，it will also be restored in the intransitive aorist indicatives．Strong intransitives will have the same root extensions for 1st and 2nd person subjects as in the transitive counterparts．The illustrated verbs are：（＠u－））－b mB －mb you （will）suffocate $X$ ；（ $\partial \mathrm{m}-) \cup-3 y\left(n-m 8 \text { you（will）turn（e．g．attention）to } X \text { ；（ } \partial_{n}-\right)_{\nu-}$ ym＠б－мठ you（will）lean $X$ against $Y$ ；the last two being possible as intransitives only when associated with an indirect object and thus containing the ${ }_{0}$－prefix：

|  | I drowned | дm－3－9－3yom－0 | $I$ behaved to $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠o－0－b¢R $3_{3}-0$ | you drowned | am－ŋ－3yom－0 | you behaved to $X$ |
|  | $X$ drowned | $\partial m-9-3 y m-m$ | $X$ behaved to $Y$ |
|  | we drowned | 2m－3－9－3yom－n－m | we behaved to $X$ |
| ＠u－n－b¢ $\beta_{3}-9-\infty$ | you（pl．）drowned | дm－0－3yom－n－m | you（pl．）behaved to $X$ |
|  | they drowned |  | they behaved to $X$ |
|  | I leaned against $X$ |  | we leaned against $X$ |
|  | you leaned against $X$ |  | you（pl．）leaned against $X$ |
| дп－л－¢ | $X$ leaned against $Y$ | дп－л－уलツ＠б－буб | they leaned against $X$ |

## Thematic suffix－am

The intransitive aorist indicative is strong，like its transitive counterpart．The illustrated verb is（＠๐－）৩－১－৩る you（will）bind $X$（to $Y$ ）：

| ＠u－3－0－8－п | I was bound | ＠u－3－0－8－0－¢ | we were bound |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠－－○－৪－○ | you were bound | ＠－－ก－る－ก－の | you（pl．）were bound |
| ＠๐－○－る－」 | $X$ was bound | ＠ゝ－0－8－6ృ6 | they were bound |

Note：it was said will be the expected $0-\infty \jmath_{3}-ง$ ．
The intransitive aorist indicative of（ $\mathrm{z}^{-}$）y－moz you（will）split $X$ in two is the expected：

| $8>-3-0-y>3-0$ | I was split in two | 8u－z－n－yงz－n－n | we were split in two |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $8^{0-0-y o z-0}$ | you were split in two | $8^{0-n-y>} 3^{-n-\infty}$ | you（pl．）were split in two |
| $z^{-0-n-y-m}$ | $X$ was split in two | $80-0-y 3^{-6} \jmath^{6}$ | they were split in two |

The verb give to，when intransitive，will almost always have a 3rd person subject．In the aorist there will always be the indirect object marking prefix ${ }^{0}$－．And so，the regularly recurring forms will be of the type：

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | The means was given to us |
|  | The means was given to you（pl．） |
|  | The means was given to $X$ |
|  | The means was given to them |
|  | They gave themselves up to sweet（ $\delta j^{3} \circ \mathrm{~m} \circ$ ） sleep（dっmo） |

With a different preverb this form is found regularly in all three persons（see


| （0）－3－9－0－0 | $I$ fell down | co－3－2－3－0－m | we fell down |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠0－9－ $0^{-0}$ | you fell down | ＠u－9－（3－0－m | you（pl．）fell down |
| （0）－0－$)^{-0}$ | X fell down | ＠u－ว－（3－5〕б | they fell down |



## （Thematic）suffix（－）ev

There are three sub－types，which are distinguished thus：

## SUB－TYPE 1

This pattern closely resembles the conjugation followed by transitive aorist indicatives for verbs with this（thematic）suffix，whereby the weak endings are used，together with an o－remnant of the thematic suffix throughout．The intransitive aorist indicative adds the vowel prefix，takes the ending $-6_{\jmath} 5$ for a 3rd person plural subject，and retains the -3 －of the（thematic）suffix before this $-6_{j} 5$ ．The illustrated verbs are：（（๖仓๐－） $\mathfrak{n}(-)_{03}$ you（will）madden $X$ and
 marking $\rho^{0}$－vowel in its intransitive forms）：

| 8৩＠u－3－n－n（－）n－0 | $I$ went mad | Ro－3－0－n（－） n －0 | I got involved in $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8u＠u－n－m（－）n－3 | you went mad | Ro－0－¢ $(-) 0-0$ | you got involved in $X$ |
|  | $X$ went mad | Ro－0－n（－） 0 －৩ | $X$ got involved in $Y$ |
|  | we went mad | Ro－3－0－n（－）n－0－の | we got involved in $X$ |
| 8u＠u－n－n（－） $0-9-\infty$ | you（pl．）went mad |  | you（pl．）got involved in $X$ |
|  | they went mad |  | they got involved in $X$ |




 3u－0－のか－6ృ5 are also still found，since this verb originally was of type 3）．

## SUB－TYPE 2

Most verbs in（－）$)_{93}$ belong to the second pattern．The second pattern differs from the above in that：（a）when the subject is 3 rd person singular，the 0 － remnant of the（thematic）suffix disappears；and（b）the 3rd person plural seems to fluctuate between the older form in $(-)_{\Omega_{3}} \sigma_{\jmath} 6$ and the newer $-\sigma_{\jmath} 6-$ in a sense this latter problem is academic insofar as most of these verbs are usually found only with 3 rd person singular subject．The illustrated verbs are：
 shreds：

|  | I was destroyed | eo－3－n－b $(-) n-3$ | I was torn up |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you were destroyed | ＠u－n－b（－）n－う | you were torn up |
| ＠ゝ－0－6zm－৩ | $X$ was destroyed | ＠๐－○－b－১ | $X$ was torn up |
| ＠๐－3－n－6zm（－） $0-2-\infty$ | we were destroyed | ＠u－3－0－b（－） | we were torn up |
|  | you（pl．）were destroyed | ＠u－n－b（－） $0-0-\infty$ | you（pl．）were torn up |
|  | they were destroyed | ＠ゝ－ก－6－6ృ6／＠u－ก－ <br>  | they were torn up |

The following verbs also take this pattern：＠u－п－дठзз



## SUB－TYPE 3

This group follows the normal strong conjugation without any retention of part of the（thematic）suffix．In addition the root is expanded by the vowel ${ }_{-}-$when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person．Specimen verbs are：$\left(\beta_{0}-\right)_{0}-f_{3}$ $(-)_{03}$ you（will）knock $X$ down and（œ๐－）৩－36（－）$)$ yo you（will）throw $X$ into confusion：

|  | I fell down | ＠u－3－0－8ృ6－0 | I got confused |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢0－ก－Jous | you fell down | ＠u－ก－zjб－ก | you got confused |
| 80－0－ $\mathrm{Jos}^{\text {－}}$ | $X$ fell down | ＠๐－○－36－১ | $X$ got confused |
| du－3－0－ $\mathrm{faj}^{-0-\infty}$ | we fell down |  | we got confused |
|  | you（pl．）fell down | ＠๐－ก－zj6－ก－の | you（pl．）got confused |
| fu－0－ $\mathrm{fo}^{-6,5}$ | they fell down | ＠๐－ก－86－бృб | they got confused |

 itself in motion．

## The syntax required by intransitive verbs in Series II

The simple rule，already stated，is that，regardless of series，an intransitive verb takes a nominative subject and，if present，a dative indirect object，e．g．：

[^9]

```
The children hid from their mother
```



```
We all lost our way
```



```
The neighbours interfered in our business
```



```
The teachers got everything muddled up
(cf. ( \(\partial_{0}\) ) \(\partial_{\infty}-\bigcirc\) you (will) confuse X)
```






```
The host went forward to meet the guests
```




```
The world (almoुmпм) got caught on Giorgi's hook (ง5joln)
(= fell for Giorgi's trick) (cf. (€ゝam-)৩-る-うる you (will) thread X on Y)
```



```
When one door closed for Misha, another opened for him
(cf. (@u-) \(300^{-১ 3}\) you (will) close X)
```



```
The heroes (ддのஸ๐) crept up on the dev (ogre)
(cf. an-৩-১uশn-ృる you sneak X thither)
```

In Lesson 10 we saw that some intransitive verbs can be construed with what would appear to be more a direct than an indirect object．Strictly speaking， in Series II these verbs should still take nominative subject and dative object（s）， e．g．：




P'avle promised Zaza a lot of money

The mother told the child an interesting tale (\%ल๐3[0] mo)

In colloquial speech，however，such expressions（particularly those with two objects）are often interpreted as containing a transitive verb and the subject
is put in the ergative and the apparent direct object in the nominative．Learners should，therefore，be aware that the following variants may be heard：




Since some speakers seem to prefer the transitive construction，learners should perhaps accommodate their speech to the preferences of their interlocutors．

## The medial verbs in the present，future and aorist indicatives

We come now to a class of verbs that may take a variety of forms in the present sub－series but that，in almost all cases，takes a single（and simple） formation in the future sub－series and consequently in Series II as well．Con－ sider the following present and future indicative pairs（given with 3rd person singular subject，since some medials only accommodate such subjects）：

| ＠ym－し | it boils | －－セym－98－し | it will boil |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ dances | $0-$－3033－98－し | $X$ will dance |
| fueoz－ob－l | X preaches |  | $X$ will preach |
| Ón¢m－0－b | $X$ cries | －－ర゚กペ－93－し | $X$ will cry |
| mosuños－mठ－し | $X$ talks |  | $X$ will talk |

Regardless of whether the present indicative has the form of a root verb or takes one of a range of thematic suffixes，the future indicative is formed by use of the o－prefix in association with the thematic suffix－$\jmath$ ；the aorist indicative is formed from the future in an entirely normal way for a verb with thematic suffix $-\jmath 3$ ，which means that the thematic suffix disappears and the weak aorist conjugation applies．This is illustrated by the verb cry：

|  | I cried |  | we cried |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－ 0 － | you cried |  | you（pl．）cried |
| －－80m－0 | $X$ cried |  | they cried |

In the present tense each verb conjugates normally for one of its type．The only problematical case is that verbs such as cry，while they may appear in the present to contain the thematic suffix $-\Omega$ ，actually do not，for this $-\cap$ should rather be thought of as equivalent to the $-ก$ of $0-0^{-\infty}$ you know $X$ and $\cap-\delta y_{3}^{-}$ －you will say $X$ ，bearing in mind the formation of the remaining parts of Series I to be described in Lesson 14．And colloquially the copula＇$b e$＇is often added to such medials in the present indicative when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person，e．g．：

| $3-$－ 0 m－n（－30＜m） | I cry |
| :---: | :---: |
| Bonton（－bum） | you cry |
| O゙n的－○－U | $X$ cries |


|  | we cry |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you（pl．）cry |
| Onのカーก－ง6 | they cry |

The medial class contains some very common and some very rare verbs． In general verbs expressing movement and sound plus verbs describing the weather are likely to belong here．One productive type utilises the thematic suffix－m8 added（a）to a noun as verbal root，such that the medial conveys the meaning work as noun，or（b）to a noun or adjective as verbal root，such that the medial conveys the meaning behave like noun／adjective（e．g．$\partial_{0}{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{o}$ sovereign $\rightarrow \partial_{\jmath}$－mठ you reign；jo3un bitchy $\rightarrow$ jo3ul－m8 you are behaving like a bitch）．Here are the present and future indicatives of some of the most common and useful of the medials－the aorists can be produced straight－ forwardly from the future indicatives：

| yog－L | X barks | －у－\％\％－9 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | $X$ will bark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B3ヶд－し | it rains |  | it will rain |
| Jyb－b | it thunders | $0-3 y^{6}-y^{3-6}$ | it will thunder |
| ом3－L | it snows | －－ヵмз－98－L | it will snow |
|  | it lightens |  | it will lighten |
| f（n）－0－L | it blows | $0-\mathrm{fr}(-) \mathrm{mm}-\mathrm{o}^{3-L}$ | it will blow |
| $\mathrm{Ro}_{3}-\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{L}$ | $X$ complains |  | $X$ will complain |
|  | $X$ sings |  | $X$ will sing |
| －－3n6－п－L | $X$ laughs |  | $X$ will laugh |
| $0-$－ Md $_{3}-$－－L | $X$ fights | n－bind（－）mm－9 ${ }^{\text {a－l }}$ | $X$ will fight |
| O－b3 $\mathrm{C}^{\text {m－n－L }}$ | $X$ throws |  | $X$ will throw |
| y30ヶn－o－U | $X$ yells |  | $X$ will yell |
| $\bigcirc-\mathrm{csin}^{\text {®－o－L }}$ | $X$ toils |  | $X$ will toil |
| $8 \partial y$－n－l | $X$ moos |  | $X$ will moo |
|  | $X$ cares |  | $X$ will care |
| Oリヅって3－し | $X$ swims |  | $X$ will swim |
| unnom－9b－l | $X$ slips | －－6moum－jb－L | $X$ will slip |
|  | $X$ spins round |  | $X$ will spin |
|  | $X$ hunts |  | $X$ will hunt |
| yomoym－mb－l | $X$ is on guard | －yornoym－${ }^{\text {a－l }}$ | $X$ will be on guard |
| 3ubyb－mb－L | $X$ answers |  | $X$ will answer |
| $3^{\text {bma }}$ 3 ${ }^{\text {m－mb－L }}$ | $X$ lives |  | $X$ will live |
| \％ofncom－l | $X$ thinks | －－gofor－38－L | $X$ will think |
| のコдコฐ－mる－し | $X$ plays |  | $X$ will play |
| 20＜u＠nбう－mठ－し | $X$ studies | －－aがent－ob－し | $X$ will study |
| 2yฐ๐－mb－し | X works | $0-\partial y^{\text {gu－3－9 }}$－し | $X$ will work |
| bydm－mi－l | $X$ jokes | －－¢yдm－jる－L | $X$ will joke |
|  | X means／implies |  | $X$ will mean／imply |

[^10]| Luy ${ }^{\text {com－mb－u }}$ | $X$ breakfasts | －－bug\％2－л8－b | $X$ will breakfast |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| しゃenm－m8－し | $X$ lunches |  | $X$ will lunch |
| з 3 ¢əд－мठ－し | $X$ dines |  | $X$ will dine |

Clearly there are certain modifications to the root in some verbs，and these will need to be learned，but，in the main，the pattern for forming the future is simple．Some verbs，however，lack the thematic suffix－〕 in the future． Note how in the first three verbs below we have the suffix $(-)_{0} 5$ ，the vowel of which in Series II becomes－ก－：

|  |  | Future | Aorist |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| しరీ3（－）35 | you whistle |  |  |
| am－no－o－buom | you run hither |  |  |
| Oु¢（－）$)^{6}$ | you fly | $\bigcirc-$－ुm $(-)_{3} 6$ | －－oु＜n（－） 0 －0 |
| 4803m－m8 | you learn（ $X$ ） | －－4803m－0 | －－4803m－9 |

In the case of the verb for feel the aorist pattern too is odd．The verb is $\boldsymbol{\gamma}^{\text {ghd }}$－ mठ you feel（ $X$ ）（future $=0-\gamma^{2} \mathrm{~d} \mathrm{~d}$－mठ［sic］），but the aorist conjugates thus：

| $3-0-8$ maja $5-0$ | $I$ felt（X） | $3-0-8$ majabencon | we felt（ $X$ ） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you felt（ $X$ ） |  | you（pl．）felt（ $X$ ） |
| －－zind6－m | $X$ felt（Y） | －－zond6－g | they felt（ $X$ ） |

In vocabularies the future formation for ordinary medials will be indicated as：$\delta$ om－o（ $0-\rho^{8}$ ）you cry．Otherwise any deviant future will be given in full in brackets．

When an indirect object is required by a medial，how it is accommodated depends on the root in question．Sometimes the objective version will be employed，as in：

```
ふu-リ-mo-n-l X runs away from/past Y
```



Sometimes the root will be transformed into an intransitive verb with indirect object marking prefix $0^{-}$，as in：

Sometimes the object affixes will attach directly to the medial in the present sub－series，though such verbs employ the objective version in the future sub－ series and Series II，as in：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 3-3obyb-m8 you reply to } X \\
& \text { (future } \left.=y \text {-3olugb }-\jmath^{3} \text {, aorist }=y \text { - } 30 \text { bugb- }\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Note also：

```
L-@utnos-m3 you stand guard over \(X\)
```



```
ว- Ø\(_{3 \rho m-0 ~} \quad\) you aid me
```



From medial roots it is usually possible to form a suffixal intransitive to produce a verb indicating the start of the verbal action concerned－such intransitives are called inceptives or inchoatives．They are rare in the present sub－series，and their usual preverb elsewhere is $\mathbf{-}$ ．Indirect objects are accom－ modated in the normal way for suffixal intransitives，e．g．：

```
acgron-o-l
```







As we have seen，medials do not employ preverbs in the future and aorist indicatives in the way we have come to expect from studying regular transi－ tives and intransitives．This is not to say that preverbs are absolutely impossible in conjunction with medials．At least three cases can be distinguished：
（a）Outside the present sub－series a preverb will indicate the one－off，momen－ tary nature of the verbal action，e．g．：




（b）The preverb $\wp_{0}-$ outside the present sub－series indicates that the verbal action is performed only for a short time，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ○- Degがーラる-し } \quad X \text { will sing }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {--しょตซる-ə8-し } \quad X \text { will breakfast }
\end{aligned}
$$

This role of this preverb is not limited to medial roots，though where it is used in this way it is accompanied in Series I and II by the subjec－

 while．
(c) Medials expressing motion or sound-production can be combined in the present sub-series only with $\partial_{m-}, \partial_{n-}$ and @৩- to indicate the direction in which the motion or sound production is occurring i.e. here, there, about:

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \partial m-y z o r n-n-b \\ & \text { an-yzorn-o-b } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| @o-yzotn-o-b |  |
| am-bmb-s $3^{-L}$ |  |
| дп-bmb-১ $3^{-L}$ |  |
| @u-bmb-১3-l |  |

$X$ is coming yelling
$X$ is going yelling
$X$ is wandering about yelling
$X$ is coming crawling
$X$ is going crawling
$X$ is crawling about

## The syntax of medial verbs

As must be clear from their meaning, medials in general do not take direct objects. Some, however, can accommodate them, e.g.:



```
(3\nuбfm))
```

Regardless of whether they are combined with a direct object or not, all medials require their subjects to stand in the ergative case in Series II - if there is a direct object present, it will naturally go into the dative alongside a Series I verb form, but the nominative alongside a Series II verb form; any indirect object will be dative in both Series I and II, e.g.:


```
The wind blew
```





```
The singers (дmдलgm[ь]mп) will sing a lovely song (Ln\partial@gmo) to the guests
(Lठy\partial[0]mo)
```



```
The singers sang a lovely song to the guests
```


## Version as a change of tense marker

We have seen above, with both the plain medials and some of those that take indirect objects, a number of examples of how the version system is employed to indicate non-present sub-series. The 0 -prefix of the medials in the future and aorist is nothing other than the subjective version. The verbs listed below also employ a particular version as main marker of non-present sub-series status:

|  |  | Future | Aorist |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you read X／enquire | －－3006－－3 | －－jnonb－o＊ |
| уп＠－ェмーмる | you buy X | 0－yn＠－0 | －－yn＠－つ |
| lylt－ymemb | you borrow $X$ | $0-\mathrm{Lg} \mathrm{blb}-\mathrm{g}^{8}$ | －－bolb－a |
| оbm－ym－mb | you ask for $X$ | $0-0 \mathrm{bm}_{3}$ | －－obm3－3 |
|  | you acquirelfind $X$ （intentionally） | ○－ dm3 $_{3}(-$－$)$－ก， | －－2m3 $(-6)-0$ |
| $3 m-y m-m 8$ | you acquirelfind $X$ （accidentally） | ${ }^{0-3 m_{3}(-6)-0}$ | $0-3 m_{3}(-6)-0$ |
| дЈঠ－э¢m－mb | you put on weight／get larger | －－200－${ }^{3}$ | －－20¢－0 |
| נ＜－9b－ym－mb | you lose weight／get smaller | （＠）－） $0-3 \mathrm{cos}^{3}$ | （＠）－） 0 － $30 \mathrm{~m}-0$ |
|  | you receive $X$（regularly）； <br> －－๓－১ठ you receive $X$（once） | 20－n－m－9 | 2п－п－¢－う |
| $3^{6-0^{8}}$ | you harm $X$ | －－36－93 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Ј-3б-0 } \\ & \text { (plus dat. obj.) } \end{aligned}$ |
| $3-38(-)_{3} 6$ | you bite $X$ | y－ $\left.3^{8(-)}\right)^{5}$ |  |
|  | you pinch $X$ | ッ－303（－） $\boldsymbol{y}^{\text {¢ }}$ | ข－3䄺（－）¢6－0 |
| 的－93 | you bring advantage to $X$（dat．） | $0-6 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{o}^{3}$ | －－仿可 |
| ＠u－¢0－bum | you go（regularly） | －3－3m－0 | $0-\Delta(-) n_{-0}{ }^{\dagger}$ |

＊For the meaning read the preverb $\dot{\beta}_{0}-$ may be used outside the present sub－series．


Note：all the above verbs take an ergative subject in Series II．

The verb＇try＇is transitive in the present sub－series but intransitive else－
 you tried）．Also used，especially in Series II（and III），is a transitive equiv－ alent L－ふゃ－0 you（ergative）tried，which strictly belongs with the present／future し－ъ＠－○．

## Dialogue 3

This is the story the children were asked to write in Dialogue 2. The content is in part borrowed from the story $\mathrm{bson}_{\mathrm{z}} \mathrm{y}^{\mathrm{y}}$ 。＇The Mousetrap＇by Vazha－Pshavela





















cobsbiñ．．．

## Vocabulary

| yjonbo3（80－） | you read $X$ to $Y$ |  | cats and dogs （of rain） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Jubomo | thunder |  | you will let out a bark |
|  | you quieten down | ¢3пд」 | rain |
| Lu8［0］6n | blanket |  | barn（for grain） |
| Bmbjmemol uýnまoveno | commotion | OY＠${ }^{\text {bo }}$（0－） | it breaks out |
|  | crevice | 3majorn（ga－） | you shudder in fear |
| しunuzyion | cage（to catch mice） |  | you will notice $X$ |
| ชงдるว＠๐зп | daring（adj．） |  | direct（ly） |
|  | you scamper up to | วудмизмп | you will skirt $X$ |
|  | you crawl in | 子u¢ngam | all around |
| Luy6o | smell |  | at long last |
|  $(\partial n-/ \partial m-)$ | you approach $X$ |  | half－kernel of nut |
|  | you run $X$ over $Y$ | дпว\％の＠зコм | alluring |
| Unymmoe | completely | м＠б๐3 | lightly |
| auzumo | strong | јठпmの | tooth |
| Lbecosous（＠u－） | it goes off |  | you calm down |
| $\bigcirc \mathrm{fl}^{(-)} \mathrm{yz}^{\circ}$（80－） | you disappear | ᄂf（－） 33 （дm－） | you pull $X$ |


| -6objon (9y-) | you jump up on $X$ |  | you will let out a squeak |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you fling yourself against $X$ there/here |  | you go to aid $X$ |
|  |  | 子20no | ceiling, top |
|  |  | afron-ufjon | hither and thither, here and there |
| งдum | in vain |  | each and every |
| 3 30 | attempt |  $\left(0--\jmath^{3}\right)$ | you squeak |
|  | neighbouring | змдп | barn (for animals) |
|  | it dawns | 9Jubjon (8u-) | you dash off |
|  | you toss $X$ to $Y$ |  | you (will) play with $X$ |
|  | you tire | ${ }^{\text {blbjob }}$ (@) | you leave $X$ alone |
|  | you leave $X$ alone | - $35^{8}$ | at once |
| ง3320 | you (will) dash down | д30 $^{\text {g }}$ | below (+ gen.) |
| mónam | hole | @ululinume | end |

## Proverb


What the wind has brought the selfsame wind will carry away

## VOCABULARY

| jumo | wind | 2mgu6nmo | (having been) brought |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -30 | the same, the very | $80-0-0^{3}$ | you will take away |

## Verse

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 'I am a bard of love' }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Ietim-Gurdzhi) }
\end{aligned}
$$

## VOCABULARY

| Unyzứnymo | love | agmu［0］60 | bard |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $3^{-0-m}$ | $I \mathrm{am}$ |  | you beautify $X$ |
| ＠りや＝〕бu | mother tongue | unamgro | song |
| зงд万うбп | creator |  | you will make some use of $X$ |
| узวщ0（0） | all | mbgbu | pleasure |
| 9mo | nation，people |  | mediator |
|  | you set down $X$ for $Y$ | 30¢¢0 | rose |
| Oృ60 | spread，layer | дu＇iom | alone |
| naolo | that one＇s |  | foe |
| $3^{06}{ }_{3}$ | who | （2m－）$y$－ ®y $^{\text {y }}$－mb | you arrange $X$ for $Y$ |
| $33^{3} 50$ | bite，biting | －${ }_{\text {bmuajos }}$ | nineteen |
|  | century |  | you appear |
| дјм®3 | twentieth |  | guest |
| ＠u－6－30 | you will travel down | jutnorymo | Georgian |
| Lıym | （for）ever | （80－）moju－ง3 | you versify $X$ |
| ᄂงธua | until | Lodumo | grave |
| Ro－co－b－o－m | you descend | By3mo | much，many |
| bumbo | folk |  | you recall $X$ |
| －mmo | when | Lmog［9］me | country，world |
| 3－－¢0－b－u－m | you depart | no6 | along（with X） |
| （8）－） $0-\mathrm{cos}^{8}$ | you take $X$ | yoantm＠ | without it |
| 8コ－6－3コм／8u－6－ | you will go／went | mofun | verse |
|  | you are deprived of $X$ | ว\％っ＠ | ready |
| $3^{-n-403}(-0)$ | I was | no | what |


| $\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{abm}_{3}$ | you will ask $X$ for $Y$ | $3^{m} 3^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{b}$ [0]mon | alive |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| gob | price, value | \%og | yet |
| $3-0-3_{3}-$ b | you have (inanimate) $X$ |  | you die |
|  | no one | (@)-) $0-8 y-)^{3}$ | you start X |
| з мп\% ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | mourning |  | you will get angry with, turn your back on, $X$ |
| muy | if | -çum | no more |
| дм-¢о-b-د-¢ | you come |  | foster-child |
| agming | second |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Write out the aorist indicative paradigms for the pairs: I (etc.) intoxicated X, I (etc.) got drunk, I (etc.) hid X from Y, I (etc.) hid from X, I (etc.) knocked $X$ down, I (etc.) fell down.

2 Fill in the gaps and translate:
(a) $3_{-\infty-\delta_{-}} \partial_{-3-y m @-6-\infty}$
(b) $\mathrm{d}-\mathrm{c} \times \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{d}--\quad-\mathrm{y}-\mathrm{y}--$
(c) bo_-omg ${ }^{3}-\partial_{-}-3-3^{\circ}$





3 Wrap the correct agreement markers around the following verbs:








4 Work out the meaning of the following verb forms:
(a) $3 \circ \beta^{\circ \mathrm{b} \text { бддの }}$
(i) zunбdymoon
(b) дu@๐

(c) $ก \partial \circ$ g̊ว



(e) oonman



(g) дмдудзоп

(h) z১дofoomm@son


5 Change the following into (a) their future and (b) aorist indicative equivalents:
(a) дьдьмео yozols

(b) дм






6 In the following examples switch the roles of each verb's subject and indirect object, making the verbs aorist instead of present, following the pattern










7 Translate into English:




 дмдозощьо?

















8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) What do we call a lot of pigs together? I don't know, but a lot of sheep together are called a flock.
(b) Did you attend the conference last year? Yes, and when it ended, we all had a good feast. How the wine got the better of us all!
(c) What happened to the kitten I gave you as a present on your birthday? When it rained cats and dogs, it drowned.
(d) How did I get caught on those pseudo-scholars' hook?!
(e) As soon as our guests came in, we embraced one another.
(f) It transpired that the plates were shattered, the books burned and the house destroyed.
(g) Did you lean against the door yesterday? No, but we shall lean against the wall tomorrow.
(h) The younger soldiers were sent where the older soldiers fought well and gained a victory.

## Lesson 12

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation of the aorist subjunctive for transitive, intransitive and medial verbs
- Some uses of the aorist subjunctive
- How to issue an instruction in the imperative
- Constructing expressions of prohibition


## Dialogue 1

T'ariel and Irak'li debate what they should do after a game of backgammon

| ¢̊omojemo: |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| omozem: |  |
| Øัomogem: |  <br>  |
| onozeo: |  <br>  |
| ¢゚๐mojemo: |  <br>  <br>  |
| onozeme: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |


| O̊omojemo： |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| omozmo： |  <br>  |
|  |  |

## Vocabulary

| －－zindjem－38（zu－） | extend | ぃงวงฐ๐ | game |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| リーบゾゥ－93 | you（will）watch $X$ |  | you take short rest |
|  | if indeed | дuґூm | alone |
|  | you contact $X$ | Luaj\％mbmm | neighbourhood |
| （＠）－） |  | 3u\％gon | newspaper |
| Jondmjou | $X$ is possible | －－年のa－03 | you offer $X$ to $Y$ |
| －baven－jb－o（＠）－） | you help $X$ | （дп／дm－） |  |
| Ron | tea | 2m－y－3m－n | you will look after $X$ |
| 2п－bりや－ง3 | you will look to $X$ | lujujouno | own |
| 6．y | not（prohibition） | －－dum－j3（＠u－） | you force $X$ on $Y$ |
|  | you behave obstinately | －－33nง6－〕3（¢）－） | you are late |
| Lonbm3 | you ask $X$ of $Y$ |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

A Georgian helps an Englishman to send a postcard to England

| обдmobymo： |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| обдmolymo： |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
| обдmolymo： |  |
| jumozamo： |  <br>  ＠3 $3^{\text {oobso？！}}$ |
| обдmotymo： |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |










```
    д\mp@code{эовзœммо.}
```






## Vocabulary

| эб¢ | it is necessary | mou zumumn | open（post）card |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －－yn＠－ァ8－৩（зu－） | $X$ is sold | リ3n $3^{\text {mbu }}$ | ignorance |
| $y$－ancm－n（ho－） | you judge $X$ for $Y$ | anuzumo | main |
| Juho | street | 5yวnレangmo | any |
| Bismomo amzuzun | small trader |  | post office |
|  | you trouble yourself over $X$ | hyan zummonzot | for my heart （＝sake） |
|  | trouble |  | $X$ has nothing to do with it |
| мajmone（¢zonl） | God（of God） | дм＠дд」 | tribe |
| зо3julnjme | Caucasian person | 9 | in the same way |
|  | you treat $X$（dat．） | $\mathrm{j}_{\text {かるuzo }}$ | devil |
| ónububmbu | boasting | дumomu | in truth |
| － 3 J m | over here | Ju－n（zu＠u－） | you cut across $X$ |
| mozo | queue | ＠3－38－0（¢0－） | you stand somewhere |
|  | registered |  | $X$ is weighed |
|  |  | －－bや－○（るゝ＠u－） | you pay $X$ |
| J3non［0］ $\mathrm{mon}^{\text {a }}$ | receipt |  | certainly |

## Grammar

## The formation of the aorist subjunctive for transitives， intransitives and medials

The verb forms we have learnt so far have enabled us to place factual events in the past，present and future．In other words，we have been discussing the formation and use of the present，future and aorist tenses（i．e．verb forms that
place events in time）．It is now time to step back from actuality and deal with the subjunctive mood，and we begin with a consideration of the forma－ tion of the aorist subjunctive，which，together with the aorist indicative， constitutes Series II for the Georgian verb．Out of context the aorist subjunc－ tive will be translated as $X$ may verb．

The subjunctive mood in Georgian is marked by the use of one of three suffixal vowels：$-\infty,-৩$ and $-\jmath$ ．

## Transitive verbs

All transitive verbs except one（the verb to give）employ either－m or－ง in their aorist subjunctives；a 3rd person singular subject selects the agreement affix -L ，while a 3rd person plural subject requires -6 ．The general patterns can be illustrated by taking the verbs（＠u－）Bom you（will）write $(X)$ and（œ๐） ＠̧－১る you（will）place X upright：

|  | ＠๐－3－70 m－m－の | ＠u－3－＠\％－১ | ＠u－3－＠3－u－a |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | ＠－－®8－১ | ＠－－＠\％－い－の |
| ＠o－form－м－し |  | ＠い－＠\％－১－し | ＠u－＠っ－১－6 |

The root of a verb in the aorist subjunctive will take the same form throughout that it possesses in the aorist indicative with 3rd person singular subject．This means we do not have to worry about those root expansions（by internal vowel or，for some verbs in－mb，suffixal－3）that occur only when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person in the aorist indicative（or，in the case of those verbs in －m8 whose root ends in -3 ，when the subject is 3 rd person plural as well）． As an illustration，let us examine the aorist subjunctive of the verb（ $\mathrm{am}_{\mathrm{m}}$ ） ${ }_{3} \mathrm{~m}^{-๐_{3}}$ you（will）kill $X$ in relation to its aorist indicative：

| Aorist indicative |  | Aorist subjunctive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| am－3－3Jm－n |  | 2m－3－3m－0 | dm－3－3m－u－n |
| дm－zum－0 | 2m－jum－n－m | $\partial m-3 m-0$ |  |
| $2 \mathrm{~m}-3 \mathrm{~m}-0$ | 2m－3m－引 | $2 m-3 m-u-b$ | $2 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{cm}^{m-\nu-6}$ |

We now have to see which type of verb requires which vowel．

## Root verbs

All root verbs with a weak aorist indicative have their aorist subjunctive in -m ．If the root vowel changes from $-9-$ to $-ก$－in the indicative，it does so in the subjunctive too，including all verbs in $(-)_{0} \sigma$ ，while the 0 －remnant of verbs in $(-)_{\partial з}$ is also retained in the subjunctive：

| дm－flım－m | you may knit $X$ | ช৩＠৩－১－¢R（－）пб－м | you may save $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you may clean $X$ |  | you may ruin $X$ |
|  | you may decide $X$ | Note：Ј－まゝコ一巛 | you may feed $X$ to $Y$ |

The few verbs in -03 that have a strong aorist indicative (losing -03 altogether and changing root-final - $\partial$ to -3 ) have their aorist subjunctives in - -, e.g.:

| 80-u-Mos3-১ | you may snatch $X$ from $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you may name $X^{\prime}$ ' ${ }^{\text {' }}$ |
| Ro-u-03-১ | you may put clothing $X$ on |

## Thematic suffix -eb

Apart from two problem roots, all verbs in -98 have their aorist subjunctive in -m, e.g.:

| дп-৩-f0¢@-m | you may pass $X$ to $Y$ | дп-৩-зб-м | you may locate $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| @๐-১৩@-¢ | you may give birth $\text { to } X$ | @u-১-3m-m | you may reduce $X \text { for } Y$ |
| $2 m-0-3-m$ | you may win $X$ | am-u-b戸nom | you may do $X$ in time |
| --ง-6m-m | you may switch $X$ on | @--@-¢ | you may put $X$ down |

The two problem roots are -@- and $-\partial_{3}$. You may remember that the verb (@--)@-১8 you (will) put $X$ down has two aorist indicative forms (weak with root in -@- and strong with root in - $\left.[0]_{3}\right]^{-}$). The subjunctive in -m given above corresponds to the former, while the latter (rarer) form has an equiv-
 of which preverb it takes, has a strong aorist indicative and takes its subjunctive in -o , e.g.:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { @৬-ŋ- } \check{y}_{3} \text {-৩ you may allow/assume } X
\end{aligned}
$$

## Thematic suffix -av

Verbs with a weak aorist indicative take their subjunctive in -m, while those with a strong aorist indicative take theirs in -o, e.g.:

| ¢о-дum-m | you may hide $X$ | @o- $\square_{3}$ - | you may burn $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\partial m-3 m-৩$ | you may kill $X$ | 3-3(m) | you may hit $X$ |
| дm-b6-ง | you may plough $X$ | @o-n-33-〕 | you may defend $X$ |
| @u-১-mon-m | you may spin $X$ | @u-Mno-m* | you may join $X$ to $Y$ |
|  | you may plant $X$ | $\begin{aligned} & \partial_{m-k \beta y-m /} \\ & a_{m}-m \beta y-\Delta \end{aligned}$ | you may water $X$ |



## Thematic suffix－i

Verbs of this type with a weak aorist indicative have their subjunctive in $-m$ ，while those with a strong aorist indicative have theirs in－o，e．g．：

```
80-(\nu-)z%osб-m you may send X zo-子(n-s you may cut X in two
```



```
8৩@ง-м⿱㇒⿴⿰丿㇇⺀⿺乀-ь you may gnaw through X j6-৩ you may do X
```


## Thematic suffix－ob

With one exception，all verbs in－mb have their aorist subjunctive marked by $-m$ ：

| $83^{\nu-u-m o s-m}$ | you may warm $X$ | 8u－u－2m－м | you may dry $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| cou－s－binh－m | you may suffocate $X$ | $\partial m-\Delta-\beta y-m$ | you may arrange $X$ |
| （o）－১－om－m | you may intoxicate $X$ | （0）－0－3y | you may seize control |
| дn－১－yか＠6－м | you may lean $X$ against $Y$ |  | of $X$ |

The one exception is $y$－obかの－ง you may say $X$ to $Y$ ，the suppletive Series II form for the common $0-0^{36}-\jmath^{8-ก / 0-\delta 勺 3^{-0}}$ you say／will say $X$ to $Y$ ，which strictly belongs to $y$－abかの－mb you tell $X$ to $Y$ ．

## Thematic suffix－am

All such verbs have their aorist subjunctive in－o，e．g．：
ho－n－03－১ you may put on $X \quad$ of3－$\quad$ you may say $X$
＠০－১－৪－৩ you may bind $X$
The aorist subjunctive of（zu－）y－moz you（will）divide $X$ is in－m（8ง－y－m you may divide $X$ ）．
This leaves the one transitive verb whose aorist subjunctive is in -0 ，namely：

| д๐－3－3－つ | I may give $X$ to $Y$ | an－3－0－0－の | we may give $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20－L－${ }^{-0}$ | you may give $X$ to $Y$ | an－し－（－）－の | you（pl．）may give $X$ to $Y$ |
| дп－U－0－0－U | $X$ may give $Y$ to $Z$ | an－L－0－コ－6 | they may give $X$ to $Y$ |

 do not confuse this word with the root verb $\mathrm{L}-30^{\partial-m}$ you may hit $X$ ．

Readers may have noticed that a weak aorist indicative always corresponds to an aorist subjunctive in－m，while a strong aorist indicative usually corres－ ponds to one in $-\Delta$ ，though sadly the latter correspondence is not perfect．

## Intransitive verbs

The same three subjunctive－marking vowels are employed here as in the case of the transitive verbs．The difference is that the vowel $-\supset$ is more widespread；
it is used for the aorist subjunctive of all suffixal and all markerless intran－ sitive verbs without exception．A 3rd person singular subject again selects the agreement suffix $-\iota$ ，while a 3rd person plural subject requires $-6_{\jmath} 5$（if such a subject is animate；if it is inanimate，its plurality will not be marked on the verb）．The verbs，illustrated for both aorist indicative and subjunctive，


| Aorist indicative |  | Aorist subjunctive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| зง－3－form－¢－ก | $30-3-\infty 80$ | 30－3－frome－ए－0 | 3－3－mo゙－9 |
| 8u－foom－e－n | 3u－00－ก | 30－fromere－o | 30－00－3 |
| 30－frome－＠－u | 30－00－0 | зu－foome－e－a－l | $30-\infty$－－－－ |
|  | $30-3-\infty 8-n-\infty$ | 30－3－fronc－e－う－の | 3－3－mo゙－9－n |
| 3－－fonm－＠－n－の | 3－－03－n－の | 3－－fొome－＠－う－の | 3－－0て－う－の |
| 8u－ | $80-08-6 \bigcirc 6$ |  | $80-08-6 〕 5$ |

（The 3rd person plural forms do not distinguish between indicative and subjunctive．）

This same ${ }^{0}$－subjunctive is also used for the root－ $0^{-}$meaning either give or fall down：

| дм－д－コ－उ－0－し | $X$ may be given to me | ＠－－3－9－く－つ | I may fall down |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дм－る－0－0－0－し | $X$ may be given to you | ＠－つ－（－） | you may fall down |
| วก－コ－0－コ－し | $X$ may be given to $Y$ | ＠－－コ－（3）－－し | $X$ may fall down |
| コก－コ－（－0－の | $X$ may be given to them | ＠－－3－9－3－9－m | we may fall down |
| дм－з3－9－0－0－し | $X$ may be given to us | ＠－－コ－0－コ－の | you（pl．）may fall down |
| дм－з－9－ $3-6)^{\text {¢ }}$ | they may be given to you／you（pl．） | ＠）－0－ $0^{-6}$ ¢ | they may fall down |

In addition，the ${ }_{0}$－subjunctive is employed to mark the intransitive aorist subjunctive of two of the sub－types of verbs in $(-)_{93}$ ，namely those two sub－ types whose aorist indicative with 3rd person singular subject ends in－ऽ （rather than $(-)_{n-\nu) . ~ T h e ~ v e r b s ~ w h o s e ~ a o r i s t ~ i n d i c a t i v e ~ i s ~ c o n t r a s t e d ~ w i t h ~ t h e ~}^{\text {a }}$ aorist subjunctive are：（＠u－） $0-\mathrm{b}(-)_{03^{-ก}}$ you are being（will be）torn up，


| Aorist indicative |  | Aorist subjunctive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠๐－3－0－b（－）$<$－ | $8 \mathrm{O-3-0-300300}$ | ＠－－3－0－b－〕 | $80-3-0-3050$ |
| ＠u－n－b（－）n－つ | ¢0－0－ $\mathrm{Javos}^{-0}$ | ＠๐－ก－b－9 | 80－0－ 3000 |
| ＠u－n－b－১ |  | ＠u－o－b－ŋ－し | $80-0-3^{3}-0^{-L}$ |
| ＠๐－3－n－b（－）n－う－の | 8－3－3－0－J903－0－n | ＠u－3－0－b－う－の | f0－3－0－J $0^{-0-\infty}$ |
| ＠u－n－b（－） $0-0-\infty$ | ¢0－n－ $\mathrm{JaO}^{-n-\infty}$ | ＠ゝ－○－b－9－の | 80－n－ $3000-\infty$ |
| ＠ง－0－b－6јб | $80-0-83^{-6}{ }^{5}$ | ＠๐－о－b－бјб | $80-0-803-60^{5}$ |
| $\underline{(/ @ \nu-n-b(-) п 3-б ј б) ~}$ |  |  |  |

There are seven irregular verbs whose aorist indicatives are given in the grammar section of Lesson 3 that form their aorist subjunctive by means of -ว (being either now or historically markerless intransitives). The verb of motion is illustrated with the preverb $\partial_{m-}$, which gives the overall verb the meaning come, though a change of preverb would change the direction of motion accordingly:


Prefixal intransitives will have their aorist subjunctive either in -m or -১; 3rd person singular subject is marked by -L , and 3 rd person plural by -6 , after the patterns of:

|  | I may register | 2m-3-0-3m-u | I may be killed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ro-o-form-m | you may register | am-o-jm-u | you may be killed |
| Ro-0-60 m-m-L | $X$ may register | дm-0-3m-u-U | X may be killed |
|  | we may register | am-3-0-3m-১-n | we may be killed |
| Ro-コ-forn-m-の | you (pl.) may register | $\partial m-0-3 m-u-\infty$ | you (pl.) may be killed |
| Ro-0-60 m-m-6 | they may register | 2m-0-3m-১-6 | they may be killed |

The distribution is as follows.

## Root verbs

Root verbs of the prefixal intransitive type have their aorist subjunctive in $-\infty$ (any change of radical - $\bigcirc-$ to $-\bigcirc$ - elsewhere in Series II will also occur
here，including those in $(-)_{03}$ whose 3rd person intransitive aorist indicative is in $(-)_{n-ง)}$ ：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 子งдm-ก-оु(-)n6-м-レ } \quad X \text { may be exhibited }
\end{aligned}
$$

The few verbs in－ 03 that have a strong aorist transitive and intransitive indica－ tive（losing－03 altogether and changing root－final $-\partial$ to -3 ）have their intransitive aorist subjunctives in－o，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Fo-0-Mong-u-L } \quad X \text { may be snatched from } Y
\end{aligned}
$$

## Thematic suffix－eb

Prefixal intransitives of this type，with the exception of the two problem roots mentioned above，all take aorist subjunctive in－$m$ ：

The latter has the rarer alternative in－ง if the root has the shape－＠ $3^{-}$，just as the root $-y_{3}$－also requires－১：

## Thematic suffix－av

Verbs with a weak aorist indicative take their subjunctive in－m，while those with a strong aorist indicative take theirs in－o，e．g．：

|  | $X$ may hide | дм－п－b6－১－し | $X$ may be ploughed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠っ－0－ワ3－৩－し | $X$ may be burnt |  | $X$ may be joined to $Y$ |
| am－0－3m－১－し | $X$ may be killed |  | $X$ may be planted |
|  | $X$ may stick to $Y$ |  | $X$ may be watered |

## Thematic suffix－i

Verbs of this type with a weak aorist indicative have their subjunctive in $-\infty$ ，while those with a strong aorist indicative have theirs in－ง（possibly - －），e．g．：

|  | $X$ may be sent | $80-0-7$ m－0／0－6 | $X$ may be cut |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ may be reared | －－j6－$/ \frown-\mathrm{L}$ | $X$ may be done |
|  | $X$ may be gnawed through |  | $X$ may be counted |

## Thematic suffix－ob

Prefixal intransitive verbs of this type have their aorist subjunctive marked by -m ：

## Thematic suffix－am

The intransitive aorist subjunctive is always in－৩：

```
@u-ก-৪-৩-৬ X may be bound O-\inftyf3-৩-৬ X may be said
```

The intransitive aorist subjunctive of（子u－）$\cap-y$－моુ－৩ $X$ is being（will be）divided


And to be has the aorist subjunctive：

| $3^{-n-y-m}$ | I may be | $3^{-n-y-m-\infty}$ | we may be |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $0-y-m$ | you may be | $0-y-m-\infty$ | you（pl．）may be |
| $0-y-m-l$ | $X$ may be | 0－y－m－6 | they may be |

## Medials

All medials have their aorist subjunctive in－m．Just as the aorist indicative follows the root structure of the future indicative for medials，so too does the aorist subjunctive，though a $-3^{-}$inserted to separate vowels in the future and aorist indicatives will be dropped before the subjunctive $-m$ ，e．g．：

| －－y0\％－m－L | $X$ may bark | －－V3ก2－m－L | it may rain |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left.0-R_{3}(-)\right)_{\text {m－m－l }}$ | $X$ may complain | －－8̇d（－）mem－m－l | $X$ may fight |
| －－2ymou－l | $X$ may work |  | $X$ may run（here） |
| －－U803m－м－し | $X$ may learn $Y$ | ○－z（md6－m－し | $X$ may feel $Y$ |

## Some uses of the aorist subjunctive

1 The unchanging particle yб＠o it is necessary／it must immediately precedes the aorist subjunctive to indicate an event that must take place at some time in the future．No other word should ever stand between this particle and the subjunctive governed by it：


```
I/you/X must go
```



```
I must give you the money
```



```
Mother must lie down on the bed
```


How should this be said?

No one should die in childhood ( $\mathrm{bu}_{3} \mathrm{~g}_{3} \mathrm{~m} \delta \mathrm{u}$ )

We must treat the guests well

You must not give the child an ice cream (60yo6n)

Where should the man put this bag (Bu6os)?

The children should not yet sit down
 though this time other words may intervene between it and the verb, e.g.:


```
How can a man speak like this?
```



```
Is it possible for us to stop the car here?
```



```
What more ( \(\partial \jmath\) ठ) can happen?
```



```
Is it really possible for a child to talk like that \(\left(\right.\) by you \(\left.=0 \gamma^{\circ} \mathrm{j}\right)\) to a teacher?
```



```
It is possible we may not manage to do it by tomorrow
```



```
Isn't it possible for it to rain in summer ('\%uogbugmo)?
```

Note: the expression as [adjective/adverb] as possible is formed by placing the words
 uf(roogue as big/many/quickly as possible).

3 With 1st or 3rd person subject, an aorist subjunctive produces a deliberative question, e.g.:


```
Are we to come in now?
З@зっ?
Am I to stand up?
```


Is the child to go to bed at 8 ？

Are the guests to give the children the presents now？
4 The aorist subjunctive may be used to express a wish（or give vent to a curse！），e．g．：




```
May you have a healthy (quб\partialmongmo) child
(= may it be acquired unto you = (%ŋ\rho)
```



```
Just (3)mga) let us survive this war!
```




```
(= may today's (@ल๐зงбœэмо) love never be lost to us)!
```



```
May your child perish!
```



```
May we never see youlyou (pl.) again!/May I never see you (pl.) again!
```


## How to give an instruction in the imperative

For all verbs except one the imperative is identical to the aorist indicative with 2nd person subject．The one exception is the verb of motion，whose imperative has the forms preverb－＠o（sing．）or preverb－＠n－の（pl．），the preverb giving the relevant direction of movement（e．g．$\partial_{m-œ ๐(-\infty)}$ Come！，$\partial_{\jmath}-\partial m-\varrho ๐(-$
 into！，etc．）．Study these examples：




```
When anyone comes in, stand up, kids!
```






```
(のロアコロกกธ๐).
```



```
Do please be seated ((@))8(ndu6@⿰氵冗), drink some coffee and explain to me
everything that happened.
```




```
Wash your hands and face, take off your dirty (子`ま}ynv6n) clothing, put on
something clean (Lugon)), come running downstairs, sit down at ((an)эg@ojo) the
table and eat this delicious food!
```





```
m(zajomm\mp@code{Obn \partialu'nju!}
```




＊Note the form of the root + thematic suffix and compare it with the combination （ho－）$৩-\zeta^{2}-03$ for the meaning you put clothing $X$ on $Y$ ．We also have the present combin－


Colloquially some imperatives take a short form．In place of $\partial m-n-\Omega 心 \varrho-0$




Georgian has no word for please，so the imperative on its own has no overtones of imperiousness．However，the colloquial addition of mo adds a sort of softening，pleading tone．Compare：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { gl zuд̊здのgo! Do this for me! } \\
& \text { with gl zuanjgojon no! Go on, do this for me! }
\end{aligned}
$$

It is also possible to add the full verb form $\boldsymbol{\jmath}^{-\infty \text { omm }}(-\infty)$ I urge／beg of you． Another alternative construction is to use an aorist subjunctive dependent upon this（now）main verb in place of the imperative．If your bus is crowded and you want to get off，you can say to those blocking your exit：子uдugungon！Let

 I beg you to let me pass！

An instruction to be carried out by either some 3rd person（s）alone or a group including the speaker is given by using the aorist subjunctive with either 3rd person or 1st person plural subject respectively，e．g．：



```
9 o'clock tomorrow!
```



```
Let your sins be forgiven!
```



```
Let's go to town and buy a new television!
```



```
No one is to come in!
bumbas 6ua(zbzmjon zuamu!
Let the people eat cakes!
Jvho Lf(nuogu@ zu@uzqmon!
Let's quickly cut across the street!
\partialmznzu@mon @u збงbmon!
Let's wait ((\partialm)^(ङ\varrho)) and see!
```


## How to construct expressions of prohibition

We have already dealt with two ways of negating a verb: 30 m indicates lack of ability to perform the verbal action, while om is the simple negative. We now come to a third. This is $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{y}}$, and it is used specifically for saying 'Don't ... !'. It is used in conjunction not with the imperative, as might have been expected, but with the future indicative (or with the present indicative for an ongoing activity). An alternative construction, which is more of a negative request than a strict prohibition, is to use om in conjunction with the aorist subjunctive. The same alternatives apply when the verb has 1st or 3rd person subject. Examples are:

```
6y fubzum(m)! or u'm fubzo@g(m)
Don't go!
```



```
Don't open that door!
```



```
Don't play ball (Bymon) in this yard!
```



```
Don't tell lies to your parents!
```



```
Don't put a lot of salt on your food!
```



```
Let's not open the door, let them not come in!
loz@ov5% 6y bum!
Don't be (go on being) sad (ᄂ⿹з@~u6n)!
```


## Dialogue 3

A mother gives her child a maths test

| @ว¢๐: |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| дзомо: |  |
| @วญ๐: |  <br>  |
| дзомо |  <br>  |
| @ว@๐: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| д3омо: |  |
| @ว¢๐: |  |
| д3омо: |  |
| @๐¢ง: |  кьдœубоง? |
| әдомо: @コ@๐: |  <br>  <br>  |
| дзомо: |  oymb. |
| @コ¢๐: |  |
| дзомо: |  <br>  |
| ๒วญ๐: |  <br>  |
|  |  |
| ழวฺง: |  <br>  |
| д3ощо: |  <br>  |
| ¢ว¢๐: |  |
| дзомо: |  |
| @g¢๐: | @๐ dьzol bงżomobzomm? |
|  |  |
| @gฏง: | dumosб zomzo, дzomm! |
| дЗомо |  <br>  |


| VOCABULARY |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | important | －8＠u－vる＠ | nonsense |
|  | unimportant | －－¢z－98－つ（zuдm－） | $X$ is advantageous to $Y$ |
| bavmmo（ $0--3^{8}$ ） | you use X |  | you use $X$ |
| 2moçajomo | calculator，meter |  | you behave foolishly |
|  | you（will）beg $X$ | Luayu＇mm | world |
| しЈ\％＠3m－ง3（зu6－） | you define $X$ | ymzmolza ${ }^{\text {admo }}$ | almighty |
|  | $X$ remains for $Y$ | วงวกб | then |
| lomutim | pay－point | ammorom | cashier |
| －0－3yツ－${ }^{3}$（2m－） | you deceive $X$ | \％ŋ＠дつつの | excessive |
|  | you wangle $X$ out of $Y$ | い－®＠－の（るゝдm－） | you test $X$ |
|  | you add $X$ to $Y$ | －3－3m－98（zuдm－） | you subtract $X$ from $Y$ |
| am－n－zo！ | hold on！ | 9 ¢冂ono fiymon！ | just a minute！ |
|  | you remind $X$ of $Y$ | ajlubuanon | relevant |
|  | term | 的乐乐3 | number |
| zuluymozn | dividend | zuaymozo | divisor |
| zuбuymozo | quotient |  | last |
|  | you multiply $X$ | luamuzmo | multiplicand |
|  | multiplier |  | product |
| ッ－8ヵツ－93 | you（will）call $X$＇$Y$＇ | mub゚ | even |
|  | opposite | $39^{508}$ | odd |

## Proverb


Don＇t buy either a fresh cucumber or fresh news at a high price－ they＇ll soon become cheap

## VOCABULARY

| ubomo | new | 了几రీ＇mo | cucumber |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | news | d30¢ーゝ＠ | expensively |
| 5.9 | don＇t | yne（－）ym－mb（0－yn＠－＾） | you buy $X$ |
| дьмо | soon | （zu－） 0 Ooz－e－jb－u | it becomes cheap |

## Verse

As verse－example here I quote the Lord＇s Prayer（Mt．6：9－13）in the Old Georgian version from the famed Adysh Gospel（AD 897）


```
оуьз6 бдठзе дубп,
```










## VOCABULARY

| วงวง－я | father | Royjb－п | our |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | who | b－o－m | you are |
| 30 （30－めu） | sky（oblique plural） | วกб๐ | in |
| ¢0n＠๐ | holy | 0－yoz－6＊ | let it be |
| Lubjem－п | name | ŋృб－ก | your（s） |
| дм－3Ј＠－п－6 | let it come |  | kingdom |
| 5〕ठu－e | will | $3^{\text {nonomious }}$ | as |
|  | just so | Jэoy［0］60 | earth |
| \％ృ＠ | upon |  | bread |
| 0 | this | umbmbu－s | existence，life |
|  | give $X$ to us | ＠¢ை | today |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { am-д-n-ठ }(-) \partial 3-\jmath \sigma^{\ddagger} \\ & \text { Rugjб } \end{aligned}$ | forgive us <br> （pl．）$X$ |  | trespass （obl．pl．） |
|  | we forgive them $X$ | 6. | don＇t |
|  | you lead us into | 8uбlogerem | temptation |
| งゼってŋ＠ | but（after a neg．） |  | deliver us |
| 3mincoro | evil | mudjory | for |
| －－m－し | it is | dum－o | power |
|  | glory | しovju5\％ | century |
| дпдumos | towards，against，for | งaj6 | amen |

＊Georgian has lost this 3rd person singular jussive marker and uses today the simple 3rd person singular of the aorist subjunctive（ $0-y-m-\downarrow$ ）．The same jussive ending occurs

$\dagger$ In Old Georgian the 1st person object marker－д－could refer either to a singular entity $m e$ ，as in the modern language，or in combination with the actual or understood external pronoun $R_{y j}$ ，to a plural entity $u s$ ，albeit of the exclusive type，which is to say＇speaker plus third person to the exclusion of the addressee＇，as is，of course，the case here when speaking to God．
＊The final morpheme here takes up the plurality of the nominative entity，пงбu－бьœ๐る－
 not indicate formally its nominative status，it is still notionally nominative and so motiv－ ates the plural suffix in the verb．

## Exercises

1 Write out the aorist subjunctive paradigms of the pairs: I (etc.) may knock X down, I (etc.) may fall over, I (etc.) may warm X, I (etc.) may get warm, $I$ (etc.) may whiten $X, I$ (etc.) may turn white.

2 Fill in the gaps and translate:








3 Rewrite the following prohibitions in their more polite forms:







「ogbl


4 Now put the following polite prohibitions into their stronger forms:









5 Rephrase the following sentences of the type $X \ldots$ ed into an expression

 an apple:










6 Answer each of the following questions in (a) an affirmative, and (b) a negative way after the pattern of: Seijleba Heli davibanoT? Is it possible for us to wash our hand(s)? Æ diaH, daibaneT/ara, nu daibanT! Yes, wash them/No, don't wash them!:







 $\partial_{3} 9^{6 ง \text { mo }}$ ?

7 Translate into English:
 $3{ }^{6} \mathrm{bom}$ ?
















8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) Why should I be given money, when I am unable to go out and have to stay at home?
(b) When I come to Tbilisi, someone must meet me at the station, otherwise it is possible I'll lose my way.
(c) Come tomorrow at three. Bring your sister, but don't bring your brother.
(d) It is possible for twenty-seven to be divided by nine. Since it is not divisible by two, we call it an odd number.
(e) It's possible you'll give birth to a son, but it's not possible for him to be named George, since you named your first son George.
(f) The enemy have to treat you well. Otherwise, after we gain victory, we shall treat them badly, and they are well aware of this fact.
(g) This should soon be decided, and, as soon as it is decided, they should tell you.
(h) Don't go on being so obstinate! Get up at six tomorrow and take your sister to the station. What should you lose by this?

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE


 backgammon? No, but they should play it. In other words, switch the present/ future indicative of the question into the equivalent aorist subjunctive dependent on the unchanging marker of obligation. Place the appropriate personal pronouns in brackets to indicate that you are aware of any changes in person and/or case marking resulting from this transformation:





















## Lesson 13

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The essentials of the stative verbs
- The formation, agreement patterns and syntax of the indirect verbs in the present, future and, where relevant, aorist indicatives (plus aorist subjunctive)
- Saying $X$ wants to [verb] and $X$ can [verb]
- Expressing the notion convey in the present sub-series
- Forming the future indicative of the verb know
- The more important stative verbs


## Dialogue 1

Misha has a proposal for his girlfriend, Duda





 дпбழ๐ доптю๓.























## Vocabulary

| zuyagmenjbome | unrepeatable | Tjusdmg ${ }^{\text {membu }}$ | possibility |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | X can | 3－ก－б＠－১ | you want $X$ |
| いongajem－mb | you take advantage |  | it seems to you |
| （ $0--\mathrm{j}^{\text {3 }}$ ） | of $X$（＝instr．$)$ | 3－0－ybyturym－ | you consider $X$ |
| nomfmu | as if | $9^{3-0}$ | embarrassing |
| mu3umuzn | talking |  | nervousness |
|  | you listen to $X$ | 3－0－blma－l | you recall $X$ |
| ᄂomudm | evening | зп＠ | well |
|  | feeling grips you | numo | such（a） |
|  | feeling |  | you conclude $X$ |
|  | you fall in love with $X$ |  | honestly |
|  дпп уणुरмм | the more ．．．the more | $3^{-0-y 30 m-l ~}$ | you love $X$ |
|  | seeking |  | you are hastening to $X$ |
| リコృбп¢ | without you | ชu－a－os－9 3 3olugbl | you will answer me |
| $\text { B-৩-nбסి } 0^{\text {ming }}$ (@o-) | $X$ interests you | $3-0-3_{3}-6$ | you have（thing） |
| anaution | towards（＋gen．） |  | darling！ |
|  | it will surprise you |  | you behave nervously |
| しর্যymoue | entirely | 3－0－しる－o－し | you understand $X$ |


|  | you reveal $X$ to $Y$ | 2by | warm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | last（week） |  | you miss $X$ |
| 习ృ6ก zo | darling！ |  | you（will）kiss $X$ |
| $3-0-60$ m－n－u | you are glad | 3u－z－0－bum－¢－3b－0／ | you will be |
| 3－9－ymm－əb－১ | you will have | 8u－z－2－bum－ए－3z－0 | gladdened |
|  | （person） | Undj－md［0］mo | son－（and）－daughter－ in－law |
| y－beo－n（zu＠u－） | you put on $X$ for $Y$ |  | wedding |

## Dialogue 2

P＇aat＇a offers an acquaintance，Nodar，a lift in his car

| 30〕O̊： |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 6м＠ьறை๐： |  <br>  <br>  |
| 300 亿̧） |  <br>  <br>  |
| 6m＠ைறை๐： |  |
| 300 亿̊） |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| 6m＠ைறை๐： |  |
|  |  <br>  |
| 6 ¢＠ıバை： |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| 300 O̊： |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |














## Vocabulary

| Lunos？ | where（to）？ |  | you take（thing） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－9－h才om－98－0 | you are in hurry | Foz6mborus | library |
|  | of course |  | you take（person／car） |
| Prenymo | annual |  | examination |
| zumogn | garage | 3－0 $\mathrm{c}_{\text {bjem }}$ | you are hot |
|  | what sort of？ |  | shirt |
| 3－0－03－n－0 | you wear $X$ | 3－১－ 000 m－n－u | $X$ is written on you |
| $3-\sqrt{3-0-0}$ | you are called $X$ | Lumzumzumgon | abroad |
| оुокว๐ | firm | dumoumo ¢mm（a） | to tell you the truth |
| $)^{\circ} 3^{6} 38 \%$ | you don＇t give | zoorbino |  |
| 3－3п＠－п－৩ | a damn | yobmuýo | foreign（of things） |
|  | you prefer $X$ | －foviono | of here |
|  | product | $3-\mathrm{B} 303-0-0$ | you have $X$ as a habit |
| Ruдm－z－0－ $3_{3}$－ | you bring thing |  | speculator |
| 3－змб－ก－৩ | you think $X$ |  | you live |
| ア－0－ワกб－ก－৩ | you are afraid | Rumbmbo | being on the make |
| 3п\％бу） | business | 3－803－bum | you resemble $X$ |
|  | norm |  | contemporary |
|  | you reveal $X$ to $Y$ | Lon＠yдmм | secret |
| 3non630 | question | $3-\operatorname{mos} 3 j^{6-0-0}$ | you are ashamed $\text { (of } X=\text { gen.) }$ |
| 自mgmén | Not at all！／What a | $80(3)$ a | giving |
| 3－9－30やの－38－১！ | thing to say！ |  |  |
| $3 \mathrm{~m} \%$ ПुO | position | －3080n－03 | you（will）forgive $X Y$ |
|  | （has／have）just | －－зб－mb | you（will）recognise $X$ |
| ठмммm | last，end | 3－0－3jon－n－3 | you wear（e．g．glasses） |
| しょozuem | glasses |  | you need $X$ |
| abj＠здмм | sight | （＠）－） |  |




```
    (lit. = life!)}\quad\mathrm{ ञ
```



```
    (@)-)
```


## Grammar

## Stative verbs

Georgian has a number of verb forms called statives that indicate their nomi－ native subject is in some particular state．They are peculiar in that，whether there is a dative indirect object present or not，by its very shape the verb implies such an indirect object is present．Regardless of their form in the present sub－series（and in this sub－series most of them only exist in the present indicative anyway），in the future sub－series and in Series II they follow the pattern of prefixal intransitives with obligatory ${ }_{\jmath}$－prefix（and no preverb）．Most of these verbs will only ever be found with a 3rd person singular subject and will thus mostly end in the present indicative in $-0-৩$（a few end in－0 $3-\mathrm{l}$ ）．If $1 \mathrm{st} / 2$ nd person subjects are possible，the agreement patterns will be as illus－
 suspended in（mid）air（30gmo）（note the indirect object marking ${ }^{3-}$ ）：

| Present indicative | Future indicative | Aorist indicative | Aorist subjunctive |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－3n＠－п－3um | 3－う－3¢＠－38－ก | 3－9－30＠－つ | 3－9－3n¢－м |
| 3－zn＠－o－bum |  |  |  |
| $3-$－$¢$ ¢－ก－১ | － $0^{\text {－}}$－ | －－－¢－১ |  |
| 3－3¢e－n－zum－m | 3－ラ－3n¢－3b－n－m | 3－9－3n¢－9－の | 3－ラ－3n＠－m－の |
| 3－zn＠－n－bum－n | う－3n＠－ラ3－n－の | う－$ొ$ ¢－う－の | う－3几＠－m－の |
| $3-$－$n$＠－n－u6 | 0－3ొ＠－38－ก－ง6 | ）－$¢$ ¢－б〕б | －3n＠－м－6 |

The form of the root in Series II and whether the subjunctive is in－m or－ will be determined by the verb type，according to the rules presented in earlier lessons．For example，y（m－0－৩（objects）lie scattered about from ym－0 you throw them has the aorist indicative and subjunctive $0-y \circ(m-\Delta / 0-y 0(m-m-L$ respec－ tively，because the basic transitive verb has the corresponding forms＠u－yom－১ $X$ threw them vs＠๐－yo（m－m－し $X$ may throw them．Statives may be combined with indirect objects，which，according to the verb in question and／or the meaning，will be marked on the verb in the present sub－series only by the appropriate object affix：
 ภొ＠－I don＇t／won＇t／didn＇t give a damn（lit．it is suspended on my feet）；

 picture hanging by the head of the bed）；

 house）．

As we see，in the future sub－series and Series II the ${ }_{0}$－prefix is obligatory whether there is actually an indirect object present or not．

Particularly with those statives which are obligatorily construed with an indirect object one has the feeling，perhaps conditioned by the way they are most naturally translated into English，that one is making more of a state－ ment about the dative nominal than about the nominative nominal；in other words，there is more of a feeling that the dative is the subject with these verbs rather than the nominative．Consider，for example：



```
What is your opinion? (lit. How think you) - is the white house or the black one
prettier? I think the white one is prettier.
```



```
Who do you think I am? We think you are our saviour (2blбymo).
```



```
What is your name? My name is George.
```



```
What are those children wearing? They are wearing school uniform (oुmóds).
```



```
What are you holding in your hands? We are holding the new constitution
( 80 しゃっる ) .
```

Stative verbs have somewhat marginal status in Georgian，although some of them are clearly going to occur quite frequently．The principal parts of some of the more important，including the four roots just illustrated，are given later in this Lesson．But the reason for their discussion at this stage is by way of introduction to a group of verbs whose subject is definitely and always its dative nominal．

## The indirect verbs

In previous lessons all the verb types examined have taken nominative subjects in Series I，while any direct object with Series I transitives and medials has gone into the dative case．We have also discussed the alternative patterning that comes into play in Series II for transitives and medials，whereby the subject stands in the ergative and the direct object in the nominative．

We now come to the indirect verbs，which take their name from the fact that，regardless of series，their logical subject stands in the dative case，whilst their logical direct object stands in the nominative．As for noun－verb agree－ ment，the dative nominal selects those agreement affixes that up until now have been used to mark a verb＇s object，whereas the nominative nominal selects those affixes that up until now have been used to mark a verb＇s subject． This sudden reversal of established patterns for indicating the relationship between verbs and their nouns usually causes the learner some difficulty， so do not be surprised if what we are about to describe takes some time to sink in！

## Indirect verbs and statives

Indirect verbs share a number of features with the statives：in the present sub－ series some roots are preceded only by an agreement affix，some require the objective version，some the locative version，and others take the ${ }_{0}$－prefix；in the future sub－series many have the form of a prefixal intransitive with oblig－ atory ${ }_{0}$－prefix．Many indirect verbs only exist in association with a dative nominal，and often，although the verb must of necessity also carry an agree－ ment affix for a putative nominative nominal，none such may actually appear in the sentence．When the nominative nominal is 1 st or 2 nd person，it is marked on the verb by means of the copula in the present indicative．A 3rd person nominative nominal，whether singular or plural，is marked in the present indicative by either -l or $-৩-$ as the nominative nominal is the direct object， 3rd person plurality is never indicated，even if it refers to human beings． Unlike statives，whose past tense form is almost always formally the aorist indicative，indirect verbs often have no aorist indicative（or Series II in general） and have as their past tense a formal imperfect indicative（see Lesson 14）．

## Conjugations of indirect verbs

Let us look at the conjugations of some of the indirect verbs to get a feel for how they work：

| а－0－y30m－l | I love $X$（sing．／pl．） | 33－0－y30m－L | we love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－0－y30m－L | you love $X$（sing．／pl．） | 3－0－y30ヶm－m | you（pl．）love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| ソ－y3 | $X$ loves $Y$（sing．／pl．） | －－y30） | they love $X$（sing．／pl．） |

We have here been changing the person of the dative subject and keeping the object constant as a 3rd person entity．We note that the 3rd person plural dative，being the verb＇s subject，has its plurality marked on the verb by the suffixal－œ，which causes the -L －agreeing with the nominative nominal to drop（cf．the same－の on ১－（33－ก－১－๓ they are wearing $X$ above）．If the direct object is 1 st or 2 nd person，then the 3 rd person subject＇s plurality may not be marked on the verb，for a－$\infty$ in association with whatever the marker of
the 1st or 2nd person nominative nominal happens to be may indicate the plurality of the direct object only．Study the following examples，where various combinations of subject and object are offered：

| a－n－yzum－bum | I love you | 2－n－yzum－bu m－on | I love you（pl．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－0－yzum－zom | you love me | 3－0－y30ハーzuハn－の | you love us／you（pl．） |
|  |  |  | love me／you（pl．）love us |
|  | －y－yzuth－bum | $X$（sing．／pl．）love |  |
|  | ツ－y3 | $X$（sing．／pl．）love（ | you（pl．） |
|  |  | $X$（sing．／pl．）love |  |
|  | 3－y－yzum－zu血－m | $X$（sing．／pl．）love |  |
| 33－0－y3－ m －bum | we love you | 33－0－y3 | we love you（pl．） |

Some examples to illustrate this verb in full sentences are：


```
Who loves me? Everyone loves you
```



```
Spinsters (\bethっБงठgmo (-৩-)) love Zviad
```



```
Spinsters don't love you
```



```
Mothers love their own children
```



```
This child loves his own parents
```

We have seen that the root love requires the objective version in the present sub－series．In the future indicative the equivalents to the above forms will be：

|  | I＇ll love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you＇ll love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 9－y30 | X＇ll love $Y$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | I＇ll love you |
| 3－0－y30㐌－98－0 | you＇ll love me |
| 83－9－узงハウ－9 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | we＇ll love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－9－yzominiou－n | you（pl．）will love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | they＇ll love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 2－9－y30ハm－jb－n－m | I＇ll love you（pl．） |
| 3－9－y30 | you＇ll love us／you（pl．）will love me／ you（pl．）will love us |
| 0－y30 | $X$（sing．／pl．）will love you |
| －－y 3 ¢n－9B－0－の | $X$（sing．／pl．）will love you（pl．） |


| 3-0-y30^గ-9z-0 | $X$ (sing./pl.) will love me |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ (sing./pl.) will love us |
| 33-9-y30 | we'll love you |
|  | we'll love you (pl.) |

The expression fall in love with behaves like an inceptive, i.e. a verb denoting the beginning of an action. It is uncommon in the present subseries, has the form of a suffixal intransitive elsewhere, takes the preverb $\partial_{\gamma^{-}}$, and the dative logical subject is marked on the verb with the help of the objective version. The aorist indicative is, of course, strong and the subjunctive is in -э e.g.:

|  | I'll fall in love with you |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ (sing./pl.) will fall in love with me |
|  | $X$ (sing./pl.) will fall in love with you (pl.) |
|  | I fell in love with you |
|  | $X$ (sing./pl.) fell in love with me |
|  | $X$ (sing./pl.) fell in love with you (pl.) |

Note: since in speech $3^{-}$before $-m$ is often not pronounced, this last form may also mean $X$ (sing./pl.) fell in love with us. Similar cases will not be noted elsewhere.

The meaning conceive a love for is conveyed by a normal transitive verb in $-0^{3}$, e.g.:

|  | I'll conceive a love for $X$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $I$ conceived a love for $X$ |
|  | I may conceive a love for $X$ |

The root have (of animate objects) is one that takes no version vowel in the present sub-series, e.g.:

| d-y>3-b | I have $X$ (sing./pl.) | $83-y z^{-4}$ | we have $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $8-y>3-b$ | you have $X$ (sing./pl.) | 3-yoz-m | you (pl.) have $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| 3-yoz-L | $X$ has $Y$ (sing./pl.) | $3-y \bigcirc 3-\infty$ | they have $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| a-yoz-botn | I have you | 3-yo3-30tn | you have me |
|  | 3-yoz-bom $\quad X$ | $X$ (sing./pl.) has/have you |  |
|  | 3-yo3-zum $X$ | $X$ (sing./pl.) has/have me |  |
|  | 3-yっ3-3งกn-n $X$ | $X$ (sing./pl.) has/have us |  |
|  | 3-yo3-3ง<n-m you | you have us/you (pl.) have me/ |  |
|  | you (pl.) have us |  |  |

The equivalent future indicative forms，where the root is - ymme $^{-}$，will be：



```
                                    (sing./pl.)
```





```
    3-0-ymm- \(0^{3-0} \quad X\) (sing./pl.) will have me
    3-ラ-ymल \(-\jmath^{B-0-\infty} \quad X\) (sing./pl.) will have us
```



```
    you (pl.) will have us
```

A different root exists for the meaning have（an inanimate object）－in the present indicative it is $-\mathrm{f}_{3}-$ ，and in the future sub－series it is $-\mathrm{f}_{6}$－．Note the colloquial present given in brackets below：

|  | I have it／them |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you have it／them |
| －－f3－L（ $0-\mathrm{f}$ ） | $X$ has itthem |
|  | we have it／them |
|  | you（pl．）have itthem |
| －－ $\mathrm{fl}_{3}$－の（ $\left.0-\mathrm{f}-\infty\right)$ | they have it／them |
| － $36-53-\mathrm{c}-\infty$ | they will have it／them |
| з3－0－36－98－〕 | we shall have itthem |

This future is nothing other than $\cap-\mathfrak{j 6 - \jmath}\rangle-ง$ it will be（older it is being made） with an associated indirect object shown by the ${ }_{\jmath}$－prefix！

The root $-\mathrm{bl}(-)_{m_{3}}-$ remember is one that takes the locative version in the present sub－series，e．g．：

| －－－－blimz | I recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{z}^{- \text {－－blima }}$－${ }^{\text {b }}$ | you recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| o－blemz－l | $X$ recalls $Y$（sing．／pl．） |
| $3^{-0-b l u m z}$ | we recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－－－blm $3^{\text {－m }}$ | you（pl．）recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| －－blm ${ }_{3}$－on | they recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| a－－－blmz－bom | I recall you |
|  | $X$（sing．／pl．）recall（s）me |
| 3－－－blma－zom | you recall me |
| －－blmz－bum－o | $X$（sing．／pl．）recall（s）you（pl．） |

The equivalent future indicative forms，where the root is now $-b l(-) m \partial-$ ，are：

| а－л－blma－ə ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | I＇ll recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| 3－0－blma－ə ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | you＇ll recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |


| a－blma－ob－o | X＇ll recall $Y$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| 33－0－blma－〕8－১ | we＇ll recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－0－blma－jz－u－m | you（pl．）＇ll recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 0 －blma－ə ${ }^{\text {b－u－a }}$ | they＇ll recall $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | I＇ll recall you |
| 3－9－blma－jb－n | $X$（sing．／pl．）will recall me |
| 3－〕－bluma－g ${ }^{\text {a－o }}$ | you＇ll recall me |
| 〕－blma－〕ア－п－п | $X$（sing．／pl．）＇ll recall you（pl．） |

The verb meaning hear，understand，used only with 3rd person direct object， has the ${ }_{j}$－prefix in the present sub－series－note that the older ending－o－l for modern－$\jmath^{B-৩}$ is again employed as in $0-\llcorner\partial-\bigcirc-\llcorner X$ is heard：

| コ－ŋ－しコ－п－し | $I$ hear／understand $X$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 3－コ－しる－n－し | you hear／understand $X$ |
| －－しる－п－し | $X$ hears／understands $Y$ |
| $33-0-$－－－し | we hear／understand $X$ |
| 3－9－しる－n－m | you（pl．）hear／understand $X$ |
| －－して－n－の | they hear／understand $X$ |

The future indicative for $X$ will hear（i．e．some sound will impinge upon X＇s hearing）adds a preverb（ $\partial m-\jmath-\downarrow \partial-\jmath \partial-\lrcorner)$ ，which is carried over to produce an aorist indicative（дм－э－しд－ง）．

The root want is slightly odd in that，when the object is 1 st or 2 nd person， an－ก－appears between root and to be－suffix，e．g．：

| д－п－б＠－১ | $I$ want $X$ | a－n－6¢－n－bum | I want you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－0－6＠－১ | you want $X$ | 3－n－6ए－n－zum | you want me |
| －- ¢＠－১ | $X$ wants $Y$ | $3-\boldsymbol{- 6}$－ | $X$（sing．／pl．）want（s）me |

（A very polite equivalent only used when the subject is 2 nd person is $\beta^{-6} \jmath^{3-}$


In the future indicative the root becomes $-6 \varrho(-) \mathrm{m} \partial-$ ，e．g．：

| а－л－Б＠мд－əठ－৩ | I＇ll want $X$ | а－л－Б＠мд－əz－п | I＇ll want you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you＇ll want $X$ |  | you＇ll want me |
|  | X＇ll want $Y$ | 3－9－Б＠мд－эВ－п | $X$（sing．／pl．）will want me |

In English $X$ will want $Y$ is，of course，ambiguous．It can mean that：（a） X will be in a state of feeling a want for Y ；（b） X will feel a sudden want for Y ；or（c） X will make up his mind that he wants Y ．In Georgian each of these senses has its own representation．The future just quoted corresponds to sense（a）．Sense（b）is conveyed by：

```
\partialm-д-п-6@-วる-১ I'll want X
```




```
\partialm-д-п-ちœ-эठ-○ I'll want you
```

Sense（c）is conveyed by a normal transitive verb with subjective version：

| дм－3－п－б¢мว－эठ | I＇ll want $X$ |  | I＇ll want you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дм－п－6＠mд－л | you＇ll want $X$ | дм－Ә－ก－б¢๐ว－〕ठ | you＇ll want me |
| дм－п－6＠mд－əる－し | X＇ll want $Y$ |  | X＇ll want me vs |
|  |  | дм－д－п－б＠мд－эठ－лб | they＇ll want me |

Both these last two forms，indicating momentary activities，possess Series II forms．The second of the two behaves like any transitive verb in－0 ${ }^{8}$ with a vowel in the root，having a weak aorist indicative and subjunctive in－m（e．g．
 want for $X$ ）；the former behaves like a markerless intransitive with strong aorist indicative and subjunctive in $-\jmath(\partial m-\partial-ก-\zeta$＠－○ I felt a want for you，$\partial \mathrm{m}$－ コ－ก－Б＠－〕 I may feel a want for you）．

The verb like never occurs without a preverb and thus possesses Series II forms meaning take a liking to．The aorist indicative is weak and the subjunc－ tive is in－m：

| ам－д－¢¢б－し | I like $X$（sing．／pl．） | ам－д－¢¢п－buén | I like you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| วм－し－¢¢\％－し | $X$ likes $Y$（sing．／pl．） |  | $X$（sing．／pl．）like（s）me |
|  | I＇ll like $X$（sing．／pl．） |  | I＇ll like you |
|  | X＇ll like $Y$（sing．／pl．） |  | $X$（sing．／pl．）will like me |
|  | I liked $X$（sing．／pl．） |  | I liked you |
|  | $X$ liked $Y$（sing．／pl．） | ам－з－0－fimb－0 | $X$（sing．／pl．）liked me |
| ам－д－ə－¢пб－м－し | I may like $X$（sing．／pl．） | ам－д－л－¢мб－м | I may like you |
|  | $\begin{gathered} X \text { may like } X \\ (\text { sing. } / \mathrm{pl} .) \end{gathered}$ |  | $X$（sing．／pl．）may like me |

## The main indirect verbs

If no aorist indicative is offered，this means that the verb in question has no Series II forms，except that inceptives all have the normal type of Series II for suffixal intransitives．All forms are presented with 3rd person subject and object：




 contrasts with the ordinary suffixal intransitive Byomo／fumn $ง$ the water will turn／the woman will catch cold；cf． $\mathrm{On}_{3}-\mathrm{o}$ it（not referring


 ＠－〕－১ $X$ will grow hungry）；
 Byym－＠ーっる－ゝ X will start to feel thirsty）；

 $Y$ vs subjunctive＠o－し－子om－＠－ァ－し $X$ may need $Y$ ）；
 $=0$－dnб－m－ا）；




 $\bigcirc X$ will be deprived of $Y$ ）；

 $X$ deliberately puts（will put）$Y$ out of his mind）；
－ 0 －Øกб－ก－ง $X$ is afraid（of $Y$ ），where $Y$ stands in the（usually long form of
 mice．Outside the present sub－series two types of inceptive exist：one is
 ＠－〕！Don＇t be afraid！），while the other is abnormal in combining a suffixal －＠－with the $\jmath$－prefix，which latter indicates the presence of a dative

 will be hot；cf．the momentary future＠u－L－（১）－ృ১－৩ $X$ will become hot


 L－dym－e－っ－し）；






Special indirect verbs with the ${ }_{\jmath}$－prefix can be formed from a number of roots and largely exist only in the present sub－series with the meaning $X$ has a



Similar formations often indicate that the action occurs without the intention of the individual concerned; these are not limited to the present sub-series, e.g.:


```
X bursts/will burst/burst out laughing
```



```
\(X\) breaks/will break/broke into a smile
```

Note also the following interesting pairs of transitives, where the unintending agent is actually the indirect object of an essentially subjectless verb:


```
I cough/will cough/coughed unintentionally
```



```
I cough/will cough/coughed deliberately
д-১-дの fбЈ
I yawn/will yawn/ yawned unintentionally
```



```
I yawn/will yawn/yawned intentionally
```



```
I belch/will belch/belched unintentionally
```

 analysis of the construction is difficult, because there are two objects, the sneezer and nose, joined to a verb meaning cause to strike, and yet in the one example in the Academy Dictionary, both these objects stand in the dative even with the aorist indicative:

The priest sneezed
Indirect verbs possessing the ${ }_{0}$-prefix, with additional Series II forms, but without a preverb, can be formed from adjectives to express the idea $X$ judges $Y$ to be ... [adjective], e.g.:


```
    (cf. ьœзомп easy)
```



```
    (cf. yby nnbymo embarrassing)
```



```
    (cf. उलס○ a little/few)
```



```
    (cf. (3bうmo hot)
```


## How to say $X$ wants to [verb] and $X$ can [verb]

The appropriate forms of the indirect verbs д-๐-Б@-৩ I want $X$ and $\check{\partial}_{\jmath-\partial-ก-~}^{\text {- }}$ $d_{\text {m-0-৩ }} I$ can $X$ are used in association with the aorist subjunctive of the dependent verb, which will either have the same subject as the introductory verbs or, in the case of examples like $X$ wants $Y$ to ..., a different subject in the appropriate person and case, e.g.:

```
зпбœ० FЈзл@э?
Do you want me to go (lit. that I go)?
```





```
What do the generals (Lom@[১]mo) want us to do (lit. that we do)?
```



```
I want to sit down and cry
```



```
Do you really want the whole (дп\jmathल०) world to learn of your treachery
(дммлмодృмठ̈)?
```



```
What can you do that I cannot do?
```



```
If they can remain here, let them remain here!
```



```
If you can lend me 100 roubles (д৩Бృo๐), go on and lend them to me! I have
to go to Russia tomorrow
```


## How to express the notion convey

Now that we have learned the verbs for have, we can see how the notion convey is expressed in the present sub-series. Quite simply select the appropriate form of have depending on whether the object being conveyed is animate or inanimate and add the preverb that indicates the direction in which the object is being conveyed, e.g.:


 around (regularly); etc.


 (regularly); etc.
（As with the verb of motion，only the preverb $\partial \circ$－may be used in the present sub－series to indicate away；elsewhere $\partial_{\circ}-$ implies reaching the destination， whereas $\beta_{0}$－is used just to indicate away－motion）．

Outside the present sub－series Georgian，as already indicated，reverts to the normal transitive roots－ 006 －for inanimate objects and－y $3^{\circ 6}$－for animate objects，both used basically with the subjective version（though this may give way to the objective version，if required to do so）and both having weak aorist indicatives with subjunctives in -m ．Note，though，that $\mathcal{P}^{9}-0-\mathrm{m}^{-\rho^{8}}$ you will take（inanimate）$X$ is more common than $80-\cap-006$ ．Where＠o－is used in the present sub－series，regardless of whether the object is animate or not， the future will be＠u－১－ס৩（m－১る you will convey $X$ about：


 about；etc．
 up to somewhere；дง－д－ก－узьб you＇ll take me out；১－дm－д－ก－узงб you＇ll


## How to say know in the future indicative

The verb know was exceptional in the present sub－series by virtue of having an ergative subject and nominative direct object．In the future sub－series the root takes the form of an indirect verb with dative subject and nominative direct object．Since the verb can only be used with a 3rd person object，it conjugates as follows with the future root－（3m＠（－）n6－：

|  | I shall know X |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | we shall know $X$ |
| 3－0－3м＠の6－9 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | you will know $X$ |
| 3－9－3м＠の6－9z－u－п | you（pl．）will know $X$ |
|  | $X$ will know $Y$ |
|  | they will know $X$ |

Study these examples：

The students will not know English when they get here

How many poems（moflo）will you know tomorrow？
We shall know three

## Forms of the more important stative verbs

|  |  | Future | Aorist | Subjunctive |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { is tied up } \\ \text { I have X tied up } \end{array}\right\}$ |  | －3－3 | －－3－১－৬ |
| 3－дмп－o－১ | X thinks（Y） |  | －－8m6－u | Ј－am6－m－l |
| 2－3000－0－0 | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { is wearing } Y \\ \text { (e.g. ring, glasses, } \\ \text { necklace) } \end{array}\right\}$ | $0-30^{\infty-5} 3-0$ | $3-35^{00-0}$ | $3-30^{\infty-m-L}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { u-muz-o-u } \\ & \text { a-n-moz-o-u } \end{aligned}$ | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { is sorted/set } \\ \text { out on } \\ I \text { have } X \text { set out } \end{array}\right\}$ | 9－muz－9 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | 9－muz－s | 0－muz－m－l |
| $\begin{aligned} & u-f y z-n-u \\ & \text { a-n-fyz-n-s } \end{aligned}$ | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { is stored } \\ I \text { have } X \text { stored } \end{array}\right\}$ | 0－8y－mo－u | 0－8y－m | －－8y－m－L |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { ఎ-6の-n-u } \\ & \text { a-n-6o-n-৩ } \end{aligned}$ | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X(\text { fire }) \text { is lit } \\ I \text { have X lit } \end{array}\right\}$ |  | 0－6n－m | 0－6o－m－L |
| y－3ym－0－0 | $X$ is holding $Y$ | 0－3ym－mz－0 | $0-3 y$ m－0［sic］ | 0－3ym－o－U［sic］ |
|  | $X$ is holding $Y$ |  | － 3 － 0 n－0 | －30\％m－m－l |
| － 2 －303－0－0 | $X$ is holding $Y$ | －2－303－93－0 | $0-303-0$ | $0-303-m-L$ |
| の－m（－） $03-0-0$ | $X$ is mixed up in | $0-n(-) 03-0$ | $0-n(-) 0-\bigcirc$ | $0-n(-) n-m-L$ |
|  | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { prefers } Y \\ \quad(\text { to } Z=\text { dat. }) \end{array}\right\}$ |  | $0-$ mho3 ${ }^{(6)-\bigcirc}$ | $0-$ mRo3 ${ }^{(6)-m-L}$ |
| $3-83-0-0$ | $X$ is called $Y$ | コ－¢かる－э3－0 | － $\mathrm{m}_{3} 3^{-0}$ | $0-\operatorname{mon} 3-0-\mathrm{L}$ |
| $L^{-1} R_{3}(-)_{33}-0-0$ | X has Y as a habit | ［only in the pr | esent sub－series |  |
| $0-33-0-0$ | $X$ is wearing $Y$ | $0-3^{\text {a－03－〕 }}$ | $0^{-03} 0$ | 0－33－0－し |
|  | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { is written } \\ I \text { have } X \text { written } \\ X \text { is written on } Y \end{array}\right\}$ | $0-60^{\text {m－}}{ }^{3}-0$ | 0－80 | 0－Bom－m－l |
| －－buy | $\left.\begin{array}{l} X \text { is wearing } Y \\ \text { (headgear) } \end{array}\right\}$ | －－byym－98－0 | 0－bymos | 0－bym－m－l |
|  | $\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { X lies } \\ \left.\begin{array}{l}\text { I have X lying } \\ \text { X lies on me } \\ \text { there is no } \\ \text { ect }\end{array}\right\}, ~(\$) ~\end{array}\right\}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0-\varrho-\rho_{B-〕}^{0-〕} \end{aligned}$ |  |  |

## Dialogue 3

 breakfast

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  <br>  <br>  дмдзŋъдл． |
|  |  |
|  |  дмдз๐రీงбృの． |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |

## Vocabulary

| Bumozn | pillow | วงวกбวว | right away |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| リ®ठ0＠ | immediately |  | you will fall asleep |
| зงдm－z－2－m3nd－วz－ง | you will awake |  | you take |
| ๑๐пว） | same | Luاరீyるmm | hotel |
| －－7y＠－ง8－ก（80－） | you come across $X$ | Bologmoe | properly |
|  | warm heartedly |  | you serve $X$ |
| дu＠n土бue | with appetite |  | you tuck into $X$ |
| ขวzym | Ushguli | பzubjon | Svaneti（a） |
|  | you travel |  | without［verb］ing |


|  | you view $X$ |  | as far as |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | acquaintance |  | what else is there for it？ |
| －¢ァпмо | place |  | you set out（on the road） |
| 的式 | Rach＇a | zu3mnon | via |

## Proverb


What you eat depends on what you own

| VOCABULARY |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 子u－১ | eating |  | possession（s） |
| －${ }^{\circ}$ | on | 3－3ొ＠－○－১ | $X$ depends on $Y$ |

## Conundrum








You have one mouth but two ears；for what purpose？ Work it out for yourself：hear a lot，blather a little．
You have one mouth，but two eyes；why？For the reason that you should test something twice and say it once．
You have one mouth but two hands；why？For the reason that you should work a lot and eat a little．

VOCABULARY

| 30 的 | mouth | groon | one |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & 3-\nu-f(3-L) \\ & \quad(z-0-f 6-9 B-د) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）have $X$ | yeyo | ear |
| 30 | whereas | mino | two |
| molonzol | for what（purpose） | วృб－30 | you－yourself |
|  | you（will）realise $X$ |  | much |
|  | you（will）hear $X$ | 3m0 | little |
|  | you（will）talk nonsensically | пзјum | eye |
| ruogma | why | ๑апбma мпma | for the purpose that |
| mensorn | twice |  | you（will）test $X$ |


| gronboge | once |  | you (will) say/said $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| bomo | hand | aymo-m3 ( $0-3-0^{3}$ ) | you (will) work |
| 308 | you (will) eat $X$ |  |  |

## Prose text























 bolffinsozoo.





| VOCABULARY |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \％mzo | some，a few | 20 Lubjos | about |
| дృмைை | 20th |  | century |
| $\mathrm{Ub}_{3}$ | other | aroz［0］mo | several |
|  | important | งмдмควб๐ | discovery |
| －пub jemoce | together with（＋dat．） | いठัmmo | history |
| 2－con－bum | you enter |  | as |
| dumomer | in truth | Lumg［0］mo | amazing |
| змбпуर́n | intelligent | аงб才งбง | machine |
| y＠っ＠） | very great |  | revolution |
| （am－）$u-\mathrm{b}$ ¢（－）$)^{\text {¢ }}$ | you（will）cause $X$ |  | contemporary |
|  | civilisation | Lodyo＜mm | world |
| nub＠unubmbnn | gradually | $0^{\text {bmajorgou }}$ | life |
| зงбуумоुวмп | indivisible | 5upomo | part |
| （zu－） $\mathrm{m}_{\text {c－}}$ | you（will）become | Аде⿰бье | to that extent |
| дплme | whole |  | civilised |
| almogmom | world |  | unimaginable |
| zumga | without（＋gen．） | dornoouen | basic |
| Luby | type，face |  | you（will）exist |
| งбummznyón | analogue（adj．） |  | digital |
|  | you（will）use $X$ |  | electrical |
| ung6umo | signal | Romoszu－zuamenozz | （switch）on－（switch） off |
|  | form | Lotmzuemjo | society |
| ${ }^{\text {bogeo }}$ | hand |  | calculator |
| 7330060 | clever |  | apparatus，device |
|  | for typing | Lumberbo | for washing |
|  | spread（ing） | （8u－） 3 － $3^{\text {b－mo－n }}$ | you（will）become acquainted with $X$ |
| תว－e3－38－0 | $X$ consists of $Y$ $(=\text { gen. }+ \text {-зงб) }$ | donoz［0］ mo | main |
| 3＇mmoramono | processor |  | you（will）fulfil $X$ |
| 3indubjou | command |  | arithmetic |
|  | logical | mugmogno | operation |
| әృбивэмm | stored | дмбьъэдп | datum |
| aublimzinmo | memory | งб（v） | or |
| －6оुminaugno | information | ºglububo $^{\text {a }}$ | for storing |
| －＠zのмп | place |  зงдмииузงбп | for entering and retrieving |
| 6るก㐌 | frequent |  | you enter $X$ |
|  | printing |  | keyboard |
| зидмуэбјठи | using | ＠olsoon | diskette |
| julodo | cassette | Lozajumjo | means |
| зงдmbuyzuбп | to be retrieved | zuam－＠n－bum | you come out |


| วउ＇mun | screen |  | printer |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Lon＠u60\％ | from where | $\mathrm{y}_{\text {g－o－dm－}}$ | $X$ is possible |
| OัJuరn | text |  | copying |
| lujmayбпjuzom | for communication |  | you（will）give $X$ to $Y$ |
|  | you（will）converse with $X$ |  | $X$ contains $Y$ |
| am＠əд | modem |  | you connect $X$ |
|  | telephone（adj．） | $b_{0} \%^{\circ}$ | line |
| flomo | network |  | power |
| しnlpinoous | speed | \％mas | size |
| 万jludmjormmou | capability | anty＠znon | according to （＋gen．） |
| yanozinglo | really main | 30லீjamóno | category |
| （80－／＠u－） 0 －y－moz－○ | you are（will be） split（table） |  | ordinary，usual |
| узวщь（－১－） | all |  | you（will）see $X$ |

## Exercises

1 Write out the paradigms of the three pairs：

| X has me（etc．） | X will have me（etc．） |
| :--- | :--- |
| X loves me（etc．） | I（etc．）fell in love with X |
| I（etc．）want X | X felt a desire for me（etc．） |

2 Fill in the gaps and translate：
（a） $3^{n}-\quad$ d＿mb＿r $\boldsymbol{m}_{-}$－6？



（e）$y^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{6}_{-}-\mathrm{o}_{-} 3^{\circ}$ ffy $y 9^{\mathrm{b}}----39^{6}$ ！
（f） $3-3-$ 向 $---0-3^{2}-$ 6 $-\delta_{-}-39^{6}$
（g）$\delta_{-3}-3-\delta_{-}-0-$（33－○－？

3 Put the following present indicative verb forms into the future indicative， reversing the roles of the subject and object in the process after the pattern of：
 the examples，two future forms will be necessary for a complete answer：







（h）（2งl ols／obo6o）ybณ๐

4 Transpose the following present indicative verb forms into their aorist subjunctive equivalents, as would be necessary after the words 3 m $\quad$ g@o it is not necessary:




(c) $38^{m b o o o n ~}\left(\circ \frac{\left.1 z j^{6}\right)}{}\right.$




5 Transpose the following aorist indicative verb forms into their present indicative equivalents:









6 What are the meanings of these verb forms?

(e) $98^{m b s o n}$
(b) $30 y^{m} \times g^{\partial \circ}$



(d) 830 blmagbormo
(h) $83^{\circ}$ @ $33^{\text {b }}$

7 Translate into English:



 уоз














8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) What are you holding in your hand? Show me! I'm holding nothing. In that case what have you got in your pocket? Today I have five lari, but tomorrow I'll have ten.
(b) Why is Ek'a wearing the same dress today she wore yesterday? Can't she put on something new? She should (be) wear(ing) her new dress for our guests.
(c) My head has started to ache - I must lie down. You can't help me, can you? Come on, I'll help you.
(d) We have to get off [preverb = Bo-] here, let us off, let us off! Why are you in a hurry? Because it's possible we'll be late at the station, where we must meet someone.
(e) Let's go into the house where they have a fire burning. There's a very big fire burning in that one. It's not possible that the house will catch fire, is it? I'm afraid.
(f) What do you desire, gentlemen? We want you to let us into this school. I'm sorry, I am unable to let in here anyone I do not know.
(g) Why did you take off your coat? It's cold here in the cinema. I found it hot when we came in. If I start to feel cold, I'll put it on again. Don't catch cold, otherwise your mother will have a fit [= go crazy]!
(h) Are you hungry? What will you have to eat? Should I prepare you a sandwich? Sit down and let's talk. Don't go to any trouble. If I get hungry, I'll tell you.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERBAL PRACTICE

9 In the following eight examples eleven verbs have been omitted. The verbs are presented below, in the wrong order. Select the appropriate verb for each of the vacant slots:



```
3.303b>_\mp@code{mmo}
```





```
3.9๙о [air]
```







## Lesson 14

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation of the remaining verb forms of Series I (imperfect indicative, present subjunctive, conditional, future subjunctive)
- Producing expressions of the type If $X$ were to (be) [verb](ing), $Y$ would [verb]
- Issuing instructions using verbs without an aorist indicative
- Producing expressions of the type $X$ ought to be [verb]ing
- Expressing the intention of carrying out an action in the future
- Other contexts in which the aorist subjunctive is found


## Dialogue 1

A teacher asks a pupil about a typical day in his life














## Vocabulary

|  | normal | 8uбるu3mmbuøn | during（＋gen．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | never | aylozu | music |
| ＠motnon | during the day |  | bicycle |
| ®o\％s | previous | ＠๐зьм刀る。 | homework， instruction |
| Lug［0］6n | subject | 3M0Lnjugno | classical |
| 3－u－bm－e－u（－m） | it was（polite） | ymzjemazol | always |
| －－Lojucomes | you make $X$ | ৪uдmg＠ | exam |
| （＠－－） | your own | умзлмщеை | everyday |
|  | at midday | ubmem（－oub） | near（to $X$ ） |
| lugaum＠ | satisfactorily， quite | งbmmb［0］me | close person |
|  | you（pl．）gather | lumudmon งल心しゃ | of an evening nowhere |
| －－¢om－mb－o（8u－） | you amuse yourself |  | at weekends |
| วuzummznon | on Saturdays | 8u3390nomo | lesson |
| 的うる | rugby | L3minoro | sport |
| 330ヶ́umornon | on Sundays | gmono Lnరోyzom | in a word |
| º＠utngon | comparatively | ᄂরпуmymozomo | perfect |
| のvj¢＠03 | albeit |  | spoilt |

## Dialogue 2

Nino asks an acquaintance, Lali, what she would do if [she were] offered Nino's job

| 6о6m: |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| momo: |  |
| 6обm: |  <br>  |
| momo: |  |
| 6обm: |  <br>  <br>  |
| momo: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| 6o6m: |  <br>  $\mathrm{O}_{3} 3^{\mathrm{l}}$. |
| momo: |  <br>  <br>  |
| Бобм: <br> momo: |  <br>  <br>  |
| бобм: <br> momo: |  <br>  <br>  |
| 6o6m: |  <br>  |
| momo: <br> бобм: <br> momo: |  <br>  <br>  |
| 6obm: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |

## Vocabulary

| nงбuд＠⿰дmठu | post | －－（3－m＠－9（－ヵ）！ | know it！ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | really，truly |  | unemployed |
| L－mosus－mb | you offer $X$ to $Y$ | bjemozoln | wage，salary |
|  |  | 9－3norb－9 - －／3－ | you ask $X(Y) \rightarrow$ |
| aygumbu | work | jnob－－3 $\rightarrow$ future | you will ask $X(Y)$ |
|  | of this type |  |  |
| demojén | strongly | の／3－znomb－－3 |  |
|  | you（will） | man | war |
| $\mathrm{s}^{\text {－－}}$ | oppose X | numumo | weapon |
| リ－23－03（zuam－） | you produce $X$ |  | you adapt yourself |
| 39¢0） | never（potential） |  | to $X$ |
| UndEjmo | difficulty |  | principle |
|  | you（will） |  | in particular |
|  | support <br> yourself |  |  |
| ba［s］mo | sword | 8ツめの［0］6\％ | plough |
| yo\％\％m | senseless | －bono | such as this |
|  | pound | nobbo | sum |
| งరง | well then， come on | Lnరmármos | evil |
| augbuncon | of that（by you） type | Ln5＠ono | conscience |
| 9303 | suddenly |  | it develops for $X$ |
| ¢mal | even if |  | success |
|  | experiment | $3^{\text {buen }}$ | clear，evident |
|  | kind hearted | Lotumgoz mm | advantageous |

## Grammar

## Formation of the imperfect indicative，present subjunctive，conditional and future subjunctive

The imperfect indicative is used to refer to ongoing or repeated actions in the past and corresponds in meaning to English expressions such as：I was reading／used to read，you were singing／used to sing，we were afraid，they looked so well，etc．It is formed according to the patterns given below，where no special attention will be paid to the marking of the indirect object，since these are indicated within each sort of verb according to the general prin－ ciples already explained．

## Transitive verbs

The universal marker is the suffix－＠－．This is added directly to the root of the root verbs and to the thematic suffix of other transitives．This element is then followed by the vowel $-\cap$ when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person；a 3rd person singular subject selects the ending－$\circlearrowright$ ，while the 3rd person plural takes $-\quad$ бјб．Any version vowel found in the present indicative will be carried over， and there will be no preverb（unless one is dealing with one of those relatively rare cases when a preverb is used even in the present indicative）．This produces the following patterns．

## Root verbs

| ＠－ก | I was writing（ $X$ ） | 3－Fom－＠－の | X） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Fom－＠－0 | you were writing（ $X$ | BJom－＠on－m | you（pl．）were writing |
|  | $X$ was writing（Y） | 「フの－＠－6ృ6 | they were writing（ $X$ ） |

## Thematic suffix－eb



## Thematic suffix－av



## Thematic suffix－i

```
3-(0-)}\mp@subsup{3}{0}{%0}\mp@subsup{3}{}{6-0-c-0}\quadI (etc.) was sending X
3-7M-0-@-0 I (etc.) was cutting X
```


## Thematic suffix－ob

| 3－43－mb－e－ก | $I$（etc．）was ruining $X$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 3－土－の8－mठ－¢－ก | $I$（etc．）was heating $X$ |

## Thematic suffix－am

$3^{-ก-ふ ૩-ง \partial-œ-ก \quad I ~(e t c .) ~ w a s ~ d o n n i n g ~} X$

## Medial verbs

The same procedure is followed for the medials as for the transitives except that，as noted at the time，the $n$－ending of medials such as סonm－n you cry is not the same as the thematic suffix．And so medials of this type do not add
－＠after this－๐ but rather replace it by－м＠and then add on the same endings as those just illustrated．Any root－final－3（as in yn3－o you shriek）disappears before the－m－of the imperfect＇s suffix，e．g．：

|  | I was crying | 3－yn－m＠－n | I was shrieking |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you were crying | yn－m＠－の | you were shrieking |
| Oヵn－m＠－১ | $X$ was crying | yn－m＠－১ | $X$ was shrieking |
| 3－ర゙nm－m＠－n－の | we were crying | 3－yn－m＠－n－on | we were shrieking |
|  | you（pl．）were crying | yn－m＠－n－m | you（pl．）were shrieking |
| ठのヘ毎－м＠－б〕б | they were crying | уп－м＠－бјб | they were shrieking |

The same applies to the imperfect indicative of the verb know（e．g． $3^{-n-0} 0^{-0}$ I know $X \rightarrow 3^{\text {－o－（－ल＠－っ I knew } X \text { ，etc．）．}}$



## Intransitive verbs

All three sub－types of intransitives（prefixal，suffixal，markerless）behave alike with regard to their formation of the imperfect indicative．And indeed the pattern is exactly the same as that of the medials in $-n$－the $n$－vowel found in the present indicative when the subject is 1 st or 2 nd person is replaced by - －＠，to which the same endings already learned are suffixed．Any root－final -3 is dropped，e．g．：

| $3^{-0-33<-)^{8-m @-の}}$ | $I$（etc．）was being killed |
| :---: | :---: |
| $3-9-b(-) ŋ$－m＠－の | $I$（etc．）was attacking $X$ （cf．$\left.\jmath^{-し(-)}\right)_{03}$－ก you attack $X$ ） |
|  | $I$（etc．）was choking |
|  | I（etc．）was blushing |
| 3 －のठ－0 ${ }^{\text {－m－m－0 }}$ | $I$（etc．）was getting warm |

The verb of motion also follows this pattern；it is illustrated with the preverb $\partial_{m-}$ ，which gives the form the meaning come：

| дm－3－¢п－m＠－п | I was coming | 9m－3－en－m¢－0－m | we were |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дм－¢п－м＠－п | you were |  | you（pl．）were |
| dm－¢о－м＠－৩ | X was | 2m－¢n－m＠－6jб | they were． |

## Indirect verbs

As explained in Lesson 13，indirect verbs differ as to whether their past tense is a formal aorist or imperfect indicative．The relevant forms are now given for those roots with the latter type of past tense．It will be seen below that （with one exception）verbs whose 3rd person singular subject form in the present indicative ends in $-0-৩,-\Omega-\downarrow$ or just $-৩$ employ－m＠－in their imperfects，
while those ending in－－preceded by a consonant use－＠－．Here are some subject－object combinations for the verb love：

| а－п－y30tm－＠－১ | I loved $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| a－п－y30ヶm－＠－ก | I loved you |
|  | they loved $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| $3- \pm-y 30$ ¢n－＠－0 | $X$（sing．／pl．）loved me |
| 3－0－y30㐌－＠－ก－п | you（pl．）loved me／you（pl．）loved us／you loved us |

Compare the above with parallels for the root want：

| д－п－6ৎ－м＠－৩ | $I$ wanted $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| д－п－б＠－м＠－○ | $I$ wanted you |
| リ－6＠－м＠－১－の | they wanted $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－ツ－6＠－m＠－ก | $X$（sing．pl．）wanted me |
| 3－n－6＠－m＠－ก－п | you（pl．）wanted me／you（pl．）wanted us／you wanted us |

 where，in addition to a change to the root，the pre－radical structure also alters：













## Stative verbs

As we saw in the previous lesson，statives generally have a formal aorist as their past tense．However，$\partial-\beta_{3}(-)_{03-0-ง} I$ have $X$ as a habit has the imper－

 the non－stative equivalent $0-\delta y-m \delta-\Delta$ ，also used in the sense of apparently，it would appear so，with its aorist＠১－১－ठу－м）．

The present subjunctive，to which it is difficult to assign a meaning inde－ pendent of the context in which it is used，is simple to produce．Take the imperfect indicative and keep the verb form constant up to and including the component $-(\mathrm{m}) @$ ．To this add the subjunctive vowel $-\jmath$ ，which is retained in all cases except when the 3rd person plural marker－$\sqsubset \jmath 6$ is employed．The 3 rd person singular ending is - ，e．g．：

| write（ $X$ ） | blush | cry | love（ $X$ ） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－90㐌－＠－0 |  | 3－8の豕－m＠－〕 |  |
| 60か－＠－0 | Frome－＠－〕る－m＠－〕 | ठヵの－m＠－つ | $3-0-y^{2} \times$ m－＠－コ－し |
| Bon－＠o－u |  | Oпn－m＠－ว－し |  |
|  |  | 3－ర゙nの－m＠－0－の | 33－0－y300－以－0－し |
| Bo 0 －＠－コ－の |  |  |  |
| Bom－＠－6\％ |  | O゙пm－м＠－буб |  |

Since there is uniformity of formation，only some of the subject－object combin－ ations that might cause difficulties for the indirect verbs are illustrated here． The same five combinations are repeated for the present subjunctive of the verbs love and want as were given for the imperfect indicative，though the reader should note how two of the forms may now convey an extra pairing （3rd person marker -l dropping before the pluraliser $-\infty$ ）：


```
\partial-п-y%um-@-0 that I love you
ソ-y%\mp@code{m-@-う-\infty that they love X (sing./pl.)/that X (sing./pl.) love you (pl.)}
3-リ-y३uగn-@-0 that X (sing./pl.) love me
8-\Omega-y%\mp@code{n-@-0-の that you (pl.) love me/you (pl.) love us/you love us/you (pl.)}
    love X (sing./pl.)
```

Compare the above with parallels for the root want：

| д－п－бৎ－м＠－э－し | that I want $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| д－п－6＠－м＠－ว | that I want you |
| ข－6＠－м＠－9－の | that they want $X$（sing．／pl．）／that $X$（sing．／pl．）want you（pl．） |
| 3－v－6＠－m＠－0 | that $X$（sing．／pl．）want me |
| $3^{-n-6}$＠－m＠－つ－の | that you（pl．）want me／you（pl．）want us／you want us／ you（pl．）want $X$（sing．／pl．） |

The conditional is the equivalent to English $X$ would ．．．／would have ．． ed；it is also used with the particle $\mathrm{bmm}_{\mathrm{m} \partial \jmath}$ as a rule to mark a habitual activity
 indeed takes its Georgian name（bммдддмठппп）from this particle．It is formed from the future indicative in exactly the same way as the imperfect indica－ tive is formed from the present indicative－transitives and medials add－œ＋ endings to the thematic suffix（almost without exception－$\jmath^{8}$ for the medials， of course），whilst intransitives，indirect verbs and statives add－m＠＋endings to their thematic suffix（usually $-\jmath^{8}$ ，sometimes -mb ，sometimes -03 ，which last loses its－3）．Examples：

```
@u-3-汭m-@-○ I would write/have written (X)
@๐-3-%马(-)„б-@-○ I would (have) spread X out
8u-3-b(-)03-@-0 I would tear/have torn X
\partialm-3-3ल-১3-@-n I would kill/have killed X
80-3-(u-)}\mp@subsup{\Omega}{0~3}{3}6-0-@-0 I I would send/have sent X
```

|  | I would cry／have cried |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | I would shriek／have shrieked |
|  | $I$ would learn／have learnt X |
|  | $I$ would feel／have felt $X$ |
| дм－3－ก－33¢－うる－m＠－ก | I would be／have been killed |
|  | $I$ would attack／have attacked $X$ |
| 8－－3－fొome－＠－98－m＠－○ | $I$ would blush／have blushed |
|  | I would love／have loved $X$ |
|  | $I$ would havelhave had（animate）$X$ |
|  | $I$ would have／have had（inanimate）$X$ |
|  | $I$ would want／have wanted $X$ |
|  | $I$ would know／have known $X$ |
|  | $X$ would be／have been suspended（for／on Y） |

The only difficulties are that the verbs $0-\delta y_{3}-0$ you will say $X$ and $0^{-ठ y_{3}-ก}$ you will say $X$ to $Y$ do not contain the thematic suffix -0 ，as indeed was noted earlier，and so their conditionals are $\cap$－ठy－м＠－○ you would say／have said $X$ and $\jmath-\delta y$－м＠－๐ you would say／have said $X$ to $Y$ ．The verb of motion has the following conjugation for its conditional，again illustrated with preverb $\partial_{m}$－：

| $\partial m-\left[3-13^{\text {nem－m＠－の }}\right.$ | I would（have）come |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\partial m-6-3$ ¢＠－m＠－ก | you would． |
| дм－зヵや－м＠－৩ | $X$ would ．． |
| $\partial m-\left[3^{-}\right]_{30}$ ¢－m＠－n－の | we would． |
| дm－b－3п＠－м＠－ก－п | you（pl．）would ．． |
| дм－зп＠－м＠－6јб | they would |

The future subjunctive is formed from the conditional in exactly the same way as the present subjunctive is formed from the imperfect indicative．And so，since it is slightly anomalous by virtue of the presence of the 2 nd person subject marker $-b-$ ，the only example to be given is that of the verb of motion －assume that all six forms are preceded by $\operatorname{mo}(\partial)$ if：

| $\partial m-[3-]_{3}$ ¢＠－m＠－つ | if I were to come |
| :---: | :---: |
| am－b－3п＠－m＠－0 | if you were to ．．． |
| дm－зпе－м＠－э－し | if $X$ were to |
| $\partial m-[3-]_{3}$ ¢－m＠－л－の | if we were to ．．． |
|  | if you（pl．）were to |
| дм－3пや－м＠－бృб | if they were to ． |

After a moment＇s thought，readers will realise that where the future indica－ tive differs from the present indicative solely by the addition of a preverb （i．e．the majority of transitive and intransitive verbs），the same difference distinguishes（a）the conditional from the imperfect indicative and（b）the future subjunctive from the present subjunctive．This does not apply to medial， indirect and（marginally）stative verbs，whose future sub－series differ from
their respective present sub－series more radically．Suppletive transitive and intransitive verbs also differ more radically but do，of course，behave according to the above rules within each sub－series－cf．the following pairs：

| $\mathrm{bg} 口-\bigcirc 3$ | you see $X$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| bg＠－－3－＠－ก | you were seeing $X$ |
| $\mathrm{bg@o}^{\text {－}}$－e－ | that you be seeing $X$ |
| 6．b－د3 | you will see $X$ |
| 5ub－u3－＠－ก <br>  | you would（have）see（n）$X$ （if）you were to see $X$ |

## Expressions of the type If $X$ were to（be）［verb］（ing）， $Y$ would［verb］

In Lesson 9 we learnt how to form factual conditions relating to the present （If you are（at this moment）writing a letter ．．．）and future（If you write the letter（at some future time））．Let us now examine the formation of more remote，less factual conditions．

The conditional marker is $\operatorname{mm}(\partial) i f$ ，which does not like to stand as the first word in its clause．The verb stands in either the present subjunctive，if reference is to the present time，or future subjunctive，if reference is to some point in the future．For those verbs（such as the statives and to be）that do not possess a present subjunctive the corresponding aorist subjunctive is used instead．The verb in the other clause in both cases stands in the conditional， e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { It would be good, if you were now preparing tomorrow's (b子৩mobromo) lesson }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If you were not to prepare tomorrow's lesson on time, you could not go to the } \\
& \text { cinema this evening }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If they were bringing our food, they would already be on the way }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If they were to bring our food, we would give them the money }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { This lad would be happy, if his sister were cleaning his shoes for him }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If you were to clean my shoes, I would be happy }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If it were raining, the streets would be wet }\left(\left\llcorner_{З ว \mathrm{~m}}\right)\right.
\end{aligned}
$$



```
If it were to rain tomorrow, the streets would get wet ((@৩-)
```



```
If I were in your place, I would be unable to put up with ((\partialm-)०-\infty\partial(-)}\mp@subsup{\rho}{0}{}\sigma
such behaviour
```



```
If the child were asleep, his mother would already be down ({303\capo)
```



```
If I knew the answer to that question, I would already be a millionaire
```




```
If I were to learn the answer to that question, I would certainly tell you,
and you too would know it
```



```
If I were not so ashamed, I would go myself
```


## Constructing imperatives from verbs without an aorist indicative

Since the imperative is identical to the 2 nd person subject forms of the aorist indicative（apart from the verb of motion），if a verb lacks Series II forms， the chosen method of construction is to employ 2nd person subject forms of the present subjunctive．In practice，there are only two verbs for which this is going to be important．The first is the verb know：


```
You are in a bad situation (д@⿰亻д)<ngmos) - know it/you should know!
```



```
Know that, if you don't give this up ((\partialm-)}\mp@subsup{\partial}{}{-}\mp@subsup{\partial}{3}{}-\mp@subsup{\rho}{}{3-\circ})\mathrm{ , you'll find yourself
(lit. fall down into) in a bad situation
```

The other verb is the one we learnt in Lesson 1 in such expressions as：ゥmgmen
 preverb，this root normally appears not just in a Series II form but in the form of a polite imperative equivalent for the verb of motion or the verb sit down：

|  | ＝ |  | Sit down！ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | дм－＠n－п！ | Come（in）！ |
|  | ＝ | дの－¢๐－п－п！ | After you！（＝Go）！ |

However，as an equivalent to be it exists only in the present sub－series，and
 required，it is the present subjunctive of this root that is used to give дumzue


## Constructing expressions of the type $X$ ought to be [verb]ing

In Lesson 12 we saw how expressions of obligation relating to the future were produced by using the aorist subjunctive immediately preceded by the invariant particle $ฑ 6$ ¢๐. Parallel expressions relating to the present are produced by associating the same invariant particle with the present subjunctive; if the relevant verb has no present subjunctive, the aorist subjunctive is used instead:


```
Father should be painting the house, but he is ill
```



```
Why are you lying there? You should be preparing tomorrow's lesson!
```



```
What are you doing? You should not be doing that!
```



```
Mother has to stay lying in bed a long time
```



```
The child shouldn't be crying like that
```



```
I should be at work (bualubvimo) already!
```


## Expressions of purpose relating to the future

Expressions of the type I am going to the market in order (/so) that I may (/in order tolto) buy some fruit are rendered in Georgian by coupling mm( m ) (alternatively (moms) at the start of the clause with the aorist subjunctive of the verb stating the purpose, e.g.:


```
I am going to the market ( (u)%[v]mo) to buy fruit (b\Omegamo)
```



```
I am sitting these exams in order that it may be possible for me to work
as a teacher
```



```
What do you want? I want you to let me in in order that I may interview
(lit. take it from) your boss
```




```
into ((\partialm-)}\-\boldsymbol{\nablay-mठ-0) university
```



```
Raise ((৩-)山-F(-)
begin
```


## Some other verbs that take the aorist subjunctive


 it is possible, उ@(-)пм-mठ you try may all be construed with a clause containing the aorist subjunctive, referring, as they do, to actions that may or may not take place in the future $-\operatorname{rom}(\partial)$ is optional, e.g.:


```
In this rain it is better we do not go out
```



```
Isn't it better you prepare your lesson in time?
```



```
дпупœо Бьynбп
Do you prefer we stay here or return home? Neither the one nor the other-
I prefer you buy me an ice cream
```



```
The president probably prefers that the congress break up ((@u-) \()_{\left.-\eta_{\infty}-\jmath^{3-\lrcorner}\right) ~}^{\text {) }}\)
```




```
What do you advise us, sir? I advise you not to become stubborn
```




```
Good lord, it's already half past eleven! I must rush
```



```
It's necessary a child go to bed on time and sleep for nine hours
```



```
It's entirely possible that you will feel ashamed, but you must still go
```



```
It's possible I may not be able to fulfil what I promised you
```



```
Giorgi will try to behave well
```



```
Try (and see to it) that lunch be ready on time
```

Note also the two words (which were verb forms in origin) that similarly govern the aorist subjunctive, but that are best translated simply as perhaps,



## Dialogue 3

Two Georgian students, a philologist and a physicist, discuss the growing foreign interest in Mingrelian

| ø๐ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| бомммммяо: |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  пмд <br>  |
| go\%пzmbo: |  <br>  |
| бпеммммдо: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  jomorymb ? ? |
| домпмммдо: |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  $3^{\text {osdmymon! }}$ |















## Vocabulary

| Luajzingme | Mingrelia |  | you become |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Mingrelian（thing） | （＠）－） | interested in |
|  | person） | amusbegmbu | population |
| ¢ुumom | wide | หชワชூ | group |
|  | you will set out |  | you agree with $X$ |
|  | （non－）linguist |  | you master $X$ |
| ＠っ＠っ－っちゃ | mother tongue |  | you（will） |
|  | one of |  | represent $X$ |
| зпलm／＠numgłón | dialect | m－inh（－）93 | you（will）give $X$ as advice to $Y$ |
|  | you extend $X$ | 33mazo－dojbu | research |
| ovornay | apparently |  | you（will）share $X$ |
| a̧cumo | mistaken |  | attitude，view |
|  | according to which |  | independent |
|  |  |  |  |
| －8＠っ－yb＠ | nonsense | 300m30 | separate |
|  | writing |  | you（will）make a mistake |
|  | for example $=$ e．g． <br> history |  | it is defined，delimited |
| \％ృ20n6303 | accident | ไֹnozor | script |
| Əコ6－ก（コ） | you create $X$ | um | letter，element |
| ${ }^{3} \mathrm{~g}$ 的 | sound |  | you exist |
| umuznouno | no |  | equally |
|  | factor | aए口＠umの | rich |
| moz－mozoto | each its own | nuzoligivengo | peculiarity |
|  | astonishing | ᄂ）3＠$^{\text {¢ }}$ | sad |


| yuamuza | countless | のзงмがっб | before the eye |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\partial_{\text {（3）＠}}$ | expert | $33^{\text {nomol }}$ | every other week |
|  |  | дuдmgmzjornm |  |
| Ligm umbu | at least |  | power and strength |
|  | you（will）utilise $X$ | $9^{\text {бmbimiza }}$ | linguistic |
| una＠n＠⿺尢丶万力 | richness |  | you（will）preserve $X$ |
|  | variety | งдدy－m3（0－－〕る） | you（will）boast of $X$ （inst．） |
| Loznomba | question，problem |  | widespread |
| amuobingo | opinion，view |  | right |
|  | awarding | дృ＠っz৩¢ | as a result |
|  | demand |  | it is split／splits up |
| bnozuon | danger |  | you threaten $Y$ |
| ᄂЈววm3mm | homeland | $\begin{aligned} & 0-8 \text { m d }_{3}-0 \\ & \quad\left(\jmath-b \text { mdmem- } 0^{3-0}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）fight $X$ |
| 3olugbo | answer |  | short |
|  | simple |  | necessary |
| yaroninguso | minority | ＠ujumizo | losing，loss |
|  | you（will）have care | дмдоз $[\mathrm{c}]_{\mathrm{mo}}$ | future |
|  | you（will）safeguard X | ＠ubautingo | help |
| э－дu¢¢－0 | you owe gratitude to $X$ for $Y$ | しゃfзวубm＠ | worldwide |
| Lubymu 0 －b30\％（am | you（will）earn yours | lf a good name |  |

## Proverb


What is is wet does not fear the rain
VOCABULARY

| ᄂзコео | wet | F3odu | rain |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you fear $X$（gen．） |  |  |

## Prose text

Section of an obituary for Andria Balanchivadze，brother of Giorgi（aka Georges Balanchine），from＇Literary Georgia＇（8 May 1992）
sbœomos bums




























## VOCABULARY

| ju円のymo | Georgia | aylonjumýno | musical |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | art | Lofunnozemm | Georgia |
|  | cultural | $3^{\text {bmazajobo }}$ | life |
| yadnajun | really heavy | ＠ubujuman | loss |
| 3u6－п－उए－○ | you（will）suffer $X$ | f［o］me | year |
| zum＠u－n－33ल－98－n | you will pass away | ＠＠っ | great |
| Lu＇\％mzu＠m | social | дบмъงヲ๐ | activist |
|  | remarkable | 30＠uzmzo | pedagogue |
|  | educator | azan | self |
| ybosoln | old，venerable | －${ }^{\text {dogn }}$ | age |
|  | tirelessly |  | you（will）toil |
| 33m0300 | yet again | arzoun | own |
| 330mo | imprint，footmark |  | you（will）leave （mark）$X$ on $Y$ |
|  | native | Lugnogmo | spiritual |


|  | culture | 2ృర゙ロ＠ | especially |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | legacy |  | genre－related |
|  | many－sided |  | creativity |
| ১ino jmono | not one | Lubjmbu | type |
| 330 ¢¢0 | side，flank |  | you will shun，skirt around $X$ |
| узэмзиб | everywhere | јмzzomo | shining |
| unoyz | word | （） | you（will）stamp $X$ |
| auginua | but |  | right from the start |
| （zuдm－）$n-330^{\infty-9} 3-0$ | $X$ is（will be）incised， engraved | yanozorglon | really main |
|  | inclination，bent | Lnaormbnymo | symphonic |
|  | concert－ |  | instrumental |
| Lubumoom | ballet－ | Luby | type，face |
| умзコмо | each |  | in each of them |
|  | you（will）fulfil $X$ |  | foundation laying |
|  | leading | кпmo | role |
|  | national | （＠u－）$n-8 \pm \varrho-0^{\text {b－n }}$ | you are（will be） born |
| зпйзコмо | first | m3jono | opera |
| －3ర゙meno | author | mpubn | family |
|  | you（will）finish $X$ | Lugiménoj3nubm | piano－ |
| ＠umino | field，area | （8ง6－）- －${ }^{\text {mad－mठ }}$ | you（will） extend $X$ |
| 4803 m | study |  | piano |
| 3u¢bmon | with the speciality |  | authority |
|  | you（will）have $X$ | вu＇йдм๐ | boundary，limit （usually pl．） |
| zuringos | outside（＋dat．／gen．） |  | you are（will be） <br> a friend |
|  | contemporaneity | auylozmun | musician |
| lugaumolo | sufficient | \％mmol | among（＋dat．） |
|  | you（will）name $X$ | $\mathrm{R}_{39} \mathrm{co}^{\text {¢ }}$ | our |
| Loujuby | century | gron－gmono | one of |
| y＠o¢ | greatest | उलд3mnoठmmen | composer |
|  | Georgian（person） | umogmono | more than one |
| numbu | generation |  | limitless |
| 2u＠mogoro | grateful | $6-\nu-m\left(0-j 6-\jmath^{3-0}\right)$ | you are（will be） |
| rimzmeñ | as | vo̧ Jofoglo | very pure，refined |
|  | personality | lubjen | name，reputation |
| blmzбo | memory |  | large wax candle used in churches |
| （8u－） $0-6000-3^{3}$ | light up |  | future |

## Exercises

1 Write out the conditional paradigm for I (etc.) would say/have said $X$, the present subjunctive for $I$ (etc.) may be singing, the imperfect indicative for $I$ (etc.) was cutting $X$, the future subjunctive for (if) $I$ (etc.) were to be, the imperfect indicative for $I$ (etc.) used to trust $X$, and the future subjunctive for (if) I (etc.) were to have (animate) $X$.

2 Fill in the gaps and translate:






(g) $\mathrm{o}_{-} \mathrm{b}-8^{m}-\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{g}}--93^{\mathrm{om}}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{o}$

3 Put the following present indicative verbs into the equivalent present subjunctive forms:
(a) $33^{\circ} \mathrm{f}\left(3^{\mathrm{b}}\right)$
(e) $39^{8 \text { m }}$ d $3^{\circ}$

(f) $3^{b}{ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{m}$
(c) $33(\mathrm{~s}) 3^{\text {b }}{ }^{3} 36 \circ ง 6$
(g) до $_{3} 3^{\circ} \mathfrak{6}$
(d) $3^{\circ} 3^{\circ \infty}$
(h) $\mathrm{bf} 3 \mathrm{3} 3^{\circ} \mathrm{om}$

4 Put the following conditional verb forms into their equivalent present indicative forms:
(a) Bıbдпழещо
(e) $33008 y m @ o m$



(g) $\circ 9 \mathrm{~m}(3) 9^{\text {b }}$

(h) oontige

5 Transpose the following future subjunctive verb forms into their equivalent imperfect indicative forms:









6 Wrap the appropriate markers around the verbs in:








7 Translate into English:






 mducmb







8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) If you want to master Georgian, I advise you to go to Georgia.
(b) If his mother were to hit him, the lad would start crying.
(c) When I was twelve years old, I used to go to school at 8.15 and studied many subjects.
(d) I should be beginning work, but it is late, and so I prefer to begin tomorrow. Now let's dance!
(e) With what were they threatening you? They weren't threatening me - they just did not like my behaviour.
(f) Why would a foreigner become interested in Mingrelia and the Mingrelian language? God knows, don't ask me!
(g) Perhaps you know how we can bring friends from Georgia to France.
(h) If the reason were to become clear, we would all rejoice.

## Lesson 15

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation and accompanying syntax of the perfect of transitive and medial verbs
- Saying $X$ did not [verb]
- Three colloquial uses of the perfect
- Constructing sentences containing the conjunctions although, even if
- Constructing expressions of the type $X$ is so [adjective] that [clause]
- More negative words


## Dialogue 1

Grigol wakes up and describes his dream to his wife, Tamuna
(Compare the text of the dream with Dialogue 1, Lesson 4; Dialogue 1, Lesson 6 and Dialogue 1, Lesson 8.)







 дงдодпл
















## Vocabulary

| Ln\%a[0]mon | dream |  | you see $X$ in a dream |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| nomfmb | as if | (@)-) |  |
| $3^{m} \mathrm{O}^{\mathrm{b}}[\mathrm{o}] \mathrm{mo}$ | alive, living thing |  | recipe |
| $\begin{aligned} & \circ-2 a b l m z^{\left(n-\rho^{B}\right.} \\ & (\varrho د-) \end{aligned}$ | you bring $X$ to mind | $\begin{gathered} 3-n-\text { znobl-งz-L } \\ (-\infty \text { L } \end{gathered}$ | you apparently asked (X) |
|  | loaf |  | you cut $X$ off $Y$ |
| 6ıf[J]mo | slice | (2m-) | (= dat.) |

## Dialogue 2

Givi asks his friend, Laura, for a report on the strange happenings that day in the capital of the foreign state in which these Georgians are temporarily resident!





































 f๐Зวю!

## Vocabulary

|  | it's okay, all's fine with $X$ (dat.) | いo \%n\%e[0]mo $\text { 0.f. }(=03 \text { migon }$ | loathsome so-called |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | right-winger | fmȩるymo) |  |
|  <br>  | national front | 3п@ | well (then) |
| --fy-m8 (am-) | you organise $X$ |  | against |
| дмл@[ऽ]бо | square | 30món | party |
| ajonoymo | leader |  | participant in a |
| boumigme | walking, march |  | meeting |


| 0－3ym－mb（an－） | you attract to yourself |  | building |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\bigcirc$－дymoz－3 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | you find yourself |  | you know |
|  | leader | $\mathrm{j}^{\text {B－u－の }}$ | （polite） |
| $\begin{aligned} & 0-c B(-)_{03} \\ & \left(\partial_{n}-/ \partial_{m-}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you attain $X$（dat．） |  | you will look here and there |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { amogl n-ल-うる } \\ & \text { (১am-) } \end{aligned}$ | you take out a gun | ${ }^{\text {－}}$－ $2 R 6(-)_{03}\left({ }^{\left(\partial_{0}-\right)}\right.$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you notice } X \\ & \text { (on } Y \text { ) } \end{aligned}$ |
| a 20 mal ＠ubuabuaృる。 | the twinkling of an eye | 9－2ก\％6－98（＠u－） | $\begin{gathered} \text { you aim } X \\ \text { at } Y \end{gathered}$ |
|  | absolutely all | $\begin{aligned} & \text { foиддm-z-0- } \\ & \text { @з (-) })^{6-0-0!} \end{aligned}$ | just imagine it！ |
| Lu3ymmoncmo | jail | $\mathrm{lu}_{3}$－ad（ $\mathrm{hou}^{\text {a }}$ ） | you place X in |
| のuade | although |  | you learn $X$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { mogh n- } n 3-y^{3} \\ & \left(y^{2}-\right) \end{aligned}$ | you restrain yourself |  | you show $X$ out |
|  | delegation | ambioz［9］mo | adviser |
|  | murderer | －－Lubjer－ob（¢）－） | you name $X$ |
| 3anón | hero | men＠j6\％ | medal |
| 6กข6－ง3（＠u－） | you appoint $X$ | дмдщэзбм | next |
| う以ho | ambassador | bug的＊ | UNO |
| －－33006－93（＠u－） | you delay $X$ | дงдmlamu | appearance |
| －－byzm－98－0 | you（will）joke with $X$ |  | no longer anything |
| a－mosos（zu－） | you surprise $X$ |  | injustice |
| しээช（－）93－し | it reigns | дuœемви <br>  | Thank God！ |

## Grammar

## The perfect forms of transitive and medial verbs

The perfect，regardless of verb type，is called in Georgian のvýnajmbnon，from ovina，apparently．This is because the speaker is inferring something about a past action，the truth of which he cannot verify since he was not an eye－ witness．This element of meaning is rather incongruous with a perfect that has 1st person subject，for in most cases the speaker may be presumed to know in what action he has or has not engaged，and in this circumstance the Georgian perfect is difficult to distinguish from its English counterpart（e．g．



## Series III verbs

The perfect, the pluperfect and the IIIrd subjunctive constitute Series III of the verb. In Series III the version system has no relevance whatsoever, for, although version vowels are used in all these three forms for transitive and medial verbs, they are obligatory and thus have no 'versional' meaning. Those roots that are usually accompanied by a preverb in the future sub-series and Series II are hardly ever found without them in Series III. The main problem with Series III is that transitive and medial verbs once again change the cases of their subjects and objects and consequently their subject and object marking patterns of agreement.

The subject for transitive and medial verbs throughout Series III stands in the dative case, whilst the object (if there is one) goes into the nominative. The dative nominal is signalled in the verb by means of the object agreement affixes. In the perfect these affixes are then combined (without exception) with the appropriate objective version vowel. Apart from verbs with the thematic suffixes -งる and $-\iota_{3}$, the suffixes agreeing with the nominative nominal are preceded by the vowel -ก-; a 3rd person nominal (singular or plural, which may not impose its plurality on the verb, being a direct object) is marked by -o , whilst the appropriate form of the verb to be marks a 1st or 2nd person nominative nominal. An indirect object can no longer be left in the dative, since this would involve agreement with the verb, and there is already a dative nominal (the subject) requiring this type of agreement. And so any indirect object is made dependent on the postposition -ozol for, which governs the genitive case, e.g.:


```
The pupil (2mLfosmo) apparently gavelhas given an apple to
the teacher
```

To demonstrate the lack of meaningful version within the verb in Series III let us take the (1) neutral, (2) subjective, (3) objective and (4) locative versional future indicative of the verb write, to which may be added (5) the form with indirect object not marked by version, and see how these oppositions are neutralised in Series III (specifically in the perfect):

1 Jomn @u-fonn-l fornocl The woman will write a letter $\rightarrow$ fucml @u-v-Vion-o-৩ Diomncon The woman apparently wrote a letter
 write this word on the plank ( $\left.\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{g}} \mathrm{g}[\mathrm{b}] \mathrm{mo}\right)$ of his (own) heart $\rightarrow$

The Georgian apparently wrote this word on his (own) heart

 for me



The lad apparently wrote naughty words on the toilet wall

 to me

The general conjugational pattern for perfect transitive verbs may be illus－



```
8u-z-0-\inftyjonm-jo-n-0
```



```
80-83-n-\inftyjontm-jo-n-u
8u-z-0-пyonm-98-0-৩-\infty
8u-リ-のgonm-gz-0-コ-\infty
уои...
X ...... Y
we...
you (pl.) . . .
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline  & \(I\) apparently whitened \(X\)（sing．／pl．） \\
\hline  & you．．． \\
\hline 30－ッ－ajorsu－jb－0－0 & X ．．．．．．Y \\
\hline 8u－z3－0－agentm－gz－n－0 & we．．． \\
\hline  & you（pl．）．． \\
\hline 8u－ワ－のgatrosb－0－u－a & they ．． \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
```

Different combinations of subject and object produce agreement patterns of the type：


```
zu-z-n-ajomin-js-n-zum
```



```
8u-3-ラ-agarm-gb-n-zum-a
```



```
    you apparently whitened us/
    you (pl.) apparently whitened us
```

The details of the formation of the perfect are outlined below for each type of verb．

## Root verbs

The above elements are attached to the form the root takes in the present indicative（i．e．there will never be a change of root vowel－- －to－o－），e．g．：


## Thematic suffix－eb

It is necessary to distinguish between roots containing a vowel and those without．The former attach the relevant elements around the root plus thematic suffix，the latter do not employ the thematic suffix in the perfect，e．g．：

```
8コ-リ-300-0ß-0-৩}XX\mathrm{ apparently did/made Y (sing./pl.)
8৬-ソ-@-0-৩ X apparently opened Y (sing./pl.)
```

 （will put）Y to sleep，（＠ロ－） $0-\mathrm{d} 06-\mathrm{o}^{B-\mathrm{L}} X$ goes（will go）to sleep $(=$ puts（will
 ＠3nd－əる－し $X$ wakes（will wake）up，where each pair should produce identical
 only in the meanings $X$ apparently put $Y$ to sleep and $X$ apparently woke $Y u p$ respectively．The perfects for these roots in subjective version（sc．as they would be in Series I and II）are respectively：＠๐－y－dnб－ก－ゝ and $80-⿰-$ e3od－o－১．

## Thematic suffix－i

The relevant elements wrap around the root as it exists in Series I（i．e．without any of the extensions found in Series II）minus the thematic suffix，e．g．：

$$
\text { 子u-y- } \partial_{\infty-\infty-৩} \quad X \text { apparently unfurled } Y(\text { sing./pl.) }
$$

## Thematic suffix－ob

The relevant elements wrap around the root minus the thematic suffix．There are none of the vocal root extensions that characterise some of these verbs in parts of the aorist indicative，but some of these verbs have a root－final -3 ，which disappears before any following $m$－vowel．Since there is no such vowel in the perfect，such verbs restore this－3 in the place it occupies when it is similarly restored in the aorist indicative（i．e．at the end of the root or preceding any root－final $-(\boldsymbol{m})$ ，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { るコーシーのが-○-৩ } \quad X \text { apparently heated } Y \text { (sing./pl.) }
\end{aligned}
$$

 $Y$ ，in the perfect is $30-8-0-0(3) 6-0-৩$ ．

The verb（ $\mathrm{z}^{--) y \text {－moz you（will）divide } X \text { also drops its thematic suffix in }}$ the perfect and restores the $-3^{-}$to its root（recall you divided $X=8 \cup-y \circ 3^{-\circ}$ ）：

$$
3^{\Delta-v-y 3}-0-৩ \quad X \text { apparently divided } Y \text { (sing./pl.) }
$$

The verb give forms its Series III on the basis of its root in the future sub－ series，which again loses the thematic suffix found there $(=-\partial \partial)$ ，e．g．：

|  |
| :---: |
|  |
| дп－д－ก－（3）－○－১ |
|  |
|  |
| am－z－0－0 |

$X$ apparently gave $Y$（sing．／pl．）thither
$X$ apparently gave $Y$（sing．／pl．）hither
I apparently gave $Y$（sing．／pl．）thither
I apparently gave $Y$（sing．／pl．）hither
えの－サ－（3－ก－১－め they apparently gave $Y$（sing．／pl．）thither
am－z－ก－（0－0－৩－の you（pl．）apparently gave $Y$（sing．／pl．）hither

## Thematic suffixes－av and－am

Verbs in these two sub－types retain their thematic suffixes in full，do not make use of the post－radical perfect marker－ 0 －and mark the 3rd person nominative nominal on the verb with the suffix -l （not -$\lrcorner$ ），e．g．：




```
дм-д3-0-зм-兀з-し we...
```




 （pl．）：

|  | $I$ apparently seated $X$（sing．only） |
| :---: | :---: |
| ＠u－z－0－L3－ua－L | you．．． |
| ＠৩－ッチ－ $\mathrm{L}_{3}$－১д－し | $X \ldots . . . Y$（sing．） |
|  | we．．． |
|  | you（pl．）．． |
|  | they．．． |

Compare：＠u－১3－0－しb－งд－bu（m－の［sic］we apparently seated you（pl．）；＠u－ッ－

 seated us：

In the spoken language one does often hear the perfect of verbs in－o3／－
 $X$ apparently killed $Y$（sing．／pl．），＠৬－๒－し৬－০－৩ $X$ apparently seated $Y$（sing．）， etc．）；indeed，for some speakers these are the preferred or only acceptable forms．

We saw above that the verb give uses its future sub－series root as the basis for its Series III forms，and other roots that have suppletive pairs between present and future sub－series and that have a transitive form in the future equally base their Series III forms on the future base，thus：

|  |  | Future |  |  | Perfect |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{L}_{3}$－งa－し | $X$ drinks $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | ＠๐－¢ $-(-)_{03}-$ L | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ sees $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | 6ub－uz－し | $\rightarrow$ | ข－6د6－งз－し |
| $\partial m-\bigcirc-y_{3}-$ l | $X$ brings（inanimate）$Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | дm－n－రుงб－L | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| am－3－ $\mathrm{y}_{3} 3^{-L}$ | $X$ brings（animate）$Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |

In the case of the verb say the Series III root is identical to the one employed

 $Z$ ，for the indirect object is simply made dependent on－の⿱一𧰨刂 for）．

One feature of the syntax of Series III transitives is that the paraphrasing explained in the grammar section of Lesson 6 is no longer necessary．The seven examples given there go into the perfect with unaltered 1st or 2 nd person direct objects，thus：

The perfect of medial verbs，regardless of which thematic suffix they take in the present or future sub－series，is formed by placing the regular combina－ tions of markers around the root，without preverb of course．If there is a difference of structure within the root as between the present and future sub－ series，the future form usually appears in Series III．A peculiarity is that most medials seem to allow an entirely optional－ 6 －to stand immediately after the root in any of their Series III forms，though this element will not appear if the root ends in -6 ，e．g．：

|  |  |  | Future |  | Perfect |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠om－し | $X$ boils | $\rightarrow$ | －－®yc－ว ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| （3）33－〕3－L | $X$ dances | $\rightarrow$ | －－cos3－93－L | $\rightarrow$ | コ－ $3033-(6-) 0-$－ |
| Ju＠uz－98－し | X preaches | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | y－Ju＠uz－（6－）- － |
| Ónoro－l | $X$ cries | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | リ－రీ |
| mosomoj－m8－b | $X$ speaks | $\rightarrow$ | －－musutnoj－ab－l | $\rightarrow$ | v－mo30 $\operatorname{mog}_{3}$－（6－） $0-0$ |
| Jayb－b | it thunders | $\rightarrow$ | $0-3 y^{6-98-L ~}$ | $\rightarrow$ | リ－Jyb－（6－） $0-0$ |


| 9¢－ง3－し | it lightens | $\rightarrow$ | $0-9 \mathrm{~m}(-3)-3^{3-6}$ | $\rightarrow$ | y－je $(-3)-(6-)^{0-0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Ra}_{3}-\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{b}$ | $X$ complains | $\rightarrow$ | $0-R_{3}(-) m^{-} 9^{\text {b－L }}$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| 3¢03－0－し | $X$ bleats | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| －－m3f－o－b | $X$ toils | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| くソバーシ3－し | $X$ swims | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| $\bigcirc-\mathrm{L}_{3} \mathrm{~m}$－o－L | X shoots／ throws（Y） | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| －－3mdz－o－b | $X$ fights | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | y－bind（－）mm－（6－）n－u |
| －－306－o－b | $X$ laughs | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | －－－${ }^{\text {n6－0－0 }}$ |
|  | $X$ thinks | $\rightarrow$ | $0-$ orafmeso－l | $\rightarrow$ | y－obnfin－（6－） $0-0$ |
| วyฐง－mb－し | X works | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ learns（Y）＊ | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| しÖ3（－）$)^{6-\mathrm{L}}$ | $X$ whistles | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| ＠u－的8－0－し | $X$ runs about | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | ワ－mb（－）$)^{6-0-0}$ |




Some transitive verbs in $-y^{3}$ ，namely those that do not take a version vowel in Series I and II and which do not use－œ－to form their intransitive coun－ terparts，vary in the formation of their perfects．Though today they are tending to become regularised（e．g．＠ง－ッ－১ง＠－১১－ก－ง $X$ apparently gave birth to $Y$ ，
 invited $Y$ ），one also finds older forms that parallel the medial formation（e．g．


This section closes with the perfects of the verbs given in Lesson 11：

|  |  |  | Perfect |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3nosb－ym－m8－L | $X$ reads X／enquires | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| yొ＠－ソ¢－м8－し | $X$ buys $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | у－y¢＠－○－১ |
| $\mathrm{l}_{\text {glb－ym－mb－l }}$ | $X$ borrows $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | y－boltb－（6－）n－u |
| обm－ver－mz－l | $X$ asks for $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| クм－у¢－м8－し | $X$ acquires／finds $Y$（intentionally） | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| $3 м$－эm－mb－L | $X$ acquires／finds $Y$（accidentally） | $\rightarrow$ | у－3мзд－（6－）п－ь |
| วЈઠ゙－ஏ¢－m8－し | $X$ increases／gets larger | $\rightarrow$ | y－Dコઠิ－（6－）－－ |

Note that the form $y$－$\partial 00^{\circ}-\jmath^{8-0-ऽ ~ e x i s t s ~ b u t ~ o n l y ~ a s ~ t h e ~ p e r f e c t ~ t o ~ t h e ~}$ present／future indicative $-\partial \Delta \infty-\jmath$－-l meaning $X$ increases／will increase his own $Y$ ．Note also that with reference to gaining weight the non－present sub－ series forms are：fu ○－ง the woman will／did／apparently put on weight．

With reference to losing weight，outside the present sub－series we have $\eta_{\jmath} \sigma$
 weight．

|  |  | Perfect |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| c－ว | $X$ receives $Y$（regularly） |  |  |
| $0-$－－9z－L | $X$ receives $Y$（once） | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| $3^{6-9} 3-6$ | $X$ harms $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | ข－36－0－ง |
| $3-3^{3(-)} j^{6-L}$ | $X$ bites $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| 393（－） $3^{6-6}$ | $X$ pinches $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| 的－3 ${ }^{3-L}$ | $X$ brings advantage to $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | y－（rg－n－0 |
| ＠u－＠n－l | $X$ goes（regularly） | $\rightarrow$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { y-3m-o-ง* } \\ & \text { (with dat. subj.) } \end{aligned}$ |

 $X$（has）apparently encircled $Y(=-\infty$ oぃし）．

The transitive perfect of try＝y－oऍ－○－১．

## How to say $X$ did not［verb］

It may seem odd that we have not yet encountered any Georgian equivalents to English sentences in which a verb in the simple past（aorist），especially of a transitive or medial，is negated，for the aorist indicative was introduced in Lesson 8．The reason for this omission is that the association of the simple negative un with the aorist indicative（especially of a transitive or medial）in Georgian does not merely negate the past verbal action；it carries the extra information that the subject did not wish or refused to carry out the verbal action．The Georgian way of simply negating a past activity（especially for transitive and medial verbs）is to use on with the perfect．Such combinations are thus translatable into English both as $X$ did not［verb］and as $X$ has not ［verb］ed．When the perfect is negated，there is not necessarily any notion of apparently associated with it，though，of course，if the context demands it， the nuance may be there．Look at these examples of both negated aorists and perfects：


```
Did they bring/have they brought [aorist] the book?
No, they didn't bring/haven't brought [perfect] it
( (on \(\partial m-n-0 ゝ 6-\mathrm{g}\) L [aorist] would mean they declined to bring it)
```



```
The teacher didn't return/hasn't returned the sweets to me
```



Did you lend／have you lent Zaza the money？No，I didn＇t lend／haven＇t lent him the money＊
 un＠uybingbjbno hoanzol No，I declined to lend him the money，because he has not yet returned to me the money I lent him last time．

## Three colloquial uses for the perfect

 $\mathrm{mmO}_{\mathrm{O}}^{-\mathrm{oz}}-\mathrm{l}$ ，depending respectively on whether the full expression would be I offer my congratulations or we offer our congratulations．The forms are the perfect of the verb congratulate with respectively 1 st person singular and 1 st person plural subject．If one needs to express the thing occasioning the congrat－ ulations，it just goes into the nominative as direct object（e．g． $\mathrm{\partial m}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{\partial}-\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{mm}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{O}^{-}$
 Congratulations on your birthdaylthe New Year／getting into（amBymbu） university）．A less colloquial，more direct equivalent to the English would be to use the present indicative in objective version，now of course with



The translation equivalent of Can you imagine it？！／Would you credit it？！ is to use the perfect of the verb imagine with 2nd person subject（ $\mathfrak{0} \boldsymbol{m} \partial \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{z}^{-}$ ○－＠る（－）$)^{6-0-৩(-\infty) ?!) . ~ F o r ~ e x a m p l e: ~}$


```
The peasant (зм⿰弓⿱⿰㇒一乂口)
can you imagine it?!
```

In place of the future or aorist indicatives in an $i f$－clause the perfect may be used if a threat is involved．The Georgian folk tale＇Lazybones＇contains a good example．The initial threat includes the perfect，whereas，when the Lazybones tells his wife what was said to him，he uses the future indicative，e．g．：


```
If you haven't reaped that field (y०бu) by evening, I'll put you to shame
(lit.: cut your head off)
```



```
If you don't reap this field by evening, I'll put you to shame
```

Such examples often contain the negative and are translatable into English by means of the perfect too，but the negative is not obligatory in Georgian， as in the following example，where English cannot use its perfect：



## The construction of sentences containing although/ even if

These two types of concessional clauses are formed in Georgian by using either $\sigma_{\mathrm{ma}}^{\beta^{\circ}}$ at the start of a clause containing the relevant non-subjunctive
 subjunctive, if reference is to an ongoing present activity, or aorist subjunctive, if reference is to one that may occur in the future. The main clause often



```
Although you will spend ((&)-)\nu-\infty(-)
```



```
Although you would return this valuable (dzonoguln) book to me tomorrow, I still
prefer you not to take it home
```





```
Although Zaza apparently didn't see the murderer, I want him to attend the trial
(3^m(3gln) as a witness (amfaŋ)
```



```
Even if it were raining, I would still be glad (дmbuпимलп)
```



 is literally despite that (fact), that . . . For the first example given above, this



## Expressions like $X$ is so [adjective] that [clause]

Such expressions of result are very easy to put into Georgian. The result clause is introduced by $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{m}}(\partial)$ that and contains the appropriate non-subjunctive form of the verb, while the adjective in the main clause is accompanied by oug so, e.g.:


difficulty (dмез L )

The horse was so exhausted ( $\wp \circ f \circ \sigma_{(\zeta \operatorname{mon}}$ ) that it fell down and died
 same as for the expression of purpose. We have already dealt with purpose clauses relating to the future in Lesson 14, where $\mathrm{mm}_{\mathrm{m}}^{\mathrm{g}}(2)$ is mostly used with the aorist subjunctive. And so we have the examples:

That kitten is too pretty for me to drown it

That woman speaks/is speaking too quickly for anyone to understand her
For past clauses of purpose (and past expressions of this type) see Lesson 16.
Result clauses may also be introduced by oboon such (a), пд@ృб๐ so much and $\mathrm{o}_{\mathrm{ab}}^{\mathrm{jm}} \mathrm{m}$ so large (a), e.g.:







$L_{0}$ in combination with a clause containing the negative $u$ on allows one to produce the translation equivalent of English without . . . ing when the action relates to an event in the past (cf. Dialogue 3, Lesson 13 for the parallel construction with aorist subjunctive when the action is non-past), e.g.:



```
a single (ungomon) word
```




## Negatives

We have now discussed all three negative adverbs $\Delta \mathfrak{m}, 3 \rho^{m}, ~ 6 \mathrm{~g}$. From each of these we can build:

 6уmuog[ə] mon nothing;




 way.


 used in circumstances when it is appropriate to use the base from which it is derived, as explained earlier. Georgian quite likes to pile up its negatives, so that the simple negative is likely to be used in conjunction with its deriv-



Don't do it again!
I have seen no one
I shall give you nothing
I shall give you nothing more
They could not go anywhere
No one is to go anywhere under any
circumstance!

 up nor sit down.

## Dialogue 3

A foreigner and a young historian (ovఠ̊mmozmbo) discuss the Second World War

| ข $3^{\text {bmgmo: }}$ |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  <br>  |  <br>  |
| ข $3^{\text {bmgma }}$ |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| obర̊mrozmbo: |  @๐» <br>  <br>  <br>  |









```
    っмдм
```









```
    зупдงбоงซว?
```






## Vocabulary

| －－才зјуб－э马（зงдм－） | you publish $X$ | ¢うдı | theme，subject |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you (will) touch } X \\ & \quad(=\text { dat.) } \end{aligned}$ |  mдの | Great Patriotic War |
|  | you mean $X$ | ＠uluzmgan | West |
| ayming almozmom | Second World | Jombn | chaos |
| мдп | War |  | you cause X |
| Luzagm（Luazmons） | council，soviet （Soviet） |  | union |
| $\mathrm{ab}[0] \mathrm{mo}$ | region，district | nozl | $\begin{gathered} \text { you avoid } X \\ (=\text { dat. }) \end{gathered}$ |
| ＠utina | field，subject | зinfyпбzомо | brilliant |
|  | researcher | дјコロう¢ | tenth |
|  | in their number | ᄂЗコ50 | Svan（person） |
| －¢bo\％n | Abkhazian（person） | Lma［g］6o | Armenian（person） |
| зงб－п－उए－○ | you（will）suffer（X） |  | you mourn（ $X$ ） |
|  | at least | 万03 | member |
|  | you discuss |  | you put $X$ out of your mind |
| y＠o＠olo | very great | Loogud $[\mathrm{j}]_{\mathrm{mo}}$ | ground（s） |


| Lesson 15 |  |  | 265 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | doubt comes（will come）upon you |  | view |
| Lnufiming | correctness |  | treacherous |
|  | East |  | you frighten $X$ |
| Lotumfunjajonomo | depressed | ＠っбうる．） | surrender |
| mub－u3（zu＠u－） | you overcome $X$ | LoLimfunjzəonomjos | depression |
| วdoaj | heavy |  | industry |
| y yome $^{\text {a }}$ | Urals | зu＠uмд」 | beyond（＋gen．） |
|  | you strengthen $X$ | －－才9\％－〕3（\％o－） | you encourage $X$ |
| дuñozo | directing | ammzulo | globe |
|  | you use X | m\％umau\％umo | huge |
| Lngeros | expanse，space | ＠＠っるンym | glorious |
| здก¢им ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | heroism | －－Әuがoblob（＠u－） | you defeat $X$ |
|  | century |  | factor |
| －－Rmfoso（＠u－） | you（will）bring $X$ to their knees |  |  |

## Proverb


Working badly is preferable to existing badly

## VOCABULARY

| Зэ＠ | bad | ymorbo | being，existence |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | working |  | $X$ is（will be）better than $Y$（＝dat．） |

## Verse

yobs（o）
＇Ushba＇
Though not the highest，this is certainly the most visually impressive of Svanetia＇s mighty peaks，towering，as it does，above the village of Becho









 lo＠bдary＠





（Nia Abesadze）

## VOCABULARY

| （30－） n －3m－n | you traverse $X$ | of | here |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3m¢ 3 ［ 0 ］mo | wheel | 33000 | track |
| дuल［๐］mo | high，tall（one） | јмัの | tower |
| $3^{\text {b }}$ ¢ ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | horse | $\partial m-f m-0$ | you rush hither |
| agmo | then | $\bigcirc$－ | those（oblique） |
| abje［0］${ }^{\text {cos }}$ | rider | ＠um | Svan goddess of the hunt |
| $\left(\partial_{m-}\right)^{3} \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{u}_{3}$ | you kill $X$ | ${ }^{\text {\％}}$ ¢＠ | upwards |
|  | you make X fly up | ＠umumo | long plait |
| nfimmogano | gold－coloured | д๐п5\％ | even so |
|  | each（one） | 30.05080 | manly male |
| \％n¢－ゝ3 | you take up $X$ | fomo | portion |
| ס05 830 | torment | 8u6）§＠ | trial |
|  | no one |  | you return |
| $3 \% 0$（3\％n＠u6） | path（from path） |  | untrodden |
| Ju＾mogn | rock | （8u－） $\mathrm{L}-$－3ए－98－ก | you move away from $X$ |
| ＠¢う | today | $\mathrm{R}_{39}{ }^{6}$ | we／us |
| （2n－）$n-\mathscr{P}(-)_{03}$ | you move on | luge | altogether |
| yoु＜m | more | диеме | high（adv．） |
| ธงరก¢－6งวก¢ | step by step | （30－） $0-33 \mathrm{~m}(-)^{3}$ | you mark out（path） |
| Bomofzo | pick（axe） | uoco（0）3） | where |
| ᄂuay＠uдm＠ | permanently |  | frozen |
|  | wave |  | you draw yourself up |
| ajomeno | white |  | peak |
|  | cloud，sponge | $\begin{aligned} & \text { es-u-b-u- } \\ & \left(0-c s^{-9 b-o}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you stand |
|  | as，like | $\square_{\text {¢，}}{ }^{\text {a }}$ | vision |
| ง＜ű＠ | nowhere | Ro6－L | it appears |
| обмплзп | hoof |  | most of all |
| （2m－） $\mathrm{bnO}^{\text {cm－u3 }}$ | you charm $X$ |  | untouched |
| пмзмп | snow | anobmmab | getting close |

## Exercises

1 Write out the conjugation in the perfect for: I (etc.) have opened $X, I$ (etc.) have heated $X, I$ (etc.) have drunk $X, I$ (etc.) have seen $X, I$ (etc.) have played $X, X$ has seen me (etc.).

2 Fill in the gaps and translate:
(a) $\mathrm{Fy}-\mathrm{m}-\quad$ @ $-\mathrm{@}(-)_{-}$







3 Transpose the following sentences with present indicative verb forms into their equivalents with perfect forms:
(a) $32^{m} a^{\text {b }} \rho^{\circ} \circ 3$


 m๘\%)





4 Transpose the following sentences with perfect verb forms into their equivalents with aorist indicative forms:








5 Wrap the appropriate agreement markers around the verbs:









6 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate negative particle:



(d) 38 - Boozemo!

(f) $-3^{\text {ol }}-9 y^{\mathfrak{m}}-{ }^{2 o b}\left(3 \partial^{2}\right.$ !
(g) - boc - ₹ $\quad \mathrm{b} \quad \mathrm{s} \Delta \mathrm{m}$ !

7 Translate into English:








 mingos


 nonbm ${ }^{\text {b }}$


8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) The foreigners so abused us that we refused to accept their apology.
(b) They apparently dined without pouring any wine - just imagine!
(c) Although he is so fat, the lad still apparently ran up the stairs.
(d) To tell you the truth, I no longer recall it, but they tell me that the artist showed me his paintings.
(e) When I attended the exhibition, I couldn't buy anything, as I didn't have any money with me.
(f) I brought you the book last week, didn't I? So explain to me, why haven't you read it yet?
(g) Because the foreigners apparently didn't fight well in the war, they lost.
(h) Because they didn't win, they burst into tears and returned home.

## Lesson 16

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation and meaning of the pluperfect for transitive and medial verbs
- Expressing the idea $X$ should have [verb]ed
- Expressing a purpose relating to the past
- Expressing conditions of the type If $X$ had [verb]ed
- Examples of word formation


## Dialogue 1

A foreign student asks his Georgian teacher about the meaning of the
















Vocabulary

| \% ${ }^{\text {abymon }}$ | verbal | --L-১-9 -- (@--) | it is placed/ put |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 303jubnymon | Caucasian (thing) | U8ıзмо | study(ing) |
| zu@ułutnojou | exaggeration | Junobuyno | compliment |
| Lumayyon | title | ajnorbzコm0 | reader |
|  | hitherto |  | in particular |
|  <br>  | aorist indicative | agmeng <br>  | pluperfect |
|  | you form $X$ | (зпбм-) | (film) studio |
| оुомдп | film | duçzodumo luson | alarm clock |
|  | you set $X$ | ybjonbuymmbu | embarrassment |
| 0-m-o/0-লm@- | you (will) wait for $X$ |  | early (adj.) |
|  <br> мм@-эВ-n) |  |  |  |
| bojme | defect | Бовзмищ | in place of |
| --bobnuon-j3 (@u-) | you characterise $Y$ |  | (+ gen.) |

## Dialogue 2

An impertinent child and his exasperated mother have an argument

| @g@ง: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| @g@ง: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| ¢у¢ை: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |

## Vocabulary

| ழомепмп | tired | 3 b 300 | grandmother |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| --muz-j (0-) | you clear X away | ᄂunuaudm | game |
|  | refreshed by sleep | उ'rumo | fault |
|  | insolent | Lmog[9]me | village, country |
| ठกбu | flat | rusombo | district |
|  | wonderfully, well |  | of the town (adj.) |
| дงзбэ | harmful | дизмэб๐ | influence |
| --b@(-) $)^{6}$ (2m-) | you exercise $X$ | unzз@пмо | death |
| yงбzo | rust |  | it fastens to $X$ |
|  | it rusts | Imento @o | that's the end of it! |

## Grammar

## The formation and meaning of the pluperfect of transitive and medial verbs

The pluperfect is equivalent to the English $X$ had $\ldots$ ed. Unlike the perfect, it carries no necessary implication of the idea apparently.

All transitives and medials share the following features:
(a) their subjects stand again in the dative and are thus marked in the verb by the agreement affixes that in Series I and II served to indicate a verb's objects;
(b) standing between any agreement prefix and the root will be the vowel $-0-;$
(c) any indirect object is made to depend on the postposition -ozol for and stands in the genitive;
(d) unless we are dealing with a transitive verb in - 0 that has a vowel in the root, the nominative direct object will be indicated exactly as the equivalent ergative subject is marked for the relevant verb in the aorist indicative.

It follows from this last point that any root extensions that characterise a verb in the aorist indicative either throughout the conjugation or just when the subject there is 1 st or 2 nd person must be repeated in the pluperfect, except that in the pluperfect they are conditioned not by the verb's subject (as in the aorist indicative) but by the verb's direct object, standing in the nominative. To illustrate this fundamental principle, let us take the verb kill and compare aorist indicative and pluperfect formations:

| Aorist indicative |  | Pluperfect |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2m-3-30m-n | $I$ killed $X$ (sing./pl.) | $\partial m-\partial-\partial-3 m-৩$ | I had killed $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| дm-jum-0 | you killed $X$ (sing./pl.) | $\partial m-3-0-3 m-১$ | you had killed $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| дm-3m-১ | $X$ killed $Y$ (sing./pl.) | $\partial m-0-3 m^{-}$ | $X$ had killed $Y$ (sing./pl.) |
| dm-3-jum-n-m | we killed $X$ (sing./pl.) |  | we had killed $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| am-jum-n-m | you (pl.) killed $X$ (sing./pl.) | 2m-z-う-3m-u-n | you (pl.) had killed $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| $\partial m-3 m-\jmath \mathrm{l}$ | they killed $X$ (sing./pl.) | am-0-3m-u-n | they had killed $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| $\partial m-z-30 \mathrm{~m}-0$ | I killed you | дм-д-Ј-јЈल-0 | I had killed you |
| $\partial_{m-\partial-j u m-0 ~}^{\text {a }}$ | you killed me | дm-z-0- Ј 0 m-0 | you had killed me |
| $\partial m-\partial-3 m-\Delta$ | $X$ killed me | वm-3-0-30 m - | $X$ (sing./pl.) had killed me |
| am-z3- $\mathrm{cm}_{\text {cou }}$ | $X$ killed us | дm-3-0-3गल-o-m | $X$ (sing./pl.) had killed us |
| am-a-jum-n-の | you (pl.) killed me | am-z-0-30m-n-m | you (pl.) had killed me/ us/you had killed us |

This table demonstrates how important it is to be able to form a verb＇s aorist indicative without hesitation；it is advisable to revise the formation of the aorist indicative of transitive verbs before tackling the present lesson．Examples of the pluperfect follow for each type of verb．

## Root verbs

Root verbs differ from the above illustration in carrying over into the pluper－ fect the weak endings from their aorist indicative．If a radical－ 0 －changes to - －in Series II，it does so in the pluperfect，naturally including all verbs in $(-)_{0} 6$ ．Most verbs in $(-)_{03}$ convert this to $(-)_{0-}$ and add the weak endings， apart from those few whose root ends in $-\partial$ ，which becomes－3 in Series II and the pluperfect，to which the strong endings are suffixed，e．g．：

```
১৩@৩-д-э-кюh(-)пб-৩ I had saved X (sing./pl.)
8৩@৩-る-Э-币п(-)пб-৩ you...
```



```
8৩@৩-83-9-\пR(-)п6-৩
8৩@৩-z-う-mh(-)п6-৩-\infty you (pl.)...
8৩@৩-ŋ-mん(-)пб-ง-\infty they...
```





```
80-子-э-fo(-)п-৩ you...
80-0-fo(-)0-৩ X ... ...Y (sing./pl.)
80-83-0-\mp@subsup{f}{3}{}(-)n-0 we...
fu-る-コ-fo(-)n-১-\infty you (pl.)...
80-0-fo(-)n-১-\infty they...
```


 you had knocked us down．

```
@u-\partial-0-^noz-১ I had snatched X (sing./pl.)
```



```
80-0-nonz-0
B0-83-0-(nonz-0
80-z-コ-monz-0-\infty
Bu-0-MnOz-u-\infty
X . . . . . Y (sing./pl.)
we...
you (pl.) ...
they...
```


 snatched us．

Note that although $৩-马 \partial(-)_{03}$ you feed $X$ to $Y$ has the aorist indicative $\cup-子 \circ \partial-0$ ，
 a non－existent aorist indicative $*_{-}-\not \partial(-)_{n-\jmath}$ ；however，by using this form for the pluperfect，Georgian avoids confusion with 子－৩－马৩д－ь you had eaten $X$ ．

## Thematic suffix－eb

Verbs of this type without a vowel in the root simply follow the root－suffixal structure of the aorist indicative，be this weak or strong．In the examples note that the verb $u-\mathfrak{f}-\jmath^{8}$ you（will）praise $X$ only optionally takes the preverb $ə_{\jmath}-$ where one would normally expect it：

|  | I had praised $X$（sing．／pl．） |  | we．．． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （20－）$-0-\mathfrak{y}$－m | you | （g〕－）- －－J－m－m | you（pl．） |
| （20）$\left.{ }^{2}\right)^{2}-\mathfrak{j}-\mathrm{m}$ | $X \ldots . . . . Y$（sing．／pl．） |  | they． |

 f－o－o X（sing．／pl．）had praised you（pl．）．

|  | I had let $X$（sing．／pl．）go | 8 －－83－9－93－0 | we．．． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3u－3－0－23－u | you |  | you（pl．） |
|  | $X \ldots . . . . Y$（sing．／pl．） | $30-9-\partial_{3}-১-\infty$ | they． |

Cf．зu－д－๐－⿰⿱㇒㠯 ○ $X$（sing．／pl．）had let me go．

The one complicating factor in the formation of the pluperfect of transi－ tive verbs is presented by verbs in $-\jmath^{8}$ that contain a vowel in the root．Such verbs not only retain their thematic suffix but add to it the element－＾б－．To this they then suffix the weak aorist endings，e．g．：

|  | I had whitened $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | you．．． |
|  | X ．．．．．Y（sing．／pl．） |
|  | we．．． |
|  | you（pl．）．．． |
|  | They |


 whitened us，З৩－3－0－のうonm－うる－ก6－〕 $X$（sing．／pl．）had whitened me．





When discussing the perfect we saw that there were a couple of verb pairs that were unexpectedly differentiated in order to preserve a clear difference
in meaning．The same applies in the pluperfect．We would expect＠๐－з－๐－

 corresponds only to the former and means you had put X（sing．／pl．）to sleep．

 woken up．

## Thematic suffix－av

The same three sub－types in terms of root structure and ending pattern as described for the aorist indicative in Lesson 8 apply to the pluperfect．See the conjugation of kill，earlier in this grammar section．Other examples：

```
@ง-\partial-っ-\partialง@-৩ I had hidden X (sing./pl.)
@u-83-0-\partialum-0 we...
```





|  | I had burnt $X$（sing．／pl．） | ＠๐－33－9－93－0 | we． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you |  | you（pl．） |
| ＠๐－0－83－১ | X ．．．．．Y（sing．／pl．） | ＠๐－コ－阬－১－め | they |

 ๑－๓ $X$（sing．／pl．）had burnt us．

The suppletive root $\sigma^{\prime} b-$ see is of course used in the pluperfect to give
 me；〕－6コb－ŋ－の $X$（sing．／pl．）had seen you（pl．）and so on．

## Thematic suffix－i

The same three sub－types in terms of root structure and ending pattern as described for the aorist indicative in Lesson 8 apply to the pluperfect：








|  | I had wounded $X$（sing．／pl．） | ＠－－83－0－3m－0 | we． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠o－3－0－3 3 （n－0 | you．．． |  | you（pl．） |
|  | $X \ldots . . . . Y$（sing．／pl．） |  | they |




## Thematic suffix－ob

Both strong and weak aorist endings are transferred to the pluperfect along with whatever changes to the root occur in the aorist indicative，including the restitution of the radical－3－．The examples begin with（＠๐－）子る－mठ you（will） censure $X$ ：

| ＠๐－д－л－ฉว－¢ | $I$ had censured $X$（sing．／pl．） | ＠๐－৪3－ว－วa－m | we． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠๐－る－う－るว－¢ | you | ＠u－る－コ－るる－m－の | you（pl．） |
| ＠u－う－วд－m | X ．．．．．Y（sing．／pl．） | ＠๐－л－зд－м－п | they |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | I had intoxicated $X$（sing．／pl．） | ＠๐－z3－〕－пがm－m |  |
| ＠u－z－9－のm－m | you |  | you（pl．） |
| ＠ゝ－〕－のm－m | X ．．．．．Y（sing．／pl．） | ＠ゝ－う－のが－m－の | they ． |

 me，＠৩－з－ラ－๓3（n－〕 X（sing．／pl．）had intoxicated me．

If the root does not end in－m but restores the $-_{3^{-}}$，the restored element of
 cated you）．

|  | I had seized $X$（sing．／pl．） | ＠u－z3－9－3y㐌－m | we．． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠๐－з－0－3ym－m | you |  | you（pl．） |
| ＠๐－0－3y | $X . . . . . . Y$（sing．／pl．） | ＠๐－0－3ym－м－п | they |

 control of me．
A similar pattern exists for verbs with root extension in－ŋ－（e．g．Дก－з－ŋ－ ym＠っよ－の you had leaned me against（ $X$ ））．

## Thematic suffix－am

Only the strong aorist pattern is found in the pluperfect．The example is of （дก－）৩－১－৬д you（will）bind X（to Y）：

| дп－д－э－৪－৩ | I had bound $X$（sing．／pl．） | ап－83－0－8－৩ | we |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дп－з－〕－8－১ | you | дก－る－〕－る－১－п | you（pl．） |
| дп－〕－る－ง | $X . . . . . . Y$（sing．／pl．） | дп－৩－৪－১－の | they．．． |

 $X$（sing．／pl．）had bound us．

|  | I had said X（sing．／pl．） | 33－0－のf3－u | we．．． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－9－のf3－－ | you．．． | 3－9－のf3－u－の | you（pl．） |
|  | X ．．．．．Y（sing．／pl．） | －$-\infty \mathrm{fl}^{\text {－u－m }}$ | they ．． |

As in the perfect，this verb serves as pluperfect for $0-\boldsymbol{v}^{3} 6-0^{B-0} / 0-0 y^{3}-0 / \eta-$ のbuかの－○ you tell／will tell／told $X$ to $Y$ with the indirect object made dependent on－ozol and put into the genitive．

The verb（ $\beta^{\prime-}$ ）y－mog you（will）divide $X$ behaves according to the general



| дп－д－コ－ろ3－ | I had given $X$（to Y） |  | we ．． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дп－る－0－（－） | you | дп－る－0－0－0－の | you（pl．） |
|  | X ．．．．．Y（to Z） | 2n－0－ひ－১－の | they． |

Study these sentences：


```
To whom had your master given you as labourer (дmzuдugnóg)?
```




```
Don't you remember? He had given me to you, but I escaped as soon as the means
```




```
I had already given you \(£ 20\)
```



```
Why hadn't you given the document (bubyon) to me?
```

The pluperfect of medial verbs，regardless of which thematic suffix they take in the present or future sub－series，is formed by placing the by now famil－ iar markers before the root，without preverb of course．Almost without excep－ tion，medials are weak in the aorist indicative，and so these are the endings that transfer to the pluperfect．The same entirely optional－ 6 －may stand immed－ iately after the root of those verbs that allow it in the perfect，e．g．：

|  |  |  | Perfect | Pluperfect |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠ym－し | $X$ boils | $\rightarrow$ | ソ－＠уल－（6－）o－১ $\rightarrow$ |  |
| （3033－03－L | $X$ dances | $\rightarrow$ | コ－（3033－（？6－）n－ง | 0－उ033－（？6－） 0 |
| Juenz－ob－し | X preaches | $\rightarrow$ | ข－Ju＠uz－（6－）n－u | $3-70$ ¢ozz－（6－） 0 |
| Onno－ol | $X$ cries | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |
| mo3umoj－mb－l | X speaks | $\rightarrow$ | －－mo3umos－（6－）n－৩ $\rightarrow$ | 2－muzumoj－（6－）0 |
| Jajb－b | it thunders | $\rightarrow$ |  | －Jッ¢ |
| $0 \times-\mathrm{m}_{\text {－}} \mathrm{l}$ | it lightens | $\rightarrow$ | $\boldsymbol{y}-9 \mathrm{~m}(-3)-(6-) n-0$ | $0-9 \mathrm{~m}(-3)-(6-) 0$ |
| $\mathrm{Rog}_{3}-\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{L}$ | $X$ complains | $\rightarrow$ | $\boldsymbol{y}$－ $\mathrm{Roz}_{3}(-)_{\text {m－}}(6-)_{0-0} \rightarrow$ | $0^{-R_{o}}(-)_{\text {m－}}-(6-) 0$ |
| 3लっ3－0－L | $X$ bleats | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |


| －－¢30－○－し | $X$ toils | $\rightarrow$ | ข－c3ง¢－（6－）ก－ง $\rightarrow$ | －¢308－（6－） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | X swims | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |
| O－ $\mathrm{L}_{3} \mathrm{~m}$－ 0 － l | X shoots／ throws（Y） | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |
| －－3－nd3－n－L | $X$ fights | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\mathrm{o}^{-3 \mathrm{~m}} \mathrm{~m}(-) \mathrm{mm}$－（6－） 0 |
| －－3nб－o－l | $X$ laughs | $\rightarrow$ | －－ $0^{\text {¢б－0－৩ }}$ | －－0n6－১ |
| कुतf（n－mb－L | $X$ thinks | $\rightarrow$ |  | 0－कुのf（n－（6－）0 |
| วyฐง－mठ－L | $X$ works | $\rightarrow$ |  | 9－2y $)^{3}$－3－（6－） |
| －603m－mb－し | $X$ learns（Y） | $\rightarrow$ |  | －－し¢っ3m－（？6－）${ }^{*}$ |
| しठ3 $_{3}(-)_{3} 6$－L | $X$ whistles | $\rightarrow$ | ェ－しठ3（－）35－ก－১ $\rightarrow$ |  |
| ＠u－ki－n－l | $X$ runs about | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |




 to come across the older forms that parallel the medial formation（ $\partial \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{\jmath-} \mathrm{\delta} 0 \mathrm{O}^{-}$


Finally，here are the pluperfects of the verbs given in Lesson 11：

|  |  |  | Pluperfect |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3norb－ym－mz－l | $X$ reads $X$／enquires | $\rightarrow$ | （f0－） 0 －зnorb－u |
| yn＠－ソ¢－mb－U | $X$ buys $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | $\bigcirc$－yn＠－১ |
|  | $X$ borrows $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | $0-\mathrm{bolbt}-(6-) 0$ |
|  | $X$ asks for $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | $)^{\text {－abm＿}}$－（6－）${ }^{\text {a }}$ |
| วм－э¢－м3－し | $X$ acquires／finds $Y$（intentionally） | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| $3 m$－уm－mb－l | $X$ acquires／finds $Y$（accidentally） | $\rightarrow$ | $0^{-3 m_{3}-(6-) 0}$ |
|  | $X$ puts on weight／gets larger | $\rightarrow$ | $0^{\text {－дコ®－（6－）}}$＊ |
|  | $X$ loses weight／gets smaller | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| ¢－93－э¢ | $X$ receives $Y$（regularly）Compared with $\cap-\varrho-9^{B-し} X$ receives $Y$（once） | $\rightarrow$ | дп－つ－m－m |
| $33^{6-0^{3-6}}$ | $X$ harms $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | － $3^{\text {¢－m }}$ |
| $\left.3-3^{8(-)}\right)^{\text {¢－L }}$ | $X$ bites Y | $\rightarrow$ | $)^{-3} 3^{8(-)}$ пб－ |
| 303 $(-)_{9} 6-\mathrm{L}$ | $X$ pinches $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | 0－3073（－）п6－ |
| 乓－93－L | $X$ brings advantage to $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | $0^{-r g z-m}$ |
| ＠u－¢0－し | $X$ goes（regularly） | $\rightarrow$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0^{-3 m-m^{\dagger}} \\ & \text { (with dat. subj.) } \end{aligned}$ |
| （The transitive pluperfect of try $=0-300-0$ ） |  |  |  |

[^11]
## How to express the idea $X$ should／ought to have ［verb］ed

Parallel expressions of obligation relating to the future are conveyed by the invariant particle $ฑ$ ๒๑๐ plus aorist subjunctive，those relating to the present
 again used but this time in conjunction with the pluperfect，e．g．：


```
You should have prepared tomorrow's (ъзงмпбœэмо) lesson in time, children
```



```
If it is as difficult as that, you should never have started Georgian
```



```
How should I have paid the bill (৩Б马utnomo), when I didn't have my wallet
(Lo%ुэmg) with me (пงб)?
```



```
When should we have taken you (pl.) to the station?
```



```
You (pl.) should have taken us at half past two
```



```
The water should already have boiled
```



```
る-Э-zゝд-৩-\infty
You should not have played ball, lads. You should have got changed
((\Omega৩@৩-)০-(33-৩Д) and eaten on time
```




```
My sister should not have written a letter at that time - she should have taught me
```




```
Your enemy should have killed you, when he had the chance
```



```
How should my parents have reared me differently?
```




```
At that moment when you came out of the mud (\delta) mobo), your mother should have
shown you to your father
```



```
Why should I have let you (pl.) go?
```


## How to express a purpose relating to the past

We saw in Lesson 14 that a purpose relating to the future is expressed by using the aorist subjunctive in a clause introduced by кп（ $\partial$ ）（or moms）．If the verb in the main clause is itself in the past，such that the intention was to fulfil the purpose before the present moment，then instead of the aorist subjunc－ tive the pluperfect is normally used（though the aorist subjunctive is not unknown）．Similarly，those expressions introduced in Lesson 12 and Lesson 14 to illustrate the aorist subjunctive will take the pluperfect in the associ－ ated clause，if they themselves are put into the past：


```
\(I\) went to the market to buy fruit
```



```
I sat ((ho-) --bung \({ }^{8}\) ) those exams in order that I might work as a teacher
```




```
What did you (pl.) want? I wanted you (pl.) to let me in in order that I might
interview your boss
```



```
Was it really necessary to throw away ((る৩@৬-)৩-る@-১る) my paper so quickly?
```



```
Who requested the soldiers to cast down their weapons?
```



```
Sorry, but it was not possible for me to take you to the station
```



```
Father advised us not to sow this field today
```





```
I was trying to see to it that the guard (yunovmo) properly guarded the factory
```



```
\(I\) wanted to take away the gun from you
```





```
more from the priest \(\left(\mathrm{\partial}_{3} \lessdot[0] \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{n}}\right)\), as yesterday I ordered you not to steal gold
( m f(mm) from the watchmaker (aŋlosong)
```




```
have done that job earlier?
```



```
дп-л-ल-м бзимлдழо
When we went out, we should have sent this letter in order that the Prime Minister
(2пБпレgino) might have received it by tomorrow
```

Past result clauses of the type $X$ was too [adjective]/It happened too [adverb] to [verb] follow this same construction:


```
That kitten was too pretty for me to drown it
```



```
That woman was speaking too quickly for anyone to understand her
```


## How to express conditions of the type If $X$ had [verb]ed

The conditional marker is again mм $(\partial)$, preferably not at the beginning of its own clause, but this time accompanied by the pluperfect. In the main clause the verb again stands in the conditional. In speech the conditional clause often starts with the pluperfect verb (preceded by any adverbial modifiers), in which case no ќm( $\partial$ ) appears at all:



```
It would have been good, if you had prepared tomorrow's lesson already
```



```
8०-6-3п@-м@-п зпбмŋп
If you had not prepared tomorrow's lesson on time, you could not have gone
to the cinema
```



```
If they had brought our food, we should not now be hungry (дŋ๐gкюก)
```



```
If you had cleaned my shoes, I should have been happy
```



```
If it had rained yesterday, the streets would have become wet
```



```
If the child had gone off to sleep, his mother would already be down
```



```
If she had already got the child off to sleep, his mother would already be down
```



```
8-コ-зm@(-)nб-\mp@subsup{\jmath}{}{8-m@-৩}
If I had learnt the answer to that question, I would certainly have told you,
and you too would now know it
```


## Examples of word formation

In addition to the complexity of its verbs Georgian has quite a richly devel－ oped system for creating one class of words from another．Examples of some of the patterns are given here and are continued in Lesson 19．Notice that adjectives indicating origin usually（but not always）end in $-9 \mathrm{~m}^{(-\Omega)}$ ，when referring to a person，but－vinc（－0），when referring to anything else－this latter ending changes（dissimilates）to $-\operatorname{mg}_{\mathrm{m}}(-\infty)$ if there is an $-\infty$－in the base word． The equivalent country or town name is given alongside：

| Person | Non－person | Meaning | Country／town |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －бдмпи－うм－0 |  | English | －бzmeno |
|  |  | of Tbilisi | counmolo |
|  | Juハの－ソलーロ | Georgian | Lu－funのz－əм－м |
| Lma［g］b－n | Lmat－ymon | Armenian |  |
| оु＜ |  | French | Lu－oुmubz－コロ－n |
| のoymfo |  | Turkish |  |

Many country names，particularly those bordering Georgia，contain the suffix－ј๗－．The word for France combines this with the prefix $\mathrm{l}_{\mathrm{o}}$－，which one also often hears prefixed to the word for Armenia．The circumfix（the prefix－suffix combination） l －m wrapped around a noun indicates that which is designated forlto be（the noun），and so Georgia literally means place desig－ nated for a Georgian．

This same circumfix is frequent with names denoting relationships，in the sense of the future（i．e．to be）．For example：

| Jə［0］ mo | husband | $\rightarrow$ | Lo－J2m－m | fiancé |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| but \％mmo | wife | $\rightarrow$ |  | fiancée |
| mod［0］mo | sister－／daughter－ in－law | $\rightarrow$ | bo－mdm－m | future sister－／daughter－ in－law |
| Lodjo | brother－／son－in－law | $\rightarrow$ | bu－Lond－m | future brother－／son－ in－law |
| วงдıдmกm๐ | father－in－law （for wife） | $\rightarrow$ | しง－дıдงдппก－м | future father－in－law |
| unauamo | father－in－law （for husband） | $\rightarrow$ | Lu－Lnauán－m | future father－in－law |
|  | mother－in－law （for wife） | $\rightarrow$ |  | future mother－in－law |
| Ln＠g＠ón | mother－in－law （for husband） | $\rightarrow$ | Lu－しn＠う＠（m－м | future mother－in－law |

Other names denoting relationship include：

| 2u\％mo | husband＇s brother | aymo | husband＇s sister |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| froumo | wife＇s sister＇s husband | $33^{3} \mathrm{n}$ | grandmother |
| 308 yo | grandfather | dるı | brother |
| ＠） | sister |  |  |
|  daったfymo | brother＇s child | ＠ったまるのmo／ <br>  | sister＇s child |
| ＠っ○＠ | mother＇s sister | дงдn＠u | father＇s sister |
| Bods | uncle |  | uncle＇s wife |
| Boduaromol | cousin |  | son |
|  |  | fumoz3กmo | daughter |
|  |  |  |  |

Note that when giving a patronymic，$d_{\jmath}$ is used for son and Llymon $^{\circ}$ for daughter：

|  | grandchild |  | great grandchild |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $3)^{\text {mon }}$ | step－child |  | stepfather |
|  | stepmother |  |  |

To produce an adjective equivalent to English ．．．less Georgian wraps the circumfix $y-m$ around the relevant noun．By putting the resulting adjective into the adverbial case，the associated adverb is produced，e．g．：

| Noun | Privative adjective | Meaning | Privative adverb |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| nzum－0 | y－пzum－m | sightless |  |
| しn6¢0し－の | y－Lロ6¢onl－m | without conscience |  |
| $3^{3} \mathrm{O} \mathrm{m}$－ 0 | $y$－ $\mathrm{j}^{\text {bom－m }}$ | toothless | リ－з |
| $33^{\circ} \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{n}$ | －－330¢－m | without trace | リー330ツ－m－¢ |
| 2\％\％ | v－2\％${ }^{\text {a }}$－m | sunless | $\cdots$－ \％$^{2}$－m－¢ |
| ＠ゝ○ | リ－＠っ＠－m | motherless | り－＠っや－м－＠ |
| วงдง | リ－วงว－m | fatherless | у－วدд－м－¢ |
| ndy |  | milkless |  |
|  |  | moustacheless |  |
| B 30 㐌－0 |  | beardless＊ |  |
| ソ6um－0 |  | talentless |  |
| Bolung－o | y－Fjurioz－m | disordered |  |




## Dialogue 3

A journalist（ョ๗ตbumolgio）interviews a recently retired，though not
 supreme office of state

| งขฆmbumolo̊o： |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  <br>  |
| ข゙ymbumotoro： |  <br>  |
| $3 \mathrm{mmognozmbo:}$ |  <br>  дьтネз $\boldsymbol{z}^{\text {бп }} 3$. |





## Vocabulary

| ofonymo | active | Зммппоп＿ј | politics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | motherland |  | you boast |
| วృ＠っзก | result | のзल－の（Rっдm－） | you list $X$ |
| 3ummuajб万力 | parliament |  | presidency |
| дми＠⿰丿¢ை | assistant |  | $X$ is abolished |
| ajaumorbjby | left－winger |  | you（will）seize $X$ |
| ${ }^{\text {bjenligogmo }}$ | power | 3＇mbun | exchange rate |
|  | $X$ falls |  | wealth |
| д＠っ＠［๐］mo | rich（man） | aygu | worker |
|  | undoubtedly | －－cumnz－gs（zu－） | you impoverish $X$ |
|  | European（person） |  | partner |
| 50ßul ¢nの－ゝ3（＠u－） | you allow $X$ | 3） | debt |
| з ${ }^{\text {mazoun }}$ | crisis |  | you cause X |
|  | contract | －－abubyun－ob（＠u－） | you earn $X$ |
| Бœпठ๐ | trust |  | international |
| － | arena | －－mb（－） O3 $^{(0-)}$ | you elect $X$ |
|  | ethnic | yarońmumbu | minority |
|  | you light $X$ | luamfocmofm | civil |
|  | $X$ lasts | am－o－bligh－j | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you say } X \text { to } Y \\ & \text { (polite) } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | you follow $X$ down |  （しぃбumema） | light（s） |
| $\mathrm{y}^{2}-\mathrm{b}_{3}(-)_{03}$ | you take a |  | to the left |
| （8৩œ๐－） зиюдм－） | turning hither and thither | 2umazå\％ | to the right |

## Proverb


Whichever finger you slice off me，they will all hurt me

## VOCABULARY

|  | whichever［noun］ | のnom | finger |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you（will）slice $X$ off $Y$（dat．） | узวщ๐（－১－） | all |
|  | $X$ hurts（will hurt）you |  |  |

## Verse




```
д๐foby
```






（Mukhran Mach＇avariani，1973）

## VOCABULARY

| Пว¢๐б | recently | $3^{3}$ | sky |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Jybl（o－－98－し） | it thunders |  | you tremble |
| ว๐วก | fear | anfo | earth |
| Bumbyn | fledgling |  | you knock $X$ out of |
| ช甲ツ） | nest | ＠эмวдь | downpour |
| lyos－93－し | it reigns | ふu¢口ృam | around |
| ๑ว6un的 | such a | ubmo | now |
|  | calm（ness） | onomfmb | as if |
| 的O3 | that which |  | it happens |
| melaj $=$ meglay | at some time | ＠ | and |
| smo | not |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Write out the pluperfect conjugation for：

> I (etc.) had seen X
> I (etc.) had felt X
> I (etc.) had drunk X
> I (etc.) had given birth to X
> X had praised me (etc.)
> I (etc.) had thought

2 Fill in the gaps and translate：









3 Transpose the following sentences with present indicative verb forms into their equivalents with pluperfect forms:
(a) $39^{m} a^{\text {b }} \supseteq \varrho 3$







4 Transpose the following sentences with pluperfect verb forms into their equivalents with aorist verb forms:








5 Transpose the following sentences with perfect verb forms into their equivalents with pluperfect forms:




(e) sdıا дмข



6 Transpose the following sentences with aorist subjunctive verb forms into their equivalents with pluperfect forms, including any other changes that the presence of the pluperfect would necessitate:





(f) 的 $3 \mathrm{~J}^{6} \mathrm{o}$ ?



7 Translate the following into English:










 ayaobrymmb



 mm(a) ofo bom
8 Translate the following into Georgian:
(a) If the lads had stolen apples from the gardener, they wouldn't have become hungry.
(b) I tried to conceive a love for you, believe me! I can't, and don't try to deceive me any more!
(c) If the enemy hadn't led us astray, we would have gained a victory.
(d) I wanted to buy fruit. In that case your friends should have taken you to the market.
(e) If the water had not boiled at that moment, we should not have been able to drink this coffee.
(f) Had you looked after your mother better, she would probably not have died.
(g) Why shouldn't the neighbours have woken and dressed the children in their new clothes so early?

## Lesson 17

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The main modern function of preverbs
- The formation and functions of the verbal noun
- The formation and functions of the adjectives derived from verbs
- Expressing at the time of [verb]ing


## Dialogue 1

One lady does her frantic friend a good turn

|  |  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 6, ${ }^{\text {b }}$ : |  <br>  <br>  |
| วִข\%๐: |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  дд <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |

бวбว：


 œ๐мм？！






 yozo＠omog！








## Vocabulary

|  | builder | Lubuymuz | roof |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you unsettle $X$ | 6utu＠п¢эal | in the afternoon |
| 3 －nybe－e－93－0 | you return to your | Roam－ $\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}$－ | coming |
| （Rっдm－） | own town | 2ubtungo | brake（s） |
| 80－ $\mathrm{u}_{3 \mathrm{~cm}}$ | going | ツッзる | mouthful |
|  | you repair $X$ |  | you fill $X$ |
|  | fridge |  | you are late |
| Lonfuring | speed | （＠）－） |  |
| Joलum＠ | paper |  | it accumulates |
| Bybum－＠－0 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ | you calm down | （＠u－／mの－） | for $X$ |
| （＠）－） |  | －6ozúnfor | heart attack |
| zulugnóno | plight |  | aid（ing） |
|  | kind－hearted |  | calm－hearted |
| Losjergora］mo | patch |  | you patch $X$ on $Y$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & 3^{30-\left(330^{00}-ก m-n\right.} \\ & \left(\leftarrow(\text { 子u- })\left(330^{\infty}\right)\right. \end{aligned}$ | worn out $(\leftarrow y o u$ wear $X$ out） | Bo3nnegm <br>  | many times <br> patched $(\leftarrow$ you |
| 万umb［0］mo | pair of trousers |  | patch $X$ ） |
|  | rags |  | not |
| dmbd（ $\mathrm{j}^{\mathrm{B}}$ ）${ }^{\text {a }}$ |  |  | a plurality is |
|  | every month | （д๑œ๐－） | thrown away |
| งるul finbum | recently | 子um＠u－o3m－nm－n <br> （vs дm－д－s3＠－১（m－n） | dead／passed away （vs having died） |

## Dialogue 2

## A foreigner asks a local historian about Georgian history while visiting a remote Georgian village

| ข $3^{\text {bmg }}{ }^{\text {mo: }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
| obgommozmbo: |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  oym sbumo formommo obg̊м |
|  | $39^{\text {m }}$ ¢¢@? |
| obo̊mmozmbo: |  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |


| y $3^{\text {bmg }}{ }^{\text {mo：}}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

## Vocabulary

|  | remote |  | accessible |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | recommended | мд－п |  |
| 的可ymo |  |  | textbook |
| lo－sए－g¢－○ | trial－，draft－ | 3umnuborn | variant |
|  | you correct $X$ | Bombigme | past |
| のリ6¢（03） | albeit |  | expert，knowledgeable |
| Lubo | face，shape，form | дмзмэ＠ | in brief |
| －－blg6－〕3（2m－） | you mention $X$ |  | mentioned |
| 子uдm－Lu－＠oz－ก | advantageous |  | it falls apart |
| －23jomo | imperium | のกロー6－ก $\left(\partial_{\jmath^{-}}\right)=$ <br>  | you fabricate $X$ |
| 30́ndm＠$=$ <br>  | specifically |  | as far as $X$（dat．） is concerned |
|  | request |  | classical |
| （＠űzmjan－） | （Western） |  | towards（＋gen．） |
| 303julno | Caucasus | after personal pronouns） |  |
| d（30mo） | BC（ $=$ the old year－ | lozofóm | commercial |
|  | reckoning） |  | you establish $X=$ |
| B06u3［0］ mo | ancestor | $=$－utul－93（＠u－） | you found $X$ |
| Luбuзп¢м | shore，coast | 2330¢仿 | native |
| 2－86mgrn－9 $3^{\text {－}}$ | inhabitant | nogmo | Iberian（person） |
| －cımbuzmgnjmo | eastern（person） | кпдıjes | Roman（person） |
|  | emperor | $\begin{aligned} & 0-3 \mathrm{~m}(-)_{\partial} 5(\partial m-) / \\ & 0-3 m_{n} 6-y^{B}(\text { (am- }) \end{aligned}$ | you despatch $X$ here on a mission （до－$=$ thither $)$ |
| しర¢Mu8m6n | Strabo |  | geography |
|  | page | $\mathrm{R}_{3 \rho}{ }^{\text {б }}$ Fomonominncibzu | $\begin{aligned} & \text { AD (= our year- } \\ & \text { reckoning) } \end{aligned}$ |
| ＠ulufyolo | beginning | дмдщлзбм | following，next |
|  | millennium |  | conqueror |
| domnonuen | basic |  | you find yourself |

somewhere

| $0-$ y3 $3^{3}-0^{8-0}$ | flourishing |  | David the Builder |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| วృоु－мठ－ง | being sovereign | 8u－L－805－L | $X$ will last |
|  | unforgettable | $0-R 5(-) 03$（20－） | you judge $X$ |
|  | Tergdaleuli＊ |  | decade |
| antonsbu | someone like $X$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0-\boldsymbol{f}_{3}(-)_{03}\left(\partial_{\mathrm{m}}-1\right. \\ & \left.\partial_{n}-\right) \end{aligned}$ | you invite $X$ |
| yarmogun | better |  | life，living |
| $0-3 m z^{-} y^{8}(2 m-)$ | you find，attain $X$ | yiny | deaf，backward |
| умө̧6－১ | being |  | it is established |
| 0－2b－mb－o（＠u－） | it collapses | amaız $^{\text {［ }}$ ］m＠ | future |
| $3-83^{\text {m－n }}$（ $\partial \mathrm{m}$－／дп－） | you bring $X$ to $Y$ | ＠u＠̧రnom | positive |
| дп－з－৩－R6－п－১ | you deem $X$ |  | finished work |
| nozolugor［u］men | free | 3 3 mulzon－ <br>  | pseudo－scholarship ${ }^{\dagger}$ |
| afu－nf | here and there | ymoुn＜0 | former，ex－ |
| Lozimo | space | －－bubnuasob（＠u－） | you characterise $X$ |
|  | you distort $X$ |  |  |

＊Tergdaleuli（lit．one who has drunk of the River Terek（のgゥ̊の））is the term used to refer to that group of intellectuals in the 1860 s who received their higher education in Russia－to get there they had to cross the Terek！－and who imported to Georgia the more advanced ideas circulating there．Prince（now Saint！）Ilia Ch＇avch＇avadze is the best known of them．


## Grammar

## The main function of preverbs in the Modern Georgian verbal system

This lesson is mainly concerned with the non－finite parts of the Georgian verb （i．e．those parts which cannot of themselves form a sentence，and so for which a finite verb form is required）．Since a number of the forms to be described exist both with and without a preverb，it is essential to say something in general about the role preverbs have come to play in the verbal system．

## Preverbs

In origin，preverbs indicated directionality，as they still do with verbs denoting motion．However，for most transitive and intransitive verbs the preverb is that which（a）differentiates the future sub－series from the present and（b）is
normally the first element in any Series II or Series III part of the verb. The reason for this is that the presence of a preverb basically shows that the verbal action is fully completed - actions in the past, other than those whose specific function is to mark an ongoing process (e.g. the imperfect indicative), are usually viewed as having been completed, and the completion of an action in the present logically leads us into the future. In what way, then, are Series II forms used without their usual preverb? Since this is not easy to explain in the abstract, some concrete examples are given to show how the system works:


```
    The mouse dug, dug, (and) dug out a cat
```



```
    I rang, rang but couldn't ring up
    (= I tried and tried to ring but couldn't get through)
```



```
    They must do everything (in a general sense) with their own hand(s)
compared with
```



```
    They must do this before tomorrow
```



```
    Everyone should do his own job
compared with
```


I want the plumber to do this job quickly

Here the action described is either a momentary past event that began and ended but did not lead to its natural conclusion, thus remaining incomplete, or the reference is to a habitual activity, regardless of the fact that on each occasion it was completed in its own right. Similar subtle nuances may distinguish preverbless and preverbal pairs in at least three of the examples cited below (brackets are used to enclose the preverb to show it can be omitted). Since preverbal forms outnumber the preverbless, the rule of thumb must be: if in doubt, use the preverb.

The preverb @๐- sometimes replaces a verb's normal preverb to underline some notion of plurality (e.g. of a transitive verb's direct object or of an
 @๐-৮6-১з you will plough the fields). On the other hand, the preverbs $\partial_{m}-, \partial_{\jmath}-$ sometimes replace a verb's normal preverb in order to show that the verbal
 the pig, लмल⿱

## The formation and functions of the verbal noun 'masdar'

English has two verbal nouns: the infinitive, usually with the element to (e.g. (to) kill, (to) see, (to) sleep) and the gerund in -ing (e.g. killing, seeing, sleeping). The direct object of a transitive infinitive is marked in the same way as for a finite form of the verb (e.g. (to) see her, I see her); modernday Georgian has nothing to match this and so lacks an infinitive. A gerund's object is either treated in the same way as the infinitive or stands in the genitive, marked by of (e.g. My seeing her/seeing of her yesterday surprised everyone). Georgian's verbal noun allows only genitive marking for the object of a transitive verb (and for the subject of an intransitive one), and so Georgian specialists prefer to use the Arabic term 'masdar' to refer to it. Where the agent of a transitive masdar is present, it is marked in the same way as an agent with a passive verb, i.e. it is placed in the genitive and governed by either $\partial \circ$ 弥 or -zuб by; any indirect object is governed by -ozzol for. The masdar may fulfil the same set of functions as any other noun in the language and declines like a regular noun ending in - , e.g.:




```
30s (mg@usonv6n fimgon) of the 4th century
```




```
(১อృб๐) people?
```



(Note how the objective version is used in the second variant in place of the



```
The woman's coming into the room surprised ((8৩-)৩- \(\left.33^{\circ} \mathrm{n}_{3}-0^{8}\right)\) us all
```




Compare with the preverbal:


```
Iza found the picking of another's ( \(\mathrm{Ub}_{\mathrm{z} O} \mathrm{~L} \mathrm{O}\) ) apple in the manner of a thief
```




```
K'lara is not interested at all ( \(\mathrm{uvm}_{\mathrm{c}}\) ) in writing letters
```

Compare with the preverbal:




```
The woman began talking to me
```

(Again note the objective version in the second variant.)
The formation of the masdar is reasonably straightforward. Where a verb exists in both a transitive and intransitive guise, the two usually share a single masdar. The masdar formant is -o. This is simply added to root verbs; verbs in $-\jmath 8,-m 8,-m \circ 3,-\jmath \partial$ add it after these thematic suffixes; those in $-\jmath_{3}$ and -১る also add it after the thematic suffix but in the process lose the $\jmath$-vowel from these suffixes. Those verbs in $-\jmath_{3}$ that allow the -3 - to slot inside the root in their intransitive Series I forms undergo the same change in the masdar, while those in -১ə with a root-final -3 lose this ${ }_{-}$; the masdar-ending simply replaces the thematic suffix -o. A few verbs with a markerless intransitive have an element -mд- in their masdar. Here is a summary with examples.

## Root verbs





 destroying/being destroyed, ( $\left.\partial_{\partial-}\right)(\varrho)(-)_{\zeta} 6-ง$ leading into error, compared with


## Thematic suffix -eb

 $\jmath^{3-\lrcorner}$ causing to attend/attending, beating $X$ to do $Y, \jmath^{\circ-\jmath-\jmath^{3-৩} \text { understanding, }}$


## Thematic suffix -av




## Thematic suffix -i

 $\bigcirc$ counting/being counted, ( $\left.\mathrm{am}_{\mathrm{m}}\right)_{\partial_{j}}$ - reaping/being reaped.

## Thematic suffix－ob

 buh－mb－ง suffocating／being suffocated．

## Thematic suffix－am



 $ও \jmath^{\partial-৩}=$ hitting $/$ being hit．

The copula has the masdar ymog6－ь being，the verb of motion has $\mathrm{l}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}-\mathrm{\Delta}$ ， usually with the relevant preverb（ $\partial_{m}-\mathrm{l}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}$－ง coming， $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{\checkmark}-\mathrm{l}_{3 \mathrm{~m}-ง}$ going，$\partial_{n}-\mathrm{l}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}-$ $\bigcirc$ reaching，$\left.\gamma^{\circ} \partial_{\mathrm{m}}-\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}-\right\lrcorner$ coming out，etc．）．Some other important masdars are：

| ＠－－ma－u | standing | －－¢\％－мд－ง |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { se-мд-১/ } \\ & \text { lb@-мд-১ } \end{aligned}$ | sitting（sing．／pl．） |  | sitting down （sing．／pl．） |
| 万－mм－৩ | lying | ＠－－ $\boldsymbol{\beta}^{\text {－m＠－১ }}$ | lying down＊ |
| （＠）－）30ヶ¢¢－১ | falling（down） | $\begin{aligned} & \left(\text { (œ-) } 333^{6-\nu /}\right. \\ & \quad(\varrho)-\left(33^{n} 3^{(-) 6-১}\right. \end{aligned}$ | falling down （in plural sense） |
| yne－3－0 | ```buying (for yп@-умм-m३/ ○-y@@-○ you (will) buy X)``` | 8৩－yn＠－3－0 | ```selling (for (zЈ-)yn@-0 you (will) sell X)``` |
| $\mathrm{abman}_{3}(-6)-\bigcirc$ | request，asking for （for obm－уलーмठ you ask（for X） | $\mathrm{In}_{3}(-) 6-\bigcirc$ | finding，obtaining <br>  you find $X$ ） |
| $3 m_{3}(-) 6-0$ | finding <br>  you find $X$ ） |  |  |

If masdar formation for transitives and intransitives is reasonably uniform， the same cannot be said for the medial and indirect verbs．Here are some of the more useful forms：

## Medials

| ＠ワ¢－п¢－п | boiling | 3 Snd－mm－ | fighting／battle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | running | y3nn－пm－o | yelling |
| उ033－〕 | dancing | \％2vy－пल－ก | mooing |
|  | crying | Oリヴア3－3 | swimming |
| mo3umojon | talk（ing） | Unnoum－n | slipping |


| yəos－১ | barking | 3\％mnum－0 | spinning round |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢3ヶд－ง | rain（ing） | 30bubb－0 | answer |
| fyb－ocm－n | thunder（ing） |  | thought |
| ом3－ | snowing（cf．пмзмо snow） | $0^{6 m} 3^{\text {m－}} \mathrm{o}^{\text {b－o }}$（sic） | living／life |
| Roz－nल－o | complaining（cf．Luhoz［u］的 complaint） |  | lightning game，playing |
|  | feeling |  | work（ing） |
| 6u＠っm－мठ－৩ | hunting（cf．buœońno the game） | acgm－o | singing（cf．unamgmo song） |

## Indirect verbs

| Ln－yzuth－ym－n | love | Byym－3－0．0－0 | thirst |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ln－dym－3－nm－n | hatred | しo－gomem－jb－o | need |
| $y$－m＜＜－s | having（animate X ） | d（－） $\mathrm{ncm}_{\text {－}}$ | sleep |
|  | having（inanimate X ） | ¢3nd－пm－o | being awake |
| bl（－）m $m_{3}-6-0$ | remembering，memory <br> （cf．ajblogñogo memory） | ＠u－30fy－ob－u | forgetting |
| б¢е（－）мд－ь | wanting | วกข－ก | fear |
|  | liking | Un－3 $3^{\text {b－a }}$ | heat |
| OJ＾3－ncm－n | pain |  | longing |
| Un－ $\mathrm{O}^{\circ} \mathrm{3}-3$ | cold（ness） |  | shame |
|  | hunger |  | pity（ing） |

As the translation makes clear，the relevant noun here is often more of an abstract noun than a strictly verbal noun．Also，not every verb necessarily has

 $X$ than to the indirect $g_{0-\Omega-0-\mathrm{d} \mathrm{m}-0-\bigcirc} X$ is possible for $y o u$ ）．The same is true of Rงб－し it appears，子৩－৩－ßธ－ก－৩ it depends，etc．

## The formation and functions of participles

Georgian verbs can produce up to four participles（adjectives derived from verbs）：
（a）the active participle
（b）the privative participle
（c）the future participle，and
（d）the past participle．
Particular attention should be paid to the formation of the past participle，as this will be needed to form simple Series III forms of intransitive verbs，just as the masdar is needed as a base for Series III forms of intransitive（and
indirect) verbs with an indirect object. The future participle will also be of great use. The other two are described below for the sake of completeness.

## The active particle

The universal marker of the active participle is the pre-radical prefix $\partial$-, which is often accompanied by the suffix $-\partial \mathrm{m}^{-}$-. Many medial verbs use a variety of other suffixes, usually with a vowel accompanying the prefix. The object with a transitive active participle goes into the genitive. Without a preverb, this participle refers to an ongoing or general action, equivalent to $a[$ verb]ing $X$, e.g.:



Quite often such participles become used as simple nouns (e.g. $\partial-\mathrm{l}-\partial-\partial \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{o}$ drinker, drinking; $\partial^{-}$з $0^{\left.m-\mathrm{m}_{3}-ก ~ s e a m s t r e s s, ~ s e w i n g\right) . ~ W i t h ~ a ~ p r e v e r b, ~ s u c h ~ p a r t i-~}$ ciples are translated according to context as $X$ who has . . ed/will (be able to) . . ., e.g.:

Do you know the writer of (= the one who wrote) this letter?

Where today is the one who will (be able to) write Shakespeare-like dramas


Forms that are basically active participles are sometimes used by themselves in the function of nouns; this is especially true of preverbless participles. In such cases the vowel of the suffix -om- is sometimes lost. Particular attention should be paid below to the indication of vowel loss, which should be understood to apply to the noun function of these participial forms. Here is a comparison of adjectival and nominal functions:







```
They will not extend the contract of the firm that cleaned this window
```




```
this dress
```


## The privative participle

The universal marker of the privative participle is the prefix $m$-, with which most verbs combine the suffix $-\partial \mathrm{m}$. The preverb is used with those verbs that take a preverb. The meaning is not having . . ed, if the verb is intransitive

 Sometimes this participle is equivalent to English un-[verb]-able (e.g. @o-v-
 adverbial case provides a useful tool, for it serves not only as a simple adverb
 construction described when discussing result clauses in Lesson 15. Compare the following pairs, where the verb in the first part of each example is the perfect:


```
\(X\) went out without looking back
```




```
They went without hearing my advice
```

From these we see that any object of a transitive verb will again stand in the genitive alongside this participle too. Notice that loss of the vowel in the suffix -əm- may occur when followed by the adverbial case marker. Again readers should pay attention to the marking of vowel loss in this suffix.

## The future participle

The universal marker of the future participle is the prefix $\mathrm{l}_{0}-$, with which certain types of verb combine the suffix $-\jmath \mathrm{m}$. Any relevant preverb will or will not be used depending on which nuance of those discussed above is required. The meaning is either that which is for [verb]ing or that which is to be [verb]ed. Examples:


```
Where is your writing paper?
```



```
Where did you put your boots ( \(\mathbb{\beta} \mathrm{m} \mathrm{\rho})\) ) that need cleaning?
```



```
They do in one day things to be done in nine days
```



```
\(X\) will have nothing to do
```



```
We are to go elsewhere ( (ᄂbzozu6)
```

Note the following handy usages of this participle along with some choice for its case marking:


```
This puzzle ( \(\boldsymbol{z}^{\circ} \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{\jmath} \cup \mathrm{~b})\) ) is easy to work out
(lit. an easy to work out thing)
```



```
That place is easy to locate
```



```
I have nothing to do
```



```
The doctor has no one more to see
```



```
Do you have anywhere to go?
```

Similar to such usage in the adverbial case is the role of the future participle as substitute for the full clausal representation of purpose, described in Lesson 14 and Lesson 16. The advantage of using the future participle in the adverbial case is that there will no longer be any need to differentiate between purposes relating to the future and those relating to the past - again, any direct object of a transitive verb's participle will stand in the genitive, whilst any indirect object will be made dependent on -ogob for, e.g.:

I am going/went to the market to buy fruit
 Rっam-Lu-moda-ə3-ゝ@
They are sending/have sent me (here) to interview your boss

I haven't/hadn't the time ( $3-3^{3} \mathrm{C}_{-0-0}$ stative verb) to take you to the theatre


Tomorrow I shall make/Yesterday I made the time $\left(\left(\partial_{m-}\right)_{0-(נ m-ก)}\right)$ to fetch you
the/a present

When shall/did we go to view the exhibition?
Note the loss here of the vowel in the suffix -əm- when followed by the adverbial case marker; not all verbs lose this vowel, and so yet again it is important to note the variant forms.

## The past participle

There are three basic formations according to verb type for the past participle：


 having been blamed）；and
（3）the circumfix $\partial^{-}-\Delta m$ ，which becomes $a^{-}-\Delta m$ if there is an $-(m-$ in the root

 person），and the meaning is either having been ．．．ed or，for verbs that only exist as intransitives，having ．．ed．Readers should also note that a variant for some verbs is sometimes found where the marker is the prefix 6ı－，e．g．：


```
Irrigation (Lonpyozo) canals (ง⿴⿰幺幺人) made by Georgians are to be found
```

This example shows that，if the person who carries out the verbal action appears with the past participle of a transitive verb，it is marked in the same way as is the agent of a passive verb（i．e．it stands in the genitive governed by either $\partial_{n} g^{\prime}$ or，as here，－-306 ）．The older type of participial formation in 6u－often exists today as a noun alongside the more modern formation used
 กм－০－৩ the bread is sliced）．Some irregular verbs form their only past participle by means of this prefix．

The following examples begin with the masdar followed by participial forms for each verb in the order：（1）active，（2）future，（3）privative，（4）past．

## Root verbs

The suffixal component is possible for some active participles，rare in the future，and almost always present in the privative．The past participle is almost always in－пल－，except for verbs in $(-)_{33}$ ，which take $-y_{m}$－and lose the element $-3^{-}$before it，otherwise the root itself is hardly ever affected． Examples：



```
    4 @๐-Bom-пмーの
clean (зu-) かっృбœ-ง:
```









```
catch (@๐-) \(\xi 0\) 向-ง:
```






```
listen ( \(\mathrm{am}_{\mathrm{m}}\) ) \(\mathrm{L} \mathrm{\partial}(-)_{)^{2}}\) б-ง:
```







```
destroy (@u-) \(\boldsymbol{\sigma}_{子 \text { m (-) }}^{03}\)-১:
```









```
eat zua-ง:
```




## Verbs in－eb

The thematic suffix is retained in all forms．The prefixal component is often accompained by the vowel－- ，especially if the root begins with $\partial$－or a vowel
 $\rho^{3-[\rho]} \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{o}$ borrower）．If there is no vowel in the root，the suffixal component is absent from the active and future participles，though it is regular for the privative．The past participle is in－ycm－．Examples：
do（子u－） $3 \rho^{\infty-\jmath^{z-}}$ ：

















```
depress (@u-) емб-эв-ง:
```




```
light (u-)6の-うる-ง:
```



```
    4 ง-бの-ラ
```




```
understand
```



```
put (@u-) @-っる-১:
```



```
allow/make \(X\) attend, beat \(X\) to \(Y\) @u-レ叩か-ృる-ง:
```




```
praise \(\mathfrak{\jmath}-\jmath^{3}-ง\) :
```



## Verbs in－av

The past participle loses the thematic suffix and is in－ym－，unless the root
 grind，pound has a choice of past participles in either＠u－$\boxed{0 y \text {－пल－○ or＠u－}}$ $6_{0} y-\boldsymbol{v}(\mathrm{m}$ ）．The active participle fluctuates between（i）keeping the thematic suffix in full without other suffixal material and（ii），using the suffix－эм－， which is obligatory if the root lacks a vowel．In this case the thematic suffix loses its vowel，and those verbs that place the remnant $-3^{-}$inside the root in the masdar do so here too．The thematic suffix is usually retained in full in
the future and privative participles（without any other suffix），though some verbs may omit it in the future；verbs without a vowel in the root allow－ $\mathrm{om}^{-}$as a variant in the privative participle，and its presence motivates the same changes to the thematic suffix as in the active participle．Examples：

```
block (д৩œ๐-)लмる-з-১:
```





```
print (@u-) るっきほ-3-ง:
```






```
bury (@u-) \(\partial \mathrm{\Delta} \boldsymbol{\text { mb-3-土: }}\)
```




```
burn (@๐- \(\mathrm{\theta}_{3}-\left[3_{3}-\right]_{0}\) :
```




```
defend (œ๐-) \(\mathrm{OB}^{-\left[3^{-}\right] 0: ~}\)
```




```
paint (@u-)600-3-ง:
```




```
plough ( \(\mathrm{\partial m}_{\mathrm{m}}\) ) \(\mathrm{b}_{3} \mathrm{\hbar} \mathrm{-}\) :
```



```
kill \(\left(\partial_{m-}\right)_{33}{ }^{m-ง}\) :
```



```
    3 дм-リ- з
```


## Verbs in－i

The thematic suffix disappears．The past participle is in－nल－，the privative requires the suffix $-\partial m^{-}$，as do the active and future participles for those roots with no vowel in the root；some roots with a root vowel also allow this suffix in these two participles．Examples：




```
weigh (u-) fimb-ง:
```



```
cut in two (зง-) 子向-ง:
```




```
tire (@u-) লm-
```



In view of the forms zu－yn＠－๑ you will sell $X$ and $\cap$－yn＠－॰ you will buy $X$ it might be thought that these verbs belong here．However，the masdars are respectively $\beta^{\checkmark-y \cap @-3-৩}$ and $y ొ \varrho-3-৩$ ，and the participles tend to follow the



## Verbs in－ob

The thematic suffix is always retained for the active，future and privative participles，and for the past participle of those verbs with prefixal intransi－ tive forms，in which case the past suffix is－пल．－Roots with a markerless intransitive have a past participle formed by the circumfix $\partial--\mathrm{om} / \mathrm{\circ} \mathrm{~m}$ without thematic suffix－the privative participle for some verbs of this sub－type is formed just by adding the prefix $m$－．In some verbs the often lost root－final $-^{-}$will re－emerge here．The suffixal－əm－is always used in the privative and for some roots optionally in the active and future participles．The active prefix is sometimes $\partial_{\circlearrowright-}$ ．Examples：

```
ruin \((\partial m-)\) し3-m8-ง:
```



```
    4 дм-しろ-mる-пм \(-ก\)
degrade/bring down (@๐-) ab-мठ-১:
```



```
    4 @๐-2b-мठ-กм-ก
heat (zu-) m -mぶ-ง:
```



```
extinguish (зง-) f(m-mる-১:
```




```
intoxicate (@u-) omm-mb-土:
```




```
suffocate (œ๐-)bณึ-мठ-ง:
```







```
    4 зu-д-ฎかn-uмーก
```

Note：all verbs with a markerless intransitive，regardless of whether or not they take the thematic suffix $-m \beta$ ，form their past participle by means of circumfixation（e．g．
 has happened）．

## Verbs in－am

The thematic suffix is retained throughout，though without its vowel；any root－ final－3－will drop．The past participle is in－ঘm－；elsewhere the suffixal－əल－ will be used．Examples：

```
pour, seat (a plurality) (@u-)牝-১:
```



```
place (standing)(@)-)@⿴-\partial-৩
```



```
drink l-д-১/@u-ем(-)03-১:
```




```
clothe (Ro-)(O-\partial-ט:
```



```
say ■f-д-৩:
```



The verb $\langle u-y$－moु－o divide has：


The verb $\partial_{\cap}-\zeta^{-} \partial^{-}$－give has（with preverb $\partial_{m}$－replacing $\partial_{n-}$ under the usual circumstances）：

The above represent those aspects that are regular about participial forma－ tion in Georgian．Medials are notoriously idiosyncratic，especially with regard to the active participle，and listed below are some useful participial forms for some medials and other irregular verbs．Notice that all four participles cannot necessarily be formed for every verb：

```
yмоुб-ง be
```




```
    Have you been in Tbilisi? Yes, I have been there many times
子०-4зе-ง go out, pass (of time)
```



```
    (Note: \(\beta_{\nu}-6 \nu-3[\nu]{ }_{m}-\cap\) excrement, and, with the preverb \(\partial m-, \partial_{m}-\partial \nu-3[\nu]_{m-\infty}\) future, cf.
```





```
@ー-мд-ง be standing
```



```
ゃゃ-мд-১/レセœ-мд-ง be seated
```




```
§-мलーง be prostrate
```



```
\(0^{\text {bmann- }} 3\)-ง live
```



```
dm3(6)-ง graze
```





```
зммдз-ง mourn
```



```
zind6-mb-ง feel
```




```
Figb-nc-o sadness
```



```
@りलー๐लーの boiling
```



```
dnल-ก sleep (ing)
```



```
\(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{B}^{-\Omega \mathrm{m}-ก \text { complain }}\)
```




```
しn-onलー○ laugh(ter)
```



लっд－пल－п smile
1 дм－लna－ún－ก


6งœ๐ハーゥ－мठ－ง hunting

mosumoj－n talk（ing）



（30s3－［3－］0 dance

3ind－me－ง fight（ing）

4 6u－bind－mलーก
мд－ก war（ring）

Bbyz ${ }^{-\infty}$ quarrel（ling）






Ln－yzurn－ym－o love

Ln－dym－3－nm－n hatred
1 дm－dym－〕 2 Lu－dym－3－9m－0
fm6－（っb－）ゝ have（inanimate X ）

 goes with the verb（8৩－）3－y3－əb－○ you（will）follow／attend $X$ and thus means

（мल＠－ゝ know（ledge）

 1 дп－д－ $\boldsymbol{b}_{3}$＠




## Expressing at the time of [verb]ing

There are two ways of producing this variant of a clause introduced by when/while, both of them involving the masdar of the relevant verb in the genitive case. The full construction makes the masdar (and any words accom-
 immediately follow the masdar, e.g.:


```
At the moment the president came into (%д\partialmbzmu) the hall (@u(nos%o)
everyone stood up
```



```
At the moment the president comes into the hall you must all stand up
```



```
At the time of taking exams students are nervous as a rule
```





```
was attending a conference in America
```

The short construction does away with the word for time itself but adds its dative case ending onto the long form (in -ь) of the masdar's genitive. Thus, the above examples can respectively be shortened to the following:


```
At the moment the president came into the hall everyone stood up
```



```
At the moment the president comes into the hall you must all stand up
```



```
At the time of taking exams students are nervous as a rule
```




```
At the time our neighbour was killed by the murderer her daughter was attending
a conference in America
```


## Dialogue 3

 of rich politicians has a biblical message（Mark 10：19－25）for them！
 ＠๐＠оп





















## Vocabulary

|  | you prepare／get yourself ready | $2 m-b_{3 m-0}$ | coming |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| fiyonlmoz［9］mo | world |  | $X$ is purged |
| Jmoloso | Christ |  | coming a second time |
|  | corruption | jumoran | bribe |
| 2m－Lyn＠－3－১ | enticing | $\partial_{y}$ Jum－o | threat（ening） |
| 2m－ס゙ym－${ }^{\text {b－u }}$ | lying |  | elections |
| 2уœдпз | permanent |  | fellow－traveller |
| $\bigcirc-330^{\text {b－o }}\left(0--3^{B}\right)$ | you boast |  | wealth |
| ৪-৩-ழু-১৪-১ | $X$ is of advantage | วก－セ－93－১ | receiving |
| （子ుдм－） | to you |  |  |


| 2xnyo－mb－u | fornication | リob［ง］mo | Lord |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\partial_{3} 5_{j}{ }^{\text {cos }}$ | commandment |  | you fornicate |
|  | false witness | ソ－る－93（дп－／дm－） | you answer $X$ |
| amdmz［0］mo | preceptor |  | adolescence |
| ¢umiozo | poor | y－moz－j（＠u－） | you apportion $X$ to $Y$ |
| $\%^{\circ} 3^{\circ}$ | heaven | Uoubry | treasury，reward |
| ऍибимзмпиба－ | aggrieved，upset | ＠o＠dumo | large |
| дмбјठ。 | possession | дп－дm－п－bృ＠－১3 | you will look around |
|  | roundabout | LuLugos［9］m0 | kingdom，paradise |
|  | you alarm $X$ | ธu－のf3－১д－ก | what was said |
| 0－6＠－m8－n | you put your | пмल๐ | easy |
| （дп－／дm－） | trust in $X$ |  |  |
| －fmoan | camel | 8u－dn－mд－ı | passing through |
| 6yaln | needle | yฯ6fo | eye |
| 30¢的 | than | д＠っ＠［0］mo | rich man |

## Proverb



One moron will brandish a valuable diamond and hurl it into the sea，so that，were even 1,000 clever individuals to come，they will be unable to fish it out again

VOCABULARY

| gromo | one |  | moron |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you（will）brandish $X$ | dznénozulo | dear，valuable |
| umauto | diamond | \％¢3） | sea |
|  | you（will）throw $X$ | vomun | 1，000 |
|  | down into | Э33006ก | clever |
| ¢n¢a | if | $\begin{aligned} & \partial m-\text { en-b-u-价 } \\ & (\partial m-b-3 u m) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）come |
| 30cuom | no longer（potential） | $(0-\partial m-) n-\rho^{-} 0^{3}$ | you（will）lift $X$ up out of |

## Prose text

Excerpts from an interview with Germany＇s leading kartvelologist，Prof． Winfried Böder（Oldenburg University）in Pillar of the Nation（1999）





додвощзамп？











 テoğ2l？．．．














## VOCABULARY

|  | $X$ starts（will start） | 60，̧6mbmou | acquaintance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| jumorymo | Georgian（thing） | ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | language |
| －0， | with（＋dat．） |  | accidental |
|  | you are（will be） | 2jbzop的 | meeting |
| のv | or |  | scholarly |
|  | interest | зuбm6\％mangun | regular |
|  | extension | 3u＠uますへの | definitely |
| $39^{\text {mic }}$ ．． 33 mor | neither ．．．nor （potential） | gruon | one |
| （＠u－） $0-$－nfa－ 03 | you（will）give name $X$ to $Y$ | djming | second |


| mon | through what，how？ |  | $X$ appears（will appear） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Luдyomm | world | Lun6ojonglm | interesting |
| дпว\％п¢злмп | appealing | のง3п＠） | right from the start |
| （＠๐－）子－১－ <br>  | $X$ interests（will interest）you | дıмŋ | soon |
| J 3030 | version |  | you（will）start $X$ |
| aygumbu | work（ing） | зงдмлзмеэз | investigation |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 子u-дm-en-b-u-m } \\ & (8 u-2 m-b-3 \nu m) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）come out |  | year（in the year） |
|  | still | วงก6\％ | even so，however |
| 330）́m＠ono | side－ |  | after |
| ubmos | newly | ＠uomlobuym | founded |
| －6zmoligmo | English（thing） | \％мди¢о | general |
| （8u－）6ए0－38－0 | you（will）become | дпэщை | whole |
| nuzoluyor［0］me | free | Lyaylormo | semester |
| （80－） $0-80$（n－ $3^{3}$ | you（will）spend $X$ | mzubo | family |
| з33julommmznymo | caucasological |  | activity |
| 2ก\％〕\％n | cause |  | guest |
| umoungzoymo | acknowledged | 2ul3nбd［9］mo | host |
| しろ⿰习习ว | business | 30 | but |
| $\begin{array}{r} a m-z-\partial-b l(-) \\ a^{6-y^{3}-u-\infty} \end{array}$ | you（pl．）know（polite） | ＠onuobmono | housewife |
| $\mathrm{amos}_{3}[\mathrm{c}] \mathrm{mo}$ | main | кимm＠ | role |
|  | you（will）play（X） | дэу¢щ๐ | spouse |
| Lnyzứnym | love | Lna3umos | empathy |
| andumos | towards（＋gen．） | （80－） $0-800$ m－38 | you（will）share $X$ |
| งдпঠ¢ma | for this reason | duмппб | very（much） |
|  | you（will）want $X$ | Lubmo | house |
|  | as ．．as possible |  | well |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { mozl amb-mb } \\ \text { (o--mb) } \end{gathered}$ | you（will）feel yourself | 303julnjen | Caucasian <br> （person） |
| umbuon | probably | （＠）－）- －n¢3 $(-)_{03}$ | you（will） infringe $X$ |
| RЗวумп | usual | $3^{\text {bmajorgou }}$ | life，living |
| ¢пO̧a） | rhythm | azumuobónoun | point of view |
|  | $X$ differs <br> （from $Y=-$－зь6） | $\mathrm{Lb}_{3} \mathrm{O}$ | other |
| 9ron | nation，people |  | representative |
| узวщ๐（－১－） | all，everyone | nozoun | own |
| の304930 | character | $\begin{aligned} & 3-\nu-f_{3}-L \\ & \quad\left(3-0-j 6-9^{B}-\nu\right) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）have $X$ （inanimate） |
| 2u＠mmbu majmon | Thank God！ | 8ง6И63 3030 | difference |


| 303nmgonon | by far | vozmm | more |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| aj3jonso | sharp，cutting | 3＾＠ウゥ | than |
|  | national |  | you（will）touch $X$ |
| дзวщ๐ | old | $\mathrm{ub}[0] \mathrm{mo}$ | new |
| a¢пзбm3кıym | literary |  | dialect |
| zum＠o دдnuo | apart from this | レロッзмーм8 | you（will）study $X$ |
|  | Kartvelian（thing） | \％ubymo | Laz－Mingrelian （thing） |
| L3ubuy $^{\text {a }}$ | Svan（thing） | abmubeァmの | current，present |
| апзмппјдл | study trip | のnomfal | almost |
| ธuboz［0］mo | half | ᄂउubjon | Svanetia |
| 的mgmóno | what sort of | 2nubjzonmobu | impression |
|  | you（will）return | buymozogno | fruitful |
| ay umo | or not |  | expedition |
| lugnomm | in general |  | multi－nationhood |
|  | one of the（noun） | y＠n＠ol | greatest |
| 8u6do | treasure | эб¢๐ | must |
|  | you（will）lose $X$ |  | attention |
|  | you（will）earn $X$ |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Give（or at least try to give）the masdar plus the active，future，privative and past participles of：
（a）$\partial^{\partial m \delta}$
（d）oglos
（b） дm $_{2} \mathrm{~J}_{3}$ b
（e）ゝbbsa

（f） $\mathfrak{\partial} \mathrm{a} \circ$

2 Fill in the gaps and translate：
（a）- งో $-3^{m}-\infty-$ dm $^{m}--0$


（d） $3^{n}-\partial_{-}-{ }^{n}-y^{m} \partial_{-} 3^{m}-m_{-}$？




3 Put the correct non－finite form of the bracketed present indicative with 2nd person subject into the following sentences：








4 Express the following subordinate clauses of purpose in a non-finite manner:






 обдмею

5 Express the following clauses of time non-finitely:
 Fo $3^{6 o!}$




6 Express the following subordinate clauses non-finitely:
 stop $X$ )
 olfoz 3 mm


 œ๐змемп
7 Translate into English:





 fobsbzamem?







8 Translate into Georgian, using non-finite expressions where feasible:
(a) They say that Jesus came to save the already corrupted world. In that case why are so many nations perishing?
(b) I don't have the time today to take you to town, but I'll try to make time tomorrow to show you the recently opened exhibition.
(c) Do you have anything to do? I have to go to the library. Why? Because I have to fetch mother some books.
(d) I went to the shop at 7 o'clock to buy bread, because I had a lot of sandwiches to prepare.
(e) I'll take this to England without showing it to your boss.
(f) I lent him the book recommended by you to read, but he returned it to me without reading it.
(g) He went to the front to fight and to kill our enemies.
(h) He returned from the army without fighting and without killing anyone.

## Lesson 18

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation of the perfect of intransitive, indirect and stative verbs
- Reported speech


## Dialogue 1

Bill tells John some surprising news from Georgia about what has apparently been happening there to an old classmate of theirs - bear in mind that the conversations between John and Bill in this and the next lesson took place during the Soviet period!





```
    \g6ozob?
```








































* This verb can either be construed with the 'meeter' in the nominative and the 'met' in the dative, as here, or, to emphasise the unintentionality of the event, in reverse with

 in the Georgian Academy Dictionary, reviewers for this book rejected it in favour of the former.


## Vocabulary

| ymozomo | former, ex- | notujemugmo | classmate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -m | saying |  | intimate, close |
| змбठ○みбの | contact | gmorbje | once |
| -ajosfo | I said |  | you get married |


|  | mind reader |  | you are charmed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ᄂぃ才заубтщ | universally | длзпзими（－১－） | black－eyed |
|  | dark－skinned | 3－3м＠б－п－১ | you apparently knew／ <br> know |
|  | script |  | Great Britain |
| ง－змппб－эる（дп／дм－） | you despatch $X$ | Зกбง－з－＠－93－ก | you install yourself |
|  | September | （＠－－） |  |
| Lughorm | common |  | hostel |
|  | you begin $X$（dat．） |  | Circassian，Adyghe （thing） |
| Боззмец <br>  | instead of（＋gen．） | $\begin{aligned} & 0006 \mathrm{~b} \partial-\varrho-\rho^{\delta-o} \\ & (\varrho\lrcorner-) \end{aligned}$ | you agree |
| ambumgloza | related | amemu3umozo | speaker |
| merozo | both | Б0¢6mbn | acquaintance |
| agmbjonn | with the help of （gen．） |  | interpreter |
|  | Circassian person | しงafinbutme | unfortunately |
|  | ending | －のfm | you should say |
|  | a week today | bzomol Lipmól | a week tomorrow |
|  | long wait（ing） |  | $X$ is／will be no good |

## Dialogue 2

Bill and John continue their conversation about their mutual friend＇s amorous adventures in Georgia
 молдолдлд，的！






































## Vocabulary

|  | you contact $X$ |  | linguist |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| च-дјдм (@๐-) | you become friends with $X$ | $\log _{30} 1$ | $K G B$ |
|  [J]mo | representative |  | friendship |
| Lembyan | Sukhum | youmo | no (noun) |
|  $\jmath^{\text {B-১ (@u-) }}$ | X's heart sinks |  <br> ( $\partial m$-) | you artfully arrange $X$ |
|  | secretly |  | $X$ is arranged |

[^12]| nob＠ulpignobn | accompanied by （＋gen．） | зпбu¢๐а | almost（of some－ thing bad） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ takes place | Jminforn | wedding |
| demojón | very |  | you get poisoned （from food） |
|  | gone bad | دomog［0］60 | soured cream |
|  | $X$ is postponed | Luluo | weak |
| －м＠๐ | about |  | permission（e．g．you <br> give me（dat．） <br> permission） |
| －－be－o（zu＠u－） | you put on （ceremony）for $X$ | 紧的巡 | wedding feast |
| zonloce | next year | Logbmzingomue | to live |
| $30 \% 0$ | visa |  | acquiring |
| bootojum | legendary | Lo＠uyóno | from where（adj．） |
|  | Kartvelologist | ju3jubnjme | Caucasian （person） |
| $3 \% 0 \mathrm{LJOg}-33$ | you show the way／ | Bobu（－o－） | the one in front |
|  | set an example | ワア๐б๐（－ง－） | the one behind |
| bn＠o | bridge | ธu－のf3－งว－ก | having been said |

## Grammar

## The formation of the perfect of intransitive verbs

Intransitive verbs may be combined with just a single，nominative subject or with two arguments，namely，the nominative subject and the dative indirect object．In the various verb forms belonging to Series I and II that were exam－ ined in earlier lessons the marking of the indirect object within the verb was achieved by employing the appropriate set of agreement affixes with or without a version vowel，but without any other changes to the essential structure of the verb．Now that we have reached Series III，however，there is a sharp distinction in the basic formation depending on whether the verb is mono－ personal（i．e．has a subject only）or bipersonal（i．e．has a subject and indirect object）．

## Intransitive verbs with subject only

These all form their perfects by fusing their past participle（minus any adjec－ tive agreement ending）with the present indicative of the copula，the 3rd person singular form of which is -$\lrcorner$ ，whilst the plural is in -$\lrcorner 6$ ．There is only one complication，and this is that，when the subject is 1st person（sing．or pl．），not only is this indicated by the form of the copula，which stands at the
end of the compound，but the characteristic exponent of 1 st personhood（3－） is also placed immediately before the verb root（after any preverb（s）that may be present）．As a reminder，refer again to Lesson 17 for the formation of the past participle of the different types of verb．

If the past participle is passive in meaning，then the perfect will be the equivalent of $X$ apparently was／has been［verb］ed，whereas，if the past participle is active in meaning，the perfect will be translated as $X$ apparently （has）［verb］ed．To illustrate this opposition simultaneously with the pattern of conjugation，take the passive＠ゝ－Ұŋm－กm－○ caught，arrested and the active $\partial_{m-L-v ल-ก ~ h a v i n g ~ c o m e, ~ w h i c h ~ r e s p e c t i v e l y ~ f o r m ~ t h e ~ b a s e ~ f o r ~ t h e ~ p e r f e c t s ~}^{\text {a }}$ I（etc．）apparently was／have been caught／arrested and I apparently came／have come：

As long as one knows how to form a verb＇s past participle，one can straight－ forwardly produce the relevant intransitive perfect according to this model． The same pattern also applies to those verbs whose past participle is formed by the circumfix $\partial--ง \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{o} \mathrm{c}$ ，as may be seen by taking the participles œ๐－д－
 ৪u－д－b＠－১ল－০ having become，having grown thin，which produce the following three perfects：
zu-a-be-om-bom
子u-a-b@-um-১
8u-3-z-bए-um-zum-の

Note also the three pairs：

| 3－2－＠\％－১＜m－zom |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| I apparently stood | I apparently stood up |
| 3－д－zco－১＜n－zum | ＠－－3－д－8ए－১¢n－zum |
| I apparently was seated | I apparently sat down |
|  |  |
| 3－fmm－пм－зงм́n | ＠๐－з－8゙me－om－zum |
| I apparently was lying | $I$ apparently lay down |

## Intransitive verbs with indirect object

This construction is more complicated. This time the base is provided not by the past participle but by the masdar, regardless of which of the three intransitive formations the verb in question selects in Series I and II. Replace the masdar's final -১ with $-\infty$, to which the same endings from the copula illustrated above are added to agree with the nominative subject. Again the 1st person marker $3^{-}$-stands immediately before the root (after any preverb(s) that may be present). The object agreement affixes then combine with these indicators of subject according to the basic patterns discussed in Lesson 6. To illustrate let us take the masdar of give (with 3rd person indirect object)
 give us the following perfect conjugation:

|  | I apparently was/have been given to $X$ (sing./pl.) |
| :---: | :---: |
| an-L-0-うる-п-bum | you apparently were/have been given to $X$ (sing./pl.) |
|  | $X$ apparently was/has been given to $Y$ |
|  | we apparently were/have been given to $X$ (sing./pl.) |
|  | you (pl.) apparently were/have been given to $X$ (sing./pl.) |
|  | they apparently were/have been given to $X$ (sing./pl.) |

Let us now observe the effect of altering the person (and number) of the indirect object, remembering that for this verb the preverb $\partial_{n}$ - yields to $\partial_{m}$ - when the indirect object is either 1st or 2 nd person:



```
    (b) we apparently were/have been given to you (sing./pl.)
```






When the indirect object is 3 rd person plural and the subject 3rd person singular, the pluralising suffix -o is, in fact, optional. This model is rigidly followed, and so only a few examples will be offered, though each type of verb will be covered. The masdar is presented first, and after each example the equivalent aorist indicative is placed in brackets.

## Root verbs








What misfortune has apparently come crashing down upon

（Note that either of the two masdars can be selected as base in Series III for this biper－ sonal intransitive．）
＠๐－86（－） 〇3－ง scatter／confuse $\rightarrow$


＠๐－ $\mathrm{KR}(-)_{\jmath} 6$－ง remain to $\rightarrow$

That people was apparently left with no one to carry on／continue


## Verbs in－eb

＠๐－bっ＠－9B－ง give birth to $\rightarrow$

A handsome lad was apparently born to your wife yesterday（＠৩－৩－১৩ৎ－৩）
3－－Fionc－うる－ง redden $\rightarrow$



＠u－レがゥ－っる－ง（make）attend $\rightarrow$



## Verbs in－av

＠っ－Duल－3－ง hide $\rightarrow$

The children apparently hid／have hidden from their mothers（＠u－〕－дงм－бうб）
дп－ $33^{\text {rn－ง }}$ attach firmly to $\rightarrow$

Maia apparently attached herself like glue to her parents in alarm


## Verbs in－i

$3 \cup(\partial m)-a^{8} \Delta_{3} 6-ง$ send （here）$\rightarrow$



```
ди-bや-мд-ง become \(\rightarrow\)
```




## Verbs in－ob

```
@--om-mる-ง make/get drunk \(\rightarrow\)
```




```
дм-L3-м3-ง ruin \(\rightarrow\)
```




```
    (дм-д-э-しろ-м)
```


## Verbs in－am

bu\％nL zu－L－д－ง stress $\rightarrow$


This section closes with a few examples that do not fit into the above list：

```
8ง-y-moु-ง divide \(\rightarrow\)
```












```
дм-ззе-мд-ง die \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    Our grandmother has not yet died (дм-з3-0-з3@-১)
дп-зе-мд-ь sit at \(\rightarrow\)
```




```
\(\mathrm{am}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{l}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}\)-ง come \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    A lot of money has apparently come to you
```


 subjunctive $=\partial m-z-n-3 n \varrho-m @-\Omega-\downarrow$ ；aorist $=\partial m-z-n-3_{n} @-১ ;$ aorist subjunctive $=\partial m-z-n-$ 3ヵœ－の－し．）
＠ー－3กウーラ－3－ऽ promise $\rightarrow$

The president apparently promised his own son a high post（＠u－3－3nセ－＠－৩）
The verb realise，behaves the same way as promise when it is combined with

 o））．However，when there is only a single dative object，the IIIrd Series forms are based on the past participle（e．g． 30 m $\partial 0-3-\partial-b_{3} \varrho-\Delta$ m -30 m yơmmun



 on a tree，where，however，we note the object is in the dative）．

There are a few intransitive verbs that imply the presence of an indirect object in Series I and II，even though no such indirect object is actually present．Such verbs in Series III behave like normal monopersonal intransi－ tives with subject only，e．g．：

The woman will flop／flopped down on the bed
compared with

The woman apparently flopped down on the bed
Some verbs of this type may be used mono－or bipersonally．In Series III their shape will be determined accordingly，e．g．：


became slack on the turkey（пБœuymo）
compared with

The instrument string（ $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{\partial}_{\circ}$ ）will become／became／apparently became slack
Medials with bivalent intransitive forms in Series I and II tend to use their transitive forms in the perfect（and indeed throughout Series III）in associa－ tion with a suitable postposition governing what in Series I and II was their


to/played with you apparently). However, should a preverb be used with such intransitives, the perfect (along with the other IIIrd Series forms) is produced

 the butterfly will begin $\rightarrow$ apparently began to play around the candle). With the latter formation in $0^{-}$- compare the suffixal intransitive form seen in $\jmath_{\mathrm{mol}} \mathrm{Lmb}$
 $\rightarrow$ apparently played across the face of Eliso (dat.), for which intransitive

 Eliso (dat.), though in this case the perfect is transformed in the usual way



## The formation of the perfect of indirect verbs

Indirect verbs form their perfects in exactly the same way as intransitive verbs with subject and indirect object. The only difference is that, since the dative nominal is here the subject and the nominative nominal the direct object, when the dative nominal is 3 rd person plural and the nominative nominal is 3 rd person (sing. or pl. ), the verbal element $-\infty$ that marks the plurality of the dative nominal is always used. In contrast, the plurality of a 3rd person nominative nominal is never indicated. The only difficulty is knowing the correct form of the masdar from which the perfect (and Series III as a whole) is produced for indirect verbs. Study these examples:



```
    The woman loves/will love/loved/apparently loved me
```



```
    You will fall/fell/apparently fell in love with me
\(y\)-мм-ь have (something animate):
```



```
    The king has/will have/had/apparently had me as a slave (дmбu)
fm6-ь have (something inanimate):
```



```
    The neighbours have/will have/had/apparently had a big house
(дм-)しд(-) \()^{\text {б-ь hear: }}\)
```



```
    summbu
    The city dweller (fomっłృm○) hears/will hear/heard/apparently heard the
```



```
Бœ(-)мд-ง want ( \(\partial\) м-бœ(-)мд-っる-ง conceive a wish):
```



```
    You want/will want/wanted/apparently wanted a new suit (ృmしうのうるの)
```





```
    Englishmen do/will/did/apparently did not like grits (œलдก)
```




```
    You hate/will hate/hated/apparently hated me
```


You will come/did come/apparently came to hate me

The verb $\lrcorner-b し(-)_{m_{3}}-\backslash X$ remembers $Y$ does not exist in either the IInd or IIIrd Series，though there are near equivalents for both $X$ stays in $Y$＇s memory and $X$ comes into $Y$＇s mind：



```
That night stayed/apparently stayed in the students' memory
```



```
That night came/apparently came into the students' minds
```

Some other formations for indirect verbs are：

| L－O゙3n3－u | $X$ has pain in $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ will get a pain in $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will start to feel cold | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| $\partial_{m-203-@-9 ~}^{\text {－}}$ | $X$ will get hungry | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will get thirsty | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| L－Zの年－＠－98－0 | $X$ needs $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| L－dn6－১3－L | $X$ is asleep | $\rightarrow$ | L－dn6－9b－0－১ |
| 3－m3nd－oz－L | $X$ is awake | $\rightarrow$ | 3－mbnd－ab－n－u |
|  | $X$ is possible for $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | $\mathrm{m}_{0}-\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{dm}-9 \mathrm{~m}-0-0$ |
| －3－3m－0－0 | X lacks $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | $3-$ зm－3b－n－u |
|  | $X$ forgets $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will feel fear | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will feel hot | $\rightarrow$ | ＠－－L－osb－ma－o－u |
|  | $X$ will come to miss $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ | 2m－6ughm－9 ${ }^{\text {b－n－u }}$ |
|  | $I$ will feel ashamed | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will come to pity $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| リ－330ヶn－L | $X$ is surprised at $Y$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |

The verb for to know belongs here in respect of its Series III formation．In the present sub－series it is odd insofar as its subject stands in the ergative， while its object is nominative．In the future sub－series we saw that it behaves like an indirect verb with dative subject and nominative object．The verb does not exist in Series II．Its perfect（and in general Series III）formation continues the pattern of the future sub－series and is based on the masdar $\jmath^{\mathrm{m}}$ ¢ 6 －ь knowing， knowledge to produce the declension：

| д－＜m＠б－0－ง | I apparently knew | 83－3m＠6－o－১ | we |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3－0м＠б－0－ง | you | 3－3m＠6－0－৩－の | you（pl．） |
| L－3м＠6－0－ง | $X$ ． |  | they |

## The structure of the perfect for stative verbs

We saw in Lesson 13 that a peculiarity of the small class of stative verbs is that，whether or not an indirect object is combined with them，their structure （especially in the future sub－series and in Series II）implies the presence of one．As far as the perfect（and Series III as a whole）is concerned，their shape is determined by whether such an indirect object is actually present or not． If they have subject only，they behave like simple intransitive verbs and use the past participle combined with the copula．Such perfects never incorporate a preverb but otherwise usually resemble the intransitive perfect for the verb root concerned．Some verbs，however，add the thematic suffix－ $0^{8-}$ and build the past participle accordingly（i．e．by using the participial ending－vलー）．For example，（＠u－）১－fiy－mb you（will）put／arrange（plural）$X$ in some order has the intransitive perfect＠๐－ßy－mb－пм－ง they have been arranged in order apparently，and the stative - fey $_{3}-0-ง$ they are arranged has the perfect $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{y}}$－ mb－пм－১．On the other hand，（＠u－）ogl－১з you（will）sow $X$ has the intransitive perfect＠৬－のgl－oल－৩ X has apparently been sown，whereas the stative form


If the construction involves an indirect object，then the relevant perfect is built on the masdar in the same way as the root in question will form the perfect for its intransitive plus indirect object，minus（of course）the preverb． Again，though，a number of roots add the thematic suffix－ $\mathrm{o}^{\delta-}$ ．For example，

 $\checkmark$ ค0збjor The woman has her books arranged in order has the perfect focm


 author＇s picture is painted on the cover（y＠）of the book has the perfect


The perfects for all the other statives listed in Lesson 13 that possess Series III forms are listed below $[(M)=$ monopersonal form，$(B)=$ bipersonal form $]$ ：

| be suspended | ＝ | （M） |  | （B） | $3-3 n ¢-0^{8-n-0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| be tied up |  | （M） | 3－д－ッмை－১ | （B） | 3－১－0－৩ |
| think something |  | （B） | 3－8m6－9 ${ }^{8-0-0}$ |  |  |
| be sorted out |  | （M） |  | （B） | muz－j8－0－0 |
| be lit |  | （M） |  | （B） |  |
| hold something |  | （B） | 3ym－m8－n－0 |  |  |
| hold something |  | （B） | し－马すm－0－৩ |  |  |
| hold something |  | （B） | $3-33_{3}-0_{8-0-0}$ |  |  |
| be involved |  | （M） |  | （B） | $n(-) 03-0-0$ |
| be called something |  | （B） |  |  |  |
| wear something |  | （B） | し－く－১－ก－১ |  |  |
| be written |  | （M） |  | （B） | U－90が－93－0－0 |
| wear headgear |  | （B） | （3－）6yym－9 ${ }^{\text {－}}$ |  |  |
| be lying |  | （M） | ¢－9る－у¢－১， | （B） | L－e－9b－n－৩ |

## Reported speech

One can report words or thoughts in Georgian in the same way as English， i．e．by altering the tense of the verb and other features of the original to fit the requirements of the sentence into which it is being fitted．Such＇indirect speech＇is introduced by кл（ $\partial$ ），e．g．：


```
Tell your mother that you will meet her at 3 o'clock
```



```
I told the woman that I would help her
(Georgian uses the conditional)
```



```
We said, didn't we, that we were hot?
(Georgian has the imperfect)
```


You told us, didn't you, that you had killed the thief?
(Georgian uses either the aorist or pluperfect)

They were thinking that the ice cream would be tasty
(Georgian has the conditional)

However，the preferred way of reporting speech in Georgian，especially in the spoken language，is to repeat the actual words or thoughts of the original in association with one of three specific speech particles，a sort of verbal equivalent to the quotation－marks of writing．

[^13]
## Speech particles

 two tend to be used only once per sentence and attach to the final word of it (usually the verb); when written, they are preceded by a hyphen. The third particle tends to be suffixed to each major constituent of the sentence and, when written, is not accompanied by a hyphen. Prescriptively at least, no $m_{m}(\partial)$ is used in these cases. Note that these three particles, when attached, do not affect the position of the stress on the word.

Strictly speaking the particle $-\infty \mathrm{fm}_{\mathrm{m}}$ is used only when the person being spoken to is being told what words he is to repeat to some third party. The first example given above fits this definition and so would colloquially be expressed as:

The second particle is only used when a 1 st person singular subject is repeating his or her own words or thoughts. However, -œfm is also possible in such contexts (especially in the speech of speakers from western Georgia). And so a more colloquial way of expressing the second example above would be:


```
I told the woman that I would help her
(lit. I shall help you, saying)
```

In all other cases it is the third particle that is used; it is normally present when proverbs are quoted. When the introductory verb has a 1st person plural subject, however, -ヵfjm may again be used (especially in western Georgia) in place of $-m$. The remaining three examples given above would thus, colloquially, become:


```
We said, didn't we, that we were hot (lit. we are hot, saying)
```



```
You told us, didn't you, that you had killed the thief?
(lit. I killed him, saying)
```



```
They were thinking that the ice cream would be tasty
(lit. it will be, saying/thinking)
```

Direct quotation is widely used in Georgian, and readers will find it very useful as a means of avoiding more complicated syntactic constructions. For example, expressions of fearing are easily handled this way - simply imagine a suitable form for the fear as originally conceived and/or verbalised, and use that in association with the appropriate particle:

We were very afraid that war would soon begin
(lit. let not a war begin, saying)


```
We were very afraid that war would soon begin
(lit. woe if (3०n-\inftyy) a war will soon begin, saying)
```



```
Are you afraid that I won't build the house on time for you?
```



```
us the house on time!' saying?)
```



```
Are you afraid concerning me, 'Woe if he will not build for us the house
on time!' saying?
```

Direct quotation is also found sometimes where one might have expected a clause indicating an intention (cf. Lesson 14 and Lesson 16), e.g.:



```
The travellers lay down on the grass in order to rest there before continuing their journey (lit. let us rest here and then let us continue our journey, saying!)
```

Compare the following three examples with variants presented in Lesson 16:


```
Who asked the soldiers to cast down their weapons?
(lit. cast down your weapons, saying!)
```



```
Father advised us not to sow this field today
(lit. do not sow it! saying)
```





```
I command you not to steal silver any more from the priest, as yesterday
I commanded you not to steal gold from the watchmaker
```

And finally note the following, where the listener has to deduce the precise relationship between the main clause and the direct quotation, as the syntax does not make this clear in the Georgian:


```
@๐-д-п-бЈ6-m-L-м!
The lad secretly put into his pocket the money left on the table in the hope
that no one would notice him
(lit. may no one notice me, saying!)
```


## Dialogue 3

Sam, a foreign student of Georgian, Sam, tells another student, Ted, of an amusing incident during their latest lecture, which Ted missed





















































## Vocabulary

| mafono | lecture | mofommo | lecturer |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠o－0a（＠u－） | you put $X$ on／ place $X$ standing |  | infectious |
|  | illness |  | you announce $X$ |
|  | infectious illnesses in childhood | $\begin{gathered} \text { absom-mb } \\ \left(\circ-\jmath^{3}\right) \end{gathered}$ | you discuss |
|  | widespread | foogmo（－ง－） | measles |
|  | chickenpox |  | whooping cough |
|  | smallpox | funconvos | scarlet fever |
|  | $X$ is（was，was apparently） noticeable on $Y$ | б๐yzuzomu＇mo | smallpox scars |
| gmon งวuozzu์n | one of these | い－子on－l（perfect <br>  | $X$ suffers from $Y$ |
|  | $X$ transfers to you | buaдumo（－u－）｜ <br>  | joke－loving／witty－ tongued |
| $9-b y y m-0^{3-0^{1}}$ | you（will）joke |  | you join $X$ |
| ydı | serf | ठงภูм6－yдmठง | feudalism |
|  | X bursts out | ＠umbu\％ | hall |

1 Compare $\wp 0-\jmath-b y \partial \mathrm{~m}_{\text {－}} \mathrm{g}^{8-0}$ you will have a little joke with $X$ ．

| byámmorn bu\％nuo\％ | in the mood for a joke | 2bммmmmznon | singular |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | meant | dinuzmeronom | plural |
|  | you mix $X$ up | Lumg［0］mo | amazing |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { avinn-u3 } \\ & \left(\partial_{n}-/ \partial m-\right) \end{aligned}$ | you address $X$ |  | you assign $X$ to $Y /$ categorise $X$ as $Y$ |
|  | terrifying |  | AIDS |
|  | Westerner |  | informed |
|  | dangerous |  | homosexual（male） |
| y－3 $0^{\text {m－n（0－）}}$ | you innoculate $X$ <br> （ind．obj．）against $Y$ <br> （dir．obj．） | ag＠umo | mistaken |
| zuadmgmbu | resistance | －－3 $3^{\text {m－0 }}$ | vaccinating |
|  | introducing |  | discrimination |
|  <br> Bymo／ bméngjubaymo | realised，made flesh | зuдmbu®̧u | representation |
|  | woman，female | 2ıaıjugn | man，male |
|  | amazed | gylubuanun | relevant，appropriate |
| L－dj6（＠u－） | you add $X$ to what has been said |  | you enrich $X$ for $Y$ |
| aumuzo | stock |  | you（will）present $X$ to $Y$ |
| byam－mb（ $0--0^{3 /}$ <br>  | you joke（／you will have a little joke） | U3jornumgén | special |
|  | prepared |  | serum |
|  | you inject $X$ for $Y$ | $0-00 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{o}^{8}(\mathrm{u})$ | you ward off $X$ |
| コッロ゙ッチก | spot | 子uдm－z－u－ym－n－l | it breaks／will break out on you |
| зงдм－6ง－yงm－0 | rash | mbgno ${ }^{1}$ <br>  | damned |

## Proverb


If you have not eaten garlic，why does your mouth stink？

VOCABULARY

| ovo | if | 6nmmo（－3－） | garlic |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 308 | you（will）eat $X$ | 30促 | mouth |
| mo＠ | for what？／why？ | 3－0－yom－l | it stinks for you |

[^14]
## Prose text

This is the beginning of the story＇I See the Sun＇by one of the most popular writers of the 1970s，Nodar Dumbadze

|  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |
|  <br>  |  |  |  |
|  <br>  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  <br>  |  |  |  |
|  <br> －bmbm，bм <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| әуฆдณз๐． $3^{\text {mob }}$ |  |  |  |
|  <br>  |  |  |  |
|  Bob <br>  <br>  |  |  |  |
| VOCABULARY |  |  |  |
|  | you（will）see $X$ | ${ }^{2} \%^{2}$ | sun |
| јubつab［0］mo | white cherry | bajen | dry |
| ठmon | branc | วงว［ง］ल० | mal |
| Bbomonz | thrush |  | you are（will be） sitting |
| do | so | zum－mb（ $0--\mathrm{g}^{8}$ ） | you（will）sing |
| วงวп＠ | uncle | しofaj | work |
| ougl（＠u－） $0-63^{3-0}$ | you（will）abandon $X$ |  | 3－footed |
| Ljoon |  | $9^{8 \% m}$ |  |
|  | you（will）bring $X$ out | （＠u－）¢－0－ | you（will）sit down |


| しるృ6ง（＠） | （to）hearing，listening | －－ $\mathrm{fa}_{3}(-) \mathrm{OB}^{-0}$ | you（will）turn |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| змпб¢［0］mo | ryegrass | （œ）－） $3^{-\jmath^{8-ก}}$ | you（will）lie down |
| пзコеп | eye | （＠u－）6．yz－u3 | you（will）close $X$ |
|  | without taking a breath | 3 ¢¢ | heart |
| bau | sound，voice | （0－） $0-y_{m m}-0^{3}$ | you（will）make $X$ follow $Y$ |
|  | you（will）try（to X） | lughonfous（n－－j8） | you（will）breathe |
| 30＠mg（om） | until | Lugmb（am－）n－のf3－uд | you（will）take a deep breath |
| レッбの¢f30 | breath |  | $X$ is（will be） enough for you |
| зu8ammue | sustainedly |  | you（will）whistle |
| ○ว3numo | rare |  | you（will）pause |
| Rodug［u］mo | descending | $-39^{6}$ | toward（＋gen．） |
| 3u－n－bje－u3 | you will look out | －03 | as before |
| （zu5－）- － $\mathrm{m}^{\text {did－m3 }}$ | you（will）continue $X$ | しઠзэб๐ | whistling |
|  | copper | cubz［0］mo | tray |
| fon［0］mo | red |  | enormous |
| \％๐6ठの | slothful | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ho-œo-b-o-k } \\ & (\text { ho-b-3um) } \end{aligned}$ | you（will）do down |
| Fuemo | flat shore | ＠u8блуме | strewn |
| Lmoz［j］me | village | 3036mo | fire |
|  | you will set（fire） $\text { to } X$ |  | you（will）come to stand over $X$ （dat．） |
| $3 \mathrm{mou} \mathrm{c}^{(0)}$ | someone | 7naz［0］ mon | gate |
|  | you（will）stop $X$ | Bn7\％ | lad |
| ubmo | now | च－dub－o（＠u－y－dub－əz） | you（will）call to $X$ |
|  | guest |  | you will come in |
| 8u－L－dub－9 | you will shout out $\text { to } X$ | эjaıymozomm | dissatisfied |
| $80-9 m-x c^{-9-9}$ | you will sit up | 3 ¢nozucono | brigadier，team leader |
|  | Good day to you！ |  | you（will）greet $X$ over here |
| $30-3-0-\partial \cos ^{2}-m-\mathrm{l}$ | Good day to you in reply！ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 3-3دbugb-mb } \\ & \quad\left(y-3 \Delta b y b-0^{B}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）reply to $X$ |
| （0－）es－03－0 | you（will）stand up | Luaqu自gymm | kitchen |
|  | you（will）lead $X$ into |  | you will take a quick lie down |
|  | you（will）await $X$ | ¢m＠or | when |
| （＠）－）- －8y－9 | you（will）begin $X$ | กั3 | as before |


| omom | no longer |  | you（will）go in |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| momozo | something |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you (will) say } X \\ & \text { to } Y \end{aligned}$ |
| （zu－）Ruyd－e－jb－o | you（will）fall silent | убдм＠ | silently |
| 2ubben | knee | ${ }^{\text {bomo }}$ | hand |
|  | $X$ wraps（will wrap） around for you | 3yb［0］mon | stove |
| Roģánoुmпmn | turned to ash | 60330 mh／ob［0］mo | ember |
| Ro－b－ofjom－n | you look down at $X$ | jolo | pouch |
|  | you（will）lift X up | $8 \mathrm{c}^{3} \mathrm{O}$ | pocket |
|  | tobacco | （80－） $0-\mathrm{b}_{3}(-)_{03}$ | you（will）roll $X$ |
| （＠）－$n-6 \times 2-y^{3-n}$ | you（will）bend down |  | in flame，lighted |
| － Ofibo $^{\text {a }}$ | splinter of wood | （80－） $0-3 \mathrm{~mm}-3^{3}$ | you（will）smoke $X$ |
| moubo | room | aymomo | foul |
| じう6o | smell，stench |  | you（will）swirl around |

## Exercises

1 Write out the perfect paradigms for the following：
I（etc．）apparently（have）hid（den）；I（etc．）apparently（have）hid（den） from X
I（etc．）apparently（have）stood up；I（etc．）apparently began／have begun［stepped into］X
I（etc．）apparently（have）felt hot
X apparently（has）had me（etc．）
2 Fill in the gaps and translate：








3 Transpose the following present indicative verb forms into their perfect equivalents：









4 Transpose the following sentences with aorist indicative verb forms into their perfect equivalents:

 (= of you (pl.))







5 Given the following transitive perfects, transform them into the equivalent (a) monopersonal intransitive and (b), bipersonal intransitive perfects, after the model of:

 apparently was/has been built for us









6 Give the colloquial forms for the following examples of reported speech:









7 Translate into English:















8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) What they say is apparently true - what lovely daughters you and your wife seem to have. Congratulations!
(b) I thought my husband (to be) a good man, but it seems I (have) married a thief!
(c) Nene, tell your friend that you will only marry him if he abandons drinking.
(d) That girl has apparently fallen in love with me. This is the reason that she no longer leaves me alone.
(e) While I was still ( $=$ ๙ $^{(n)} z^{\circ} \varrho 93$ ) in England, my teacher told me that I would like being in Georgia. And evidently you have liked it. Yes, I have [ $=$ do like it].
(f) How thin those girls seem to have grown! Apparently some misfortune has befallen them.
(g) I thought I had the key in my pocket, but apparently I don't have it with me.
(h) How difficult the introduction of vaccination for [lit. of] smallpox seems to have been!

## Lesson 19

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The pluperfect of intransitive, indirect and stative verbs
- Forming clauses introduced by the conjunctions before and until
- Some patterns of word formation


## Dialogue 1

John and Bill go over some of the same ground they discussed in Dialogue 1, Lesson 18















дим










 @っjbræjon ozo?







## Vocabulary

| 3๑@(\%) | before, while, until | วงธงว | till then |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Luбua | until, while, before |  | boiling |
|  | drink server | -3nom | like* |
| 3<ndu6-9! | speak! | зпбழymo | Hindi |
|  | India |  | still |
| -fuýnombu | there(ness) | Bobn | rule |
| วృレงбกวбงзก | wonderful |  | convinced, sure |
| उmámön | evil | Lubomaforim | empire |
| oुucuminom | diarrhoea | 3 ว) | stomach |
|  | $X$ becomes loose for $Y$ |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

Two lads, Archil and Bak'ur, play a little game of imagination













```
        зп дбубмщо.
```








## Vocabulary

| кппzmeno | what sort of (adj.) |  | silly (of things) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| alubnmon | actor |  | first-born |
|  | computer |  | you travel |
|  | you part from $X$ | งoुLuyl! | Oops! Darn it! |

## Grammar

## The formation of the pluperfect of intransitive verbs

The pluperfect of monopersonal intransitives is formed quite simply from the perfect by replacing the present forms of the copula with those of the aorist (which, of course, is the only past tense form that this verb possesses). The only slightly unexpected feature is that, when the subject is 1 st person (sing. or pl.), the agreement affix for 1st personhood ( $\left(_{3}\right.$ ) is absent from the copular ending, although it is retained before the root, just as in the perfect. The conjugational pattern can be illustrated for the two verbs conjugated at the start of the grammar section in Lesson 18, which respectively mean I (etc.) had been caught/arrested and I had come:

```
@Ј-з-30-пмм-пудзп
```




@๐-3-まる

The same is naturally true of those verbs whose past participle is formed by means of the circumfix $\partial--\mathrm{om} / \mathrm{om}$ ，as may be seen by taking again the parti－
 having got drunk，and zu－д－bœ－৩（n－ก having become，having grown thin，which produce the following three pluperfects：





```
@っ-д-b
```





@๐-д-шз
@)-3-д-のzin-৩m-nyozo-n


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 8u-3-д-b@-um-oyozo }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 子u-a-bや-১мーпум } \\
& \text { 8u-z-д-bए-u(n-oyozo-の } \\
& \text { zu-a-bœo-um-oyozo-m }
\end{aligned}
$$

The pluperfects for the following three pairs are normal too： $3^{-2-@ 8-0 \text {－n－nyozo }}$





When it comes to the pluperfect of intransitive verbs with a dative indi－ rect object，readers＇expectations will be dashed！It will useful to refer to the section on intransitive verbs in Lesson 14 in considering the formation about to be described．Take the masdar－based perfect，as described in Lesson 18， and remove both the copular endings and the preceding $n$－vowel．In place of this－- －add the suffix－m＠－，to which the same agreement endings are attached as are employed in the imperfect indicative（or，of course，the conditional）． Recall that an $m$－vowel，as here，causes an immediately preceding -3 －to disap－ pear from the thematic suffix or end of the verb root．To illustrate，let us again take the masdar of give（with 3rd person indirect object）$=\partial_{n-(\zeta-\partial \partial-\Omega \text { ，}}$ which，if we keep the object constant，will give us the following pluperfect conjugation：

|  | I had been given to $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: |
| дп－L－৫－əд－m＠－ก | you had been given to $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| дп－レ－ъ－วд－м＠－৩ | $X$ had been given to $Y$ |
| дп－3－u－ว ${ }^{\text {a－m＠－n－п }}$ | we had been given to $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | you（pl．）had been given to $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| дп－レ－ъ－วд－м＠－б〕б | they had been given to $X$（sing．／pl．） |

Let us now observe the effect of altering the person（and number）of the indirect object，not forgetting that for this verb the preverb $\partial_{\circ}$－yields to $\partial_{m}$－ when the indirect object is either 1st or 2nd person：

| дм－з－ひ－วд－м＠－ก | I had been given to you |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | （a）I had been given to you（pl．）， <br> （b）we had been given to you（sing．／pl．） |
| дm－д－ひ－วд－m＠－ก－の | you（pl．）had been given to me |
|  | you（pl．）had been given to us |
| дп－L－ひ－ว ${ }^{\text {a－m＠－৩（－ヵ）}}$ | $X$ had been given to them |
| дм－з－๐－วд－м＠－бјб | they had been given to you（sing．／pl．） |

Essentially the same series of examples as was presented in Lesson 18 is now repeated with the verbs transposed from perfect to pluperfect．

## Root verbs




```
    A letter had been written to the women yesterday compared with
```



```
    A letter had been written to us yesterday
```




```
    What misfortune had come crashing down upon our family!
@--36(-)э3-ง scatter/confuse }
```



```
    The travellers had lost their way
@--{ん(-)„б-ь remain to }
```



```
    That people had been left with no one to carry on/extend the race
```


## Verbs in－eb

```
@๐-১ง@-つる-ง give birth to \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    A handsome lad had been born to your wife
```




```
    The foreigners' cheeks had suddenly turned red
@ー-レ円の-っる-ง (make) attend \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    We had not attended the conference
```


## Verbs in -av

@๐-дьм-3-ง hide $\rightarrow$

The children had hidden from their mothers'
дم- $33^{\text {rn- }}$ attach firmly to $\rightarrow$

Maia had attached herself like glue to her parents in alarm

## Verbs in -i



Hadn't the cheque been sent to you (pl.)?
дง-ьœ-мд-ь become $\rightarrow$

Your guest had become ill on the way

## Verbs in -ob

@u-om-mb-১ make/get drunk $\rightarrow$

Eliso's husband had got very drunk
am-l3-mz-ง ruin $\rightarrow$

My joy had been thoroughly ruined

## Verbs in -am

bu\%nL zu-L-д-৩ stress $\rightarrow$

It was precisely this fact which had been stressed
子ง-y-моु-ง divide $\rightarrow$

The property left in the will had been divided down the middle between the two daughters


You had married an idiot



I had never met a dragon

```
дм-ззए-мд-ь die \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    Our grandmother had not died
дп-зए-мд-ь sit at \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    The foreigner had sat down at the table early
\(\partial_{m}-\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}\)-ง come \(\rightarrow\)
    вдз
    A lot of money had come to you
@๐-3กగの-ラ8-ऽ promise \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
    The president had promised his own son a high post
```



```
    I had been unable to grasp your heart's desire compared with
```



```
    I had not realised the full meaning of the boss's words
```



```
    The woman had flopped down on the bed
```



```
    The twine bound to its feet had become slack on the turkey compared with
```



```
    The instrument string had become slack
```


## The formation of the pluperfect of indirect verbs

The pluperfects of indirect verbs are formed from their perfects in exactly the same way as the pluperfects of intransitive verbs with dative indirect object are formed from their perfects．The examples presented in Lesson 18 are now transformed into their respective pluperfects：


```
    fomb 3-y30毎-98-м@-0
    The woman had loved me compared with
```



```
    You had fallen in love with me
    y-м<<-ง have (something animate) }
    \partial\jmathoु刀二 дmбь@ 3-y-mल-м@-п
    The king had had me as a slave
```

Amб－ง have（something inanimate）$\rightarrow$

The neighbours had had a big house

If I had had loose change（bum＠o），I would have changed（to loose change）

（ам－）اд（－）$)_{\text {„б－ง hear } \rightarrow}$

The city dweller had heard the singing／warbling of the nightingale for the first time
бœ（－）мд－ง want（дм－бœ（－）мд－лठ－ง conceive a wish）$\rightarrow$

You had wanted a new suit


The Englishmen had not liked grits

3－dyल－əb－м＠－ก
You had hated me compared with

You had come to hate me

That night had stayed in the students＇memory compared with

That night had come into the students＇minds

## Some other formations for indirect verbs

|  | $X$ has pain in $Y \rightarrow$ | L－Os $(-)^{7} \mathrm{~L}$－м＠－১ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $X$ will get a pain in $Y \rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will start to feel cold $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $X$ will get hungry |  |
|  | $X$ will get thirsty |  |
|  | $X$ needs $Y$ |  |
| L－дп6－зз－し | $X$ is asleep | L－dn6－9 ${ }^{\text {b－m＠－ゝ }}$ |
| 3－m3nd－－3－L | $X$ is awake | 3－¢3nd－つb－m＠－৩ |
| º－v－dm－0－u $^{0}$ | $X$ is possible for $Y$ |  |
| －3－3m－0－o | $X$ lacks $Y$ | $3-3 \mathrm{~m}^{3}-\jmath^{3-m @-১}$ |
|  | $X$ forgets $Y$ |  |
|  | $X$ will feel fear |  |
| ＠u－L－036－9－－ | $X$ will feel hot |  |
|  | $X$ will come to miss $Y \rightarrow$ |  |





## The formation of the pluperfect for stative verbs

Both mono－and bipersonal statives form their pluperfects from their perfects according to the appropriate pattern from the two outlined above．The statives given in Lesson 18 have the following pluperfects：

| be arranged | $\rightarrow$ | （M） By －mठ－пмп－пум | （B） | L－$-8 y$－mb－мœ－৩ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| be sown | $\rightarrow$ |  | （B） | L－agl－gb－m＠－১ |
| be painted | $\rightarrow$ |  | （B） |  |
| be suspended | $\rightarrow$ |  | （B） |  |
| be tied up | $\rightarrow$ | （M）3－д－у¢－กym | （B） | 3－д－м＠－১ |
| think something | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |  |
| be sorted out | $\rightarrow$ |  | （B） | ¢っz－sb－m＠－u |
| be lit | $\rightarrow$ | （M）6ヵ－${ }^{\text {b－ym－пym }}$ | （B） | 6on－03－m＠－ゝ |
| hold something | $\rightarrow$ | （B） 3 ¢ $n$－mb－m＠－0 |  |  |
| hold something | $\rightarrow$ | （B） 6 －$\ddagger 0$ m－m＠－৩ |  |  |
| hold something | $\rightarrow$ | （B）3－ $33^{-58-m @-১}$ |  |  |
| be involved | $\rightarrow$ | （M）m（－）$\square-\boldsymbol{\square} \mathrm{m}$－пум | （B） |  |
| be called something | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |  |
| wear something | $\rightarrow$ | （B）L－৫－る－m＠－৩ |  |  |
| be written | $\rightarrow$ |  | （B） |  |
| wear headgear | $\rightarrow$ | （B）（3－）6．y |  |  |
| be lying | $\rightarrow$ |  | （B） | L－＠－л3－m＠－৩ |

## Clauses introduced by the conjunctions before and until

In Lesson 9 we learnt that the expression while was conveyed by use of either
 ings before and until，but the overall syntax of the sentences is different in each of the three cases．For the meaning to be while the verb form had to be one that indicated an ongoing activity．For the other two senses a number of variations are possible，but only the main constructions will be described here．The ordering of clauses is free．

## Until

If the main clause contains a negative (not), the until clause will also contain one. Place the verb of the subordinate clause in the future indicative, if the main clause contains a future or represents a negative command, e.g.:


```
He will not go to the cinema until he finishes (lit. will finish) tomorrow's
(bзuмпБ@уmп) lesson
```



```
Don't leave the house until your mother rings (lit. will ring) you
```

Place the verb of the subordinate clause in the aorist indicative, if the main clause contains either an aorist or perfect, e.g.:


```
He couldn't/apparently couldn't go to the cinema until he (had) finished
tomorrow's lesson
```

Place the verb of the subordinate clause in the conditional, if the main clause contains the conditional, e.g.:

He would not have gone to the cinema yesterday until he had prepared (lit. would
have prepared) today's (œмэзьбழ๐м๐) lesson

Even if the main clause does not contain a negative, the subordinate clause may still contain one alongside the future indicative (when reference is to the future) or aorist indicative (when reference is to the past); in this latter instance, the subordinate clause may contain a non-negated conditional, e.g.:


```
We shall remain seated here until you change (lit.: will (not) change)
((z~дм)п-(зल-^) your clothes
```



```
We remained seated here until the girl changed her clothes
```



```
з"дмпозмп@ь
```


## Before

When reference is to the future, the subordinate clause contains the future subjunctive; when reference is to the past, the subordinate clause contains the conditional, e.g.:


Before we go to the cinema, let's snatch a little ((उmos) to eat!

We shall wash our hands before we have dinner

Before we went to the cinema，we snatched a little to eat

We washed our hands before we had dinner

My sister died before I was born
The postposition－д＠๐ governing the masdar in the adverbial case（the adver－ bial case＇s final－œ dropping before the postposition）may be used with both meanings until and before，the context determining which is the appropriate rendition into English，e．g．：

My sister died before I was born
＠っзロ
We washed our hands before dining
（Note：before dinner would be зubəるっд＠っ）．

We remained seated here until the girl changed her clothes
（lit．up to the changing of clothes by the girl）

He will not go to the cinema until he finishes tomorrow＇s lesson

## Some patterns of word formation

| 29－－〕 | derives agent nouns from noun bases <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| дm－－ə | is similar to the above（e．g．४งбyn rebellion $\rightarrow$ дm̧งбy॰ insurgent） |
|  | is similar again；the second suffix is used if the root contains an $-r_{-}$（e．g．dydvy breast $\rightarrow$ ajdudyno giver（or sucker）of the breast， <br>  |
| 2〕－－э＠－○ | produces fractions，though $\mathrm{E}_{0} \mathrm{~b}_{3}[\mathrm{o}] \mathrm{mo}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ half （e．g．monno $4 \rightarrow$ дјmonbృ＠quarter） |
| dm－－m | equates to－ish（e．g．Fonymo red $\rightarrow$ amfnosmm［sic］reddish， <br>  |
|  | produces a noun（or adjective）meaning（place）where the noun base used to be（e．g．Lubmo house $\rightarrow$ бulubmumo ruins of a <br>  monastery） |
| 60－－ 3 －0 |  woman who has had two husbands） |


| Lesson 19 | 353 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Lo－－o | depicts the place designated for the base（e．g．$\sigma_{\Delta}[\nu]_{3} \circ$ rubbish |
| Lo－ | $\rightarrow$ しっбиззл bin cf．（œ๐－） $33^{-\circ}$ you sweep $X$ ） <br> derives the abstract nouns from adjectives（e．g． 2poog ripe $^{\text {rip }}$ |
|  |  <br>  |
| －ogm－o（／－oŋm－o） | derives adjectives meaning possessed of base（e．g．јЈбm6o law <br> $\rightarrow$ juбmbngmo legal，bmengo flesh $\rightarrow$ bmingojemo corporeal） |
| －оงб－ก | similar to，and more productive than，the above（e．g．$b \partial[\mathrm{~J}] \mathrm{mo}$ <br>  |
| －мзงб－п | similar to the above two suffixes（e．g．јल＠〕 rock $\rightarrow$ је＠пзибп rocky） |
| －mb［0］6－o |  <br>  |
| －๑＠－ก | is an adjective based on the adverbial case ending，equivalent to －able when attached to a masdar base（e．g．$\left(33^{\circ} \mathrm{m}\right)^{\circ} \mathrm{c}$ changing $\rightarrow\left(330 \mathrm{mob} \mathrm{sen}^{1}\right.$ changeable） |
| の－○ | is an adjective based on the instrumental case ending <br>  <br>  |
|  | is a widely used formant（e．g．bfoln sex $\rightarrow$ Ufolvinn sexual， <br>  <br>  menstruation） |
| －（6）＠っ¢m－n， | sometimes preceded by a vowel（ -0 or $-\Omega-$ ），derives adjectives from certain adverb－like expressions of time（e．g．дьฐ๐б then <br>  <br>  |
| -980 and－m80 | are widely used as formants for abstract nouns，the latter being especially common in association with privative adjectives <br>  <br>  <br>  |

Note the special nuance indicating recurrence in time marked by the instru－

 rule））．With numerals the form is invariant，whether used adverbially or adjec－ tivally（e．g．ulmठnos＠u voulmbnn дmzп＠бјб they came in hundreds and


For further examples，see the Georgian－English glossary at the end of this book．

1 The stem is the older form for what today would rather be $\left(\partial_{f}\right)_{(33 \mathrm{~m}}$ ．

## Some useful sets of vocabulary

## Seasons of the year


 winter／in winter．

## Compass points



## Colours







## Some foodstuffs

|  | potato | 3 306zo | rice | $\mathrm{Bu}^{3} 3^{3}$ | onion |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Limjm | mushroom |  | carrot |  | cabbage |
| 7umb［0］mo | beetroot |  | pomegranate |  | vegetable |
| obb［u］mo | spinach | bomo | fruit | 3）】mo | apple |
| змวข\％／3no | quince | aub［0］mo | pear |  | peach |
| zungumo | apricot | byməo | persimmon， sharon fruit | мәмзп | fig |
|  | grape | Bucoron［0］6n | aubergine | Bofiojo | pepper <br> （capsicum） |
| $3 \mathrm{mer30m0}$ | pepper | демдz๐ | mustard | Jobdo | coriander |
|  | parsley | бп［m］mo（－3－） | garlic | 3ヵठ\％5 | mint |
| Oumbuybu | tarragon | з ${ }^{\text {du }}$ | dill | ＠u＇mohn6n | cinnamon |
| а¢зЈбпеп | greens | Jmouzo | plum | 3［0］mol <br>  | cherry |
| $\begin{aligned} & 303[\mathrm{o}] \mathrm{mo} / \\ & \mathrm{Eng}_{\mathrm{ol}}[\mathrm{~m}] \mathrm{qn} \\ & \left(-3^{-}\right) \end{aligned}$ | walnut | aryos | mulberry |  | strawberry |
| умщм | raspberry | am＜3\％ | bilberry | zmgmo／3306n | pumpkin |
| 了пర゙mの | cucumber | oromo | groundnut | а¢зu®0 | shashlik |
| azuen | barley bread | onogma | honey |  | egg |
| 83［9］60 | juice | Lu\％uдのm¢m | watermelon |  | honeydew melon |


| \%¢дumbun | medlar | bugm | curd cheese |  | whey, serum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6nubuyn | celery | bmenb[0]mo | wheat | Jomo | barley |
| $\mathrm{m}_{3}$ mos | oats | З3030 | rye | 2umubo | jam |
| 30'mo | pea | unanб¢о | maize, corn on the cob | 808 mo | chestnut |
| buzusumon | cheese pie* | $\cdots \bigcirc \partial[m] 6 n$ | lemon | mmonn | beans |
| @3\%OOO | rennet | ठуว $\partial$ [ 0 ]mo | wild plum | buyn | tripe, yeast |
| उmmmz | radish |  (-১-) | liquorice | doñononimo (-১-) | parsnip |
| Luouorminn | asparagus |  | rhubarb | Bnfaugn | watercress |

* A staple Georgian dish.

What will you have, sir?

I'd drink tea with great pleasure, thank you
hont кпmzmén Lzuдm?
How do you drink tea?

Tea with lemon and without sugar, but coffee with milk and sugar


## Utensils





## Dialogue 3

A foreigner, conducting a survey, asks a former Soviet citizen
 in the USSR, had different policies been pursued before the USSR disintegrated












## Vocabulary

| $3^{\text {bu＠b }}$ ） $3^{\text {bu＠}}$ | absolutely clear |  | freedom |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | advantage | Löว¢мm | sphere |
| ¢R－うる－○（Ruдm－） | you lag behind $X$ |  | civilised |
| Lodyo | world |  | without which （pl．） |
|  | worthy | Lu\％mgu＠mjo | society |
|  | arrogance | мозbう＠ | arrogant |
|  | wise（of things） | \％mza／\％mgņımo | some |
|  | union（－republic） | उn¢nのfom | on the contrary |
| zulufu6n | field of opportunity | のozz－nozoubonn ${ }^{1}$ | each their own |
|  | fatal | Lu＠uzo | rein |
|  | you get hold of $X$ | Әуцепо <br>  | conflict <br> you facilitate $X$ |
| dua－u3（＠u－） | you make $X$ tense |  | aspiration |
| $(0-)^{3} \% 0_{3} 6-0\left(g^{2}-\right)$ | you send $X$ into | ¢○○83 | Lithuania |
|  | transformed |  | right（s） |
|  | patriotic | しก3）${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | short－sightedness |
| uncumobo | poverty | Вомим взе－98－ь | $X$ falls as the lot to $Y$ |
| －－8¢¢－9B－n | you grow up | numbo | generation |
| （z०（－дm）－） |  |  | experience |
| ＠⿴囗6งธก | regrettable |  | you correct $X$ |
| วœ๐бumo | river |  |  |

## Proverbs


I spat upwards，it landed on（my）moustache；I spat downwards， it landed on（my）beard

[^15]
## VOCABULARY



VOCABULARY

| ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{j} 3 \%^{\text {\％}}$ | fish | งдる－mb（ $0-\delta 3^{-0}$ ） | you（will）say $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| lumuzumozm | for saying |  | much |
|  | you（will）have X |  | but |
|  | mouth | fy［0］mo | water |
|  | full |  |  |

## Prose text

This is a passage from Archil Sulak＇auri＇s short story Old News，taken from a volume of his дmпиппmдృдо Stories



 дмәŋßっбœ๐．








 $3^{\circ 6 д \text { g．}}$




的通它。



















VOCABULARY

|  | you（will）stand up | mosubn | room |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | aimlessly | （＠）－） $0-6 y-)^{8}$ | you（will）start X |
| Loutiven | walking |  | dreadful |
| дm－z－0－6＠－つろ－ט | you will get an urge for $X$ | 3u30 | cigarette |
| $\partial_{m}-\boldsymbol{f}(-)_{03}{ }^{-৩}$ | smoking |  | you（will）restrain yourself |
| dmozl | with difficulty | Зワm○ | heart |
| るuдumjonn | quickly | 3 3－0－39a－L | your $X$ beats |
| 3 3md6－m3（ $0-\mathrm{mb}$ ） | you（will）feel X | ¢mm＠ | when？ |
|  | you（will）gain mastery of $X$ |  | excitement，agitation |
| $\begin{gathered} 3^{u-v-6 d m(-)} 93^{-} \\ {[0] m-0} \end{gathered}$ | motionless | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Fo3-b-১-m } \\ & \quad\left(\Omega-\sigma_{3}-y^{3-n}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）lie |
| пзコ¢¢ | eye | （＠u－）6．yz－u3 | you（will）close $X$ |
|  | hooked | $3^{6} 30$ mon | nose |
| $\begin{aligned} & (80-)_{3-0-\infty l}^{3} \mathrm{~m}_{\mathrm{m}}- \\ & \left(\varrho-0^{3-0}\right. \end{aligned}$ | your $X$（will）grow thin | youmm | more |
|  | grown |  | your X（will）seem |
| 20－ $33 \pm \mathrm{m}-⿹^{3-v-y m-0 ~}$ | passed away |  | you resemble $X$ <br> （you grow to／ <br> will resemble） |


| Oुmornomo | careful |  ＠－9 ${ }^{3-ก}$ | you（will）approach X |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you（will）stand over $X$ |  | you（will）give ear to $X$ |
| aluybyfo | light | Uu゙6のfl3－u | breathing |
|  | you（will）hear $X$ | дృ的ว | then |
| ${ }^{\text {¢ ¢ ¢ }}$ | slowly | （8）－）$-\mathrm{-bym}$ | you（will）open $X$ |
|  | $X$ will turn to look at you | дuzn＠u | table |
| antuaumon | address | $\begin{aligned} & 0-y^{3} \delta 6-\jmath^{3-n} \\ & \left(0-\delta y 3^{-\infty}\right) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { you (will) tell } X \\ & \text { to } Y \end{aligned}$ |
| Ryynhyme | whisper | 8u－bつ＠－১3 | you will look out／ over at $X$ |
| дumomou | in truth |  | inanimate X lies （will lie） |
| 的うごм¢ | exercise book |  | sheet |
| 6ı－b（－） $03-0$ | torn（piece） | のvy | if |
| dる。 | brother | ${ }_{3} \mathrm{l}^{\text {um }}$ | tomorrow |
| $30-0-3 \mathrm{~m}-0$ | you will go round |  | book |
|  | you will fetch $X$ away for $Y$ | 3 3on | whose？ |
| змдмб๐（－ง－） | girl | $\begin{aligned} & 8 n-b-১-m \\ & \left(0-z e-0^{8-n}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）sit |
| gromo | one | f［9］mo | year |
|  | you（will）take $X$ | （＠u－） 5 － 8 ming | you（will）return $X$ to $Y$ |
| ¢๐¢ | big | ajo nb［0］mo | tease，show－off， nosy parker |
| $3^{\text {пбд }}$（－9－） | someone | $2 m-y-806$ | you will bring $X$ $\text { to } Y$ |
| ucum | no longer |  | you are（will be） able to $X$ |
| $30-\mathrm{Rym-ab}-3$ | stop（ping） | งдпठூмว | for this reason |
|  | you（will）agree with $X$ | ט） | like this |
| Lulfinuobm＠ | quickly | jumumen | paper |
| 5－－яmas－ก | ripped（piece） |  | pocket |
| （ho－）$n-32 \mathrm{y} 36-0$ | you（will）crumple $X$ in（your $Y$ ） |  | terror－stricken |
|  | you（will）come out | ๑วпl зuдm，¢́ma | for the reason that |
| $3 \mathrm{meO}^{(0)}$ | someone |  | you（will）come to doubt |
| Unfるのб＠o | purity |  | decency |


| Lesson 19 |  |  | 361 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Lugmo | soul | リคววขумм | unusual |
|  | agitation | \％umo | bell |
| （＠u－） $\mathrm{mog}_{3}\left(1-\mathrm{o}_{3}\right.$ ） | you（will）ring $X$ | － $3_{3}[0] 60$ | balcony |
| 36ృм－৩ | it is dark | ajming | 2nd |
| Lomovem | floor，storey | RubRobo（－o－） | glaring，bright |
| 60．nymo（－১－） | bulb | Э330 | already |
|  | you（will）extinguish $X$ | 3 ${ }^{\text {¢ }} 3$ | stairs |
|  | coughing | （8u－） $0-$ дm6－9 ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | you（will）hear $X$ |
|  | you（will）cough | y $\begin{aligned} \\ \text { a }\end{aligned}$ | deaf |
| 3－－8－д－э¢－0 | sustained |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { you (will) stop } \\ \text { a while } \end{gathered}$ |
|  <br>  | in a rush |  | you（will）dash |
| $\mathrm{n}^{2}-0-\mathrm{dm-9}$－ | it is possible | Byonn | minute |
| Juno | street | $8^{0-\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{~cm}}-0}$ | going out |
| －0っちu30 | as soon as（＋gen．） |  | you（will）hear $X$ |
| Jumo | woman |  | reticent |
| วข30＠ | calm | bou | voice |
| fybuom | peaceful | knofmamor | for some reason |
| （2m－）-8 киm $6-๑^{3}$ | you will take fright you（will）turn $X$ |  | fearful <br> before me |
| （am－）－－১my | you（will）turn X | hวd（u）$\nabla$ ¢ | before me you（will）see X |
|  | you（will）stand |  | you（will）see $X$ |
| Ln36jem | darkness | Lobo | face |
| $(80-) 0-\mathrm{mb}(-)_{03}$ | you（will）sort out $X$ | （＠u－）$)^{-6} 3$ ¢－${ }^{\text {b－u }}$ | $X$ meets（will meet） you |
| nua＠os | how much？ | b［0］60 | time |
|  | you（will）await $X$ |  | you（will）think |
|  | you are（will be）late | Bnan | lad |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { дn-en-b-د-k } \\ & (\xi د-b-3 \Delta m) \end{aligned}$ | you（will）go | дృอ๐ | more |
|  | nothing（potential） | $(\partial m-) 0-b^{2} m b-g^{3}$ | you（will）manage $X$ |
| 3－3006－ง3 | you will ask $X$ | ＠oub | yes |
| obo | in such a way |  | you（will）bid farewell to $X$ |
| －min $\mathrm{j}_{0}$ | not even | （80－） $0-3^{6-m 8}$ | you（will）get to know $X$ |
| งaz－mb（ $0-8 y^{-0}$ ） | you（will）say $X$ |  | you（will）live |
|  | you（will）depart from $X$ | мл30 $\left(n--\jmath^{3}\right)$ | you（will）speak |
| ＠u－80 ¢m－jb－〕 | convince | Fo¢๐6 | recently |
| mozumozo | speech | зпलm | manner，accent |


|  | urbane |  | intelligent |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| уьдм@ | silently | (зง/дก/дм-) | you (will) follow |
|  |  | $3-y 3-3^{8-0}$ | X out/thither/ hither |
| 36дмп | dark | 9Mnobubl | for a while |
| @u-¢๐-b-১-¢ | you (will) go, proceed | ubmo | now |
| ( $0-3 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{n}$ ) |  |  |  |
|  | everything |  | you (will) irritate $X$ |
|  | you (will) upset $X$ |  | darkened |
| 330 ¢ึ¢ | side |  |  |

## Exercises

1 Write out the pluperfect paradigms for:
I (etc.) had been sitting
X had had me (etc.)
I (etc.) had turned red
X had turned white for me (etc.)
I (etc.) had worn X (e.g. a coat)
X had come to hate me (etc.)
2 Fill in the gaps and translate:








3 Replace the present indicative verb forms below with their pluperfect equivalents (and indicate any other necessary changes):



(f) of to @o@o bubo bol
(c) 2 bos
 ${ }^{\circ} 283^{6}$ (



4 Replace the aorist indicative verb forms below with their pluperfect equivalents:








5 Given the following transitive pluperfect forms, transform them into the equivalent (a) monopersonal intransitive and (b) bipersonal intransitive pluper-

 been built for us:








6 Construct the correct syntax for the conjunctions bs bsa/3@@́rj by selecting the appropriate form of the bracketed verbs in the following:
 $3^{0 \text { mo }}$








7 Translate into English:














 agbsbg ${ }^{\text {a }}$ )
8 Translate into Georgian:
 until this misfortune came crashing down upon us.
(b) I took the map ( $=$ roy $3^{\circ}$ ) with me in order not to lose my way.
(c) If your mother had told me how her leg was hurting her, she could have stayed in the car and sat there until we returned.
(d) If I had known what would happen, I would never have given you permission to go to England.
(e) Her mother became angry, because the girl should have been wearing her new dress when the guests came.
(f) Before you put the child to sleep, ask her if she wants anything.
(g) If our mother had had ten children at that time, she would have become a hero(ine) of the Soviet Union.
(h) If I hadn't loved the girl, I wouldn't have married her. I wouldn't have behaved honourably, if I'd married her only in order that I might have been able to bring her to England.

## Lesson 20

## In this lesson you will learn about:

- The formation and use of the IIIrd subjunctive for all verbs
- The form and function of causative verbs
- An alternative passive
- An alternative Series III for transitive verbs
- Constructing indefinite clauses


## Dialogue 1

As his year in Georgia learning the language comes to an end, Jim visits Rusudan for a final chat




















 अधे $3^{\circ} z^{\text {ェо }}$ ？















## Vocabulary

|  （дm－／дn－） | you approach | дмбоуммо | what has been related |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Бпu＠uz | ground，basis | －－ $\mathrm{L}_{33}$ 6－ก（＠u－） | you conclude $X$ |
| －－dy6（20－） | you acquire $X$ | 8uдmbujmeno | exception |
| yงamuz | countless | $0^{-\delta(-)} 33^{-0}$（＠u－） | you fit in |
| умздмепzot | always |  | alive |
|  | it doesn＇t matter | умзวј <br>  | in any case |
|  | you display $X$ |  з＠－эる $306 \%$ | you（will）change the subject for $X$ |
|  | you have done with $X$ |  | autumn has come |
| Bymbt［g］mu | string of nuts coated in dried，boiled grape juice | $\begin{aligned} & \text { зпемм } \\ & \text {--8งб (8u-) } \end{aligned}$ | kilo，dialect you get $X$ to take （inanimate）$Y$ |
|  | you hit（target）， find yourself （somewhere） |  | away with him／her |
| リ－¢norb－ง3（2m－） | you greet $X$ for $Y$ |  |  |

## Dialogue 2

Jim asks his Georgian teacher for one last lesson



























## Vocabulary

|  | you compose $X$ |  | esteemed（cf．you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дээ¢мо | spouse | （cf．30¢п3 | respect $X$ ） |
| －向＠u＠ってうる | holidays | し－（－〕Д） |  |
| з－ง－өy－mb－L | it suits you |  | with two places |
|  | with two beds | 6ma［g］ $\mathrm{mon}^{\text {con }}$ | room，number |
|  | thankful |  งलिдде | not only ．．．but also |


| dro motrob | what does $X$ cost？／ what is it worth？ |  | $X$ costs you spend（ing）（night） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| monboza | all four | Lulu＠омм | dining room |
| $\begin{aligned} & u-f_{m @-\jmath^{3}} \\ & \left(\partial_{m-/ \partial n-)}\right) \end{aligned}$ | you pass $X$ to $Y$ |  | you book $X$ |
| Bпल̧оの | ticket | ๑дృ＠๐－৩ | it is to be hoped |
|  | with respect | verógluogn | addressee |
| dzoñozu | dear |  | deep |
|  | （cf．expensive） |  | （cf．deepest） |
|  | always | しnjuの込 | welfare，well－being |
|  | wisher |  | resting， |
|  |  | ［9］${ }_{\text {c }}$－n | holidaymaker |

## Dialogue 3

Jim goes to visit Maq＇vala for what he thinks will be the last time during his stay in Georgia

| หодо： |  <br>  <br>  |
| :---: | :---: |
| дьузьмı： |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |
| ห้одо： |  <br>  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br>  |
|  |  <br>  |



```
    дмобцедддठо.
```





















## Vocabulary

|  <br> （＠๐－） | you say goodbye to $X$ |  | busy <br> you take your leave |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you force yourself on $X$ | （zuдm－） | of $X$ |
| の $33 \jmath^{\text {bo buonnoo／}}$ | in your honour | bucmbumo | folk（adj．） |
|  |  |  | for inviting |
| しゃ－৫－つコ－৩¢ |  | $\mathrm{y}_{\text {¢－v－6＠－mb }}$ | you（will）forgive |
| Ojommo | tenor | $=\partial \circ-/ \partial m-y^{\prime}$ | $X$ for $Y$ |
|  | in person | O03－93 |  |
| du＠mmbul y－ | you pay your |  | appropriate |
| b＠－○（80＠u－） | thanks to $X$ |  | you will make $X$ |
| －－く＠（－）„б（8u－） | you miss $X$ | －6－9 | drink $Y$ |
| －－しみ－эз | you make $X$ drink $Y$ |  | incorrect |
|  | （a word）will slip from your mouth unintentionally | ＠uдのロ3033 | coincidence |
|  | for a second time | noymmo | complex |


|  | you（will）swear to $X$ |  | you get $X$ to record $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| зиби6з 3080 | difference |  | you notice $X$ |
| －ヵっ6 | in connection | ＠－－し－®nб－○ | you（will）mock $X$ |
| ＠ujuzənóngoon | with $X$ |  |  |

## Grammar

## The form and use of the IIIrd subjunctive

There is only one form of the Georgian verb that has not yet been described， and that is the final member of Series III，namely the IIIrd subjunctive．Its role is marginal in the language，and so it will be treated here somewhat cursorily．For example：









．I wish $X$（that）．．．．In addition，the IIIrd subjunctive in wishes may be replaced by the aorist subjunctive，so that the four verbs in the last example could be replaced respectively by：

Here is another example：

The IIIrd subjunctive is often found after nno $\mathrm{fm}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{L})$（or its synonym зnomд（ $(\mathrm{B})$ ） as if，though it may be replaced by either the pluperfect or the aorist indica－

 line the lack of truth of the relevant proposition，where English uses a simple

 most（узэмง\％ว дృठ๐），where in place of the IIIrd subjunctive we could have


In the following example，the IIIrd subjunctive could be avoided by altering
 ＠－১．．．whether anything was published（＝aorist indicative）－cf．the direct
 was published or not，saying：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { They do not recall anything having been published about this to this day }
\end{aligned}
$$

As to formation，the IIIrd subjunctive simply replaces the indicative markers of the verb＇s pluperfect with those of the corresponding subjunctive，all other features of the relevant pluperfect，as described in Lessons 16 and 19， remaining the same．Transitives，medials，monopersonal intransitives and monopersonal statives，whose pluperfects are in one way or another derived from the aorist indicative，replace their aorist indicative forms with those of the appropriate aorist subjunctive．Bipersonal intransitives，indirect verbs and bipersonal statives，whose pluperfect employs the endings that are typical of an intransitive imperfect indicative（or conditional），replace these imperfect indicative（or conditional）forms with those of the corresponding present（or future）subjunctive（see Lesson 14 for the formation of the present and future subjunctives）．

## Transitive verbs

Depending on the form of the aorist subjunctive，the IIIrd subjunctive will be marked by the vowel－м－，－১－or，for give－л－．Verbs in－っठ－which have a vowel in the root and whose pluperfect is weak，containing both the thematic suffix and the extra suffix－॰б－，have the $m$－vowel in their IIIrd subjunctive． In all the following examples the aorist subjunctive is given first；both aorist and IIIrd subjunctive are translated alike，namely as a wish．Do not forget that the subject of transitive（and medial）IIIrd subjunctives stands in the dative，whilst that of their aorist subjunctives stands in the ergative．

| Aorist subjunctive | IIIrd subjunctive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $2 m-3-3 m-0$ | дm－д－つ－১＜＜－u－し | may I kill $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| $\partial m-3 m-0$ | дм－z－つ－3ल－১－し | may you kill $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| $\partial m-3 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{u}-\mathrm{l}$ | дм－ว－3m－১－し | may $X$ kill $Y$（sing．／pl．） |
| $\partial m-3-3 m-0-\infty$ | дм－83－0－зm－১－し | may we kill $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| $\partial m-3 m-১-\infty$ | дm－z－う－3m－১－¢ | may you（pl．）kill $X$（sing．／pl．） |

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may you（pl．）kill me／us／／may you kill us．

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\partial m-з m-১-6 & \partial m-\jmath-\lrcorner m-১-\infty & \text { may they kill } X \text { (sing./pl. }) ~
\end{array}
$$

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may $X$（sing．／pl．）kill you（pl．）．

| 2m－z－3m－0 | дm－д－0－3m－১ | may I kill you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дм－д－зм－১ | дм－д－0－3m－১ | may you kill me |
| $\partial m-\partial-3$－－－－ | дм－3－0－3ल－১ | may $X$（sing．／pl．）kill me |
| дm－z3－ $\mathrm{m}_{\text {m－－}}$－ 6 | дм－3－0－3m－১－の | may they kill us |

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may $X$ kill us．

| 3－6دb－m | а－л－бงb－m－し | may I see $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6Јb－m | 3－0－6）${ }^{\text {－}}$－m－ | may you see $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 6งb－m－l |  | may $X$ see $Y$（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－6ub－m－a | 33－9－6د6－м－し | may we see $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 6．b－m－m | 3－9－6งb－m－m | may you（pl．）see $X$（sing．／pl．） |

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may you（pl．）see me／us／／may you see us．
бub－м－6
〕－бub－м－の
may they see $X$（sing．／pl．）

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may $X$（sing．／pl．）see you（pl．）．

| $3-6 \Delta b-m$ | $\partial-\jmath-6 \Delta b-m$ | may I see you |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\partial-6 \Delta b-m$ | $3-\jmath-6 \Delta b-m$ | may you see me |
| $\partial-6 \Delta b-m-b$ | $3-9-6 \Delta b-m$ | may X see me |

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may they see me．
83－6د6－м－6 3－9－6دb－m－の may they see us
Note：the III subjunctive also means may $X$ see $u s$ ．

When it comes to the verb give，remember that the indirect object is marked within the verb throughout Series I and II but externally to the verb（by means of the postposition－ozol for）in Series III．

| Aorist subjunctive | IIIrd subjunctive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ап－3－0－9 |  | may I give $X$ to $Y$ |
| дп－ا－ひ－0 | дп－з－0－0－つ－し | may you give $X$ to $Y$ |
| дп－レ－ $3^{-0-し}$ | дก－コ－0－コ－し | may $X$ give $Y$ to $Z$ |
| дก－3－0－0－の | のก－83－9－0－0－し | may we give $X$ to $Y$ |
| an－b－उ－0－の | дก－る－コ－（3－）－の | may you（pl．）give $X$ to $Y$ |

Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may you（pl．）give me／us to X／／ may you give us to $X$ ．
дп－レ－उ－コ－6 $\quad$ のก－コ－（उ－コ－の may they give $X$ to $Y$
Note：the IIIrd subjunctive also means may $X$（sing．／pl．）give you（pl．）to $Y$ ．

| дn－L－＜－g hyan mozo |  | may you give me to $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | may $X$ give me to you |

To illustrate these last two forms in a full sentence，let us take the English May God give me to you as a faithful slave！With the aorist subjunctive we



## Medial verbs

All medial verbs have aorist subjunctive in $-m$ ．Therefore their IIIrd subjunc－ tive is always in $-m$ ，as illustrated for the aorist and IIIrd subjunctive of feel －remember the aorist subjunctive has an ergative subject，the IIIrd subjunc－ tive a dative：

| $3^{-0-a}$－nd6－m | a－ŋ－amd6－m－L | may I feel X |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\bigcirc-\mathrm{arnd}^{\text {did－m }}$ | 3－0－3md6－m－L | may you feel $X$ |
| －－る年d6－m－l |  | may $X$ feel $Y$ |
| $3^{-0-3} \mathbf{3}$ d $6-m-\infty$ | 33－9－3nd6－m－し | may we feel $X$ |
| $\bigcirc-\mathrm{g}_{\text {md6－m－m }}$ | 3－ว－3md6－m－m | may you（pl．）feel $X$ |
|  |  | may they feel $X$ |

## Monopersonal intransitive（and stative）verbs

The aorist indicative of the copula is replaced by the aorist subjunctive，the $3^{-}$marking 1st personhood is absent from the copula ending but present in front of the root．Monopersonal statives follow this same pattern．Compare again aorist subjunctive and IIIrd subjunctive of to be：

| $3^{-0-y-m}$ | 3－ymoz－0¢－пym | may I be |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $0-y-m$ | ymoz－nm－nym | may you be |
| $0-y-m-l$ | ymoz－0¢－nym－l | may $X$ be |
| $3^{-0-y-m-\infty}$ | 3－ymoz－0¢－пуm－п | may we be |
| $0-y-m-\infty$ | умоz－n¢－nym－n | may you（pl．）be |
| o－y－m－б | ymoz－0¢－пym－6 | may they be |

## Bipersonal intransitive，indirect and bipersonal stative verbs

The subjunctive vowel is always－〕，and it always follows the suffix－m＠－． Contrast first the aorist and IIIrd subjunctives for the bipersonal intransitive verb hide from and then the present and IIIrd subjunctives of the indirect verb love．

| Aorist subjunctive | IIIrd subjunctive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠u－3－0－วЈ¢－m | ＠っ－з－дЈм－п＠－っ | may I hide from $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | ＠－－Әコ¢－м＠－ว | may you hide from $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  |  | may $X$ hide from $Y$（sing．／pl．） |


| ＠ゝ－3－〕－Jucm－m－の |  | may we hide from $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠u－う－Dum－м－の | ＠u－дum－m＠－う－の | may you（pl．）hide from $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | ＠๐－дدм－м＠－бృб | may they hide from $X$（sing．／pl．） |
|  | ＠๐－з－ӘЈм－м＠－0 | may I hide from you |
| Present subjunctive | IIIrd subjunctive |  |
|  |  | may I love X（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－0－yzu年－＠－9－し |  | may you love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| ข－уз | 3－уз | may $X$ love $Y$（sing．／pl．） |
|  |  | may we love $X$（sing．／pl．） |
| 3－0－y30m－＠－9－m |  | may you（pl．）love $X$（sing．／pl．） |

Note：both forms also mean may you（pl．）love me／us／／may you love us．

| －y y un－＠－9－の | 3－y\％ | may they love $X$（sing．／pl．） <br> may $X$（sing．／pl．）love you（pl．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $3-$－－y u | 3－y30 | may $X$（sing．／pl．）love me |
|  | 3－y3 | may $X$（sing．／pl．）love us |

## The form and function of causative verbs

In English causation is expressed by using verbs such as cause or make plus the infinitive（e．g．I cause you to behave well or I made you give the book to John）．Georgian too possesses the verb ndymjos forcing，which allows a rough parallel to English，e．g．：


```
I (shall) force you to behave (= aorist subjunctive) well
```



```
I forced you to give (= pluperfect) the book to John
```

However，Georgian has a method of adapting verb forms to include the asso－ ciation of a causer，thus avoiding the use of a separate verb of causation．The resulting formation is known as the causative，and the meaning of such verbs can cover the range force，compel，make，persuade，let，get，help X（to）do $(Y)$ ，depending on the context．

These verbs present problems both of morphology and syntax．Let us take the latter difficulty first．When an intransitive verb is made causative， the intransitive subject becomes the direct object of the causative，and any indirect object remains indirect object of the causative，e．g．：


```
The people of Europe survived (perishing (@っ-लンクーァ-ง) compared with
```



```
The Red Army helped the people of Europe survive (perishing)
```



```
The woman greeted \(\left((\partial n-/ \partial m-)_{\partial}-\omega_{0} \partial^{2}-\jmath^{\partial-ก}\right)\) her husband compared with
```



```
The soldiers let the woman greet her beloved husband one last time
```

When a transitive verb is made causative, the transitive verb's subject becomes indirect object of the resulting causative, whilst the original direct object stays direct object of the causative, e.g.:

The plumber mended the tap $\left(\mathrm{mb}_{3}[\mathrm{0}] \mathrm{\sigma}_{\mathrm{n}}\right)$

The teacher got the plumber to mend the tap
When the transitive verb itself already has an indirect object, this indirect object becomes dependent on -nzol for and thus stands in the genitive under causativisation, e.g.:


```
Zaza gave me the book compared with
```



```
His father made Zaza give me the book
```

Given their meanings, such pairs as those following should be treated as causatives:

| Jumosesers-u | The woman is sitting down; |
| :---: | :---: |
| fucm 3-b3--a | I seat the woman |
|  | The woman is lying down; |
|  | I lay the woman down |
|  | The woman is dying; |
| fome $3-3 \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{u}_{3}$ | I kill the woman |
|  | The fruit is ripening; |
|  | The sun $\left(2 \%_{\rho}\right)$ is ripening the fruit |

However, in earlier lessons these pairs have either been treated independently of each other or the non-causative has been described as the intransitive variant of the basic transitive (= causative), and in what follows we shall limit ourselves to describing the causative formations for those verbs that have not so far been covered.

## Transitive verbs

Almost without exception the universal marker of causation is the suffix -nб-, and, together with its root, it forms a verbal base that belongs to the class
of verbs with thematic suffix -0る-, thereby giving the complex suffixal sequence $-\cap 6-\jmath^{8}$ in the present indicative. Some verbs, however, add an extra initial
 tive. The base form to which these compound suffixes are attached is produced as follows: simply take the (preverbless) masdar and remove the masdar marker -৩. It is, however, necessary to learn which (sub-)type of verb requires which suffixal sequence. Such causatives, once produced, in terms of forming their different tenses and moods behave just like a normal verb in $-\rho^{8}$, which includes taking the version vowel o - in Series I and II (regardless of whether or not the base verb takes a version vowel or, if it does, which one). The preverb is the same as is required by the causative's base verb, e.g. (for the verb ( - -) $-\partial_{\jmath} 6-\jmath^{8}$ you (will) build $X$ ):






```
    you apparently got (John) to build \(X \rightarrow\)
```



```
    you had got (John) to build X
```

As an example of the other compound suffix, take the verb ( $z^{-}$) $\mathfrak{f r - n}$ - you
 get $X$ to cut $Y$ in two etc.

Causatives in subjective or objective version occur (albeit rarely) in Georgian literature but learners should not attempt to produce them. One (also very rare) oddity to which readers should be alerted (should they pursue their Georgian studies to an advanced level) is the possibility of using intransitive morphology with a causative. Unlike most verbs in $-\jmath$, which take a suffixal intransitive, causatives form their intransitives prefixally (in this case in $0^{-}$, as they are here being used with intransitive subject and indirect object alone). One example is offered (just to whet the appetite):


```
The maiden allows/allowed/apparently allowed herself to be snatched away
by the wolf
```

Less colloquially these three tense forms could be expressed thus, incorporating the reflexive:




## Root verbs

Once the exponent of the masdar is removed，one is left with the simple root， to which $-\cap 6-\jmath^{8}$ is attached．No changes ever occur to any $\jmath$－vowel in the root．Examples will start with the masdar：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to write (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

 the causative is exceptional，being $\lrcorner-\not \partial(-)_{03}$ you（will）feed $X$ to $Y$（aorist $=$

 put in the causative to produce $\lrcorner-\not \partial \partial(-) \rho 3^{-\circ 6-\jmath ठ}$ you（will）get $X$ to feed $Y$ to $Z$ ．

## Thematic suffix－eb

Removal of the masdar＇s characteristic vowel leaves root plus thematic suffix． To these $-\cap 6-\jmath^{8}$ is attached，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\beta^{\prime-}\right) \text { @-ऽ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Thematic suffix－av

After removal of the masdar exponent one is left with root plus ${ }_{3}$－remnant of the thematic suffix（either following the root or tucked inside it）．If the root contains a vowel，the suffix－ก6－ృる is used；if not，$-03^{-\cap 6-\jmath る}$ is employed， e．g．：

|  | losing | $\rightarrow$ | （00－） $0-30 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{~m}_{8}-3-06-\mathrm{n}^{8}$ | you（will）get $X$ to lose $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （00－） $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{z}}-3-\mathrm{O}$ | planting | $\rightarrow$ | （00－）－－4nz－3－03－06－93 | you（will）get $X$ to plant $Y$ |
| $(2 \mathrm{~m}-)_{33 \mathrm{~m}}$ | killing | $\rightarrow$ |  | you（will）get $X$ to kill $Y$ |
| 6．b－3－0 | seeing | $\rightarrow$ | －－6ub－3－93 | you（will）get $X$ to see $Y$ |
|  |  |  | Iso（＠u－））－6ub－3 |  |

## Thematic suffix－i

Removal of the masdar exponent leaves the simple root．If there is a vowel in this root，the suffix will be $-\_6-\jmath$ ．If，on the other hand，there is no vowel， the suffix is $-03^{-06-\jmath る \text { ，e．g．：}}$


```
    you (will) get X to send Y (there)
```



```
    you (will) get X to shed Y
```


## Thematic suffix－ob

Removal of the masdar＇s final vowel leaves the root plus thematic suffix．To this－n6－$\jmath^{8}$ is attached，e．g．：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to warm } Y
\end{aligned}
$$

## Thematic suffix－am

Removal of the masdar exponent leaves the root plus the $\partial$－remnant of the thematic suffix．To this $-\jmath 3^{-n б-\jmath ठ \text { is attached，e．g．：}}$


```
    you (will) get \(X\) to seat \(Y\) (sing.)
```

Note that し－る－১ in the sense of drinking is irregular in forming its causative


 drink．

 will get $X$ to give $Y$ to $Z$（thither）；$\Delta-\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{m}}(-)_{03-\cap 6-\jmath る}$ is used in the present．

## Medial verbs

In Lesson 11 we saw that in almost all cases the future indicative of medials is formed by means of the circumfix $\cap-\rho^{8}$（the rest of the future sub－series， Series II and Series III then behaving in essence like a normal verb with thematic suffix－$\jmath^{\beta}$ ）．The future－forming circumfix is simply the subjective version form of a normal transitive verb with thematic suffix $-\jmath^{8}$ and version vowel $0-$ ，and it is this latter transitive verb which serves as causative for the medial（e．g．fucma n－mu $\checkmark$ The man got the woman to speak）．The transitive origin of medials outside the present sub－series explains why their subjects in Series II stand in the erga－ tive and why in Series III they undergo the same inversion that characterises transitive verbs．A peculiarity of the medial＇s（pseudo－）causative is that，like the basic medial，it does not take a preverb．Look at these examples：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to sing }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to play }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to work }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) boil } X
\end{aligned}
$$

Note:


```
    you (will) teach \(X\) to \(Y\)
```

 umb abou ulfusmo you (will) show the way to one going there/coming here


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to run }
\end{aligned}
$$

If we make a medial that takes a direct object into a causative, then this behaves like the subject of any transitive verb and becomes the indirect object of the causative, e.g.:


```
Natela read out the new letter \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
Zaza got Natela to read out the new letter
```

We saw in Lesson 11 that it is usually possible to derive suffixal intransitive verbs with inceptive force from medial roots. These usually take the preverb 3 - outside the present sub-series (where they are rare anyway). By using this preverb with the (pseudo-)causative of medials, one produces the (pseudo-)causative of the inceptive. Look at:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you (will) get } X \text { to yell } \\
& \text { compared with: }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { you will get } X \text { to begin yelling }
\end{aligned}
$$

We also saw in Lesson 11 that outside the present sub-series medials can take a preverb to indicate a one-off action. By using the relevant preverb with the medial's (pseudo-)causative one can form the (pseudo-)causative of such semelfactives:


```
    you (will) get X to yell
```



```
    you will get X to let out a yell
```


## Indirect verbs

In general there will be a simple transitive verb with thematic suffix－〕ठ corresponding to an indirect verb as its（pseudo－）causative，e．g．：
$\partial_{9-y 30(n-9 b-ง ~ g e t ~} X$ to love $Y$ ，conceive love for $X$ ：

instilled in me（＝dative indirect object）a love for the reading of books

new priest
$\eta_{0}$－dym－98－ง get $X$ to hate $Y$ ，conceive hatred for $X$ ：


hatred for the daughter－in－law she had not yet seen with her own eyes
am－fొ๓6－əる－ง get $X$ to like $Y$ ：


ymм－（ $0-1)^{8-ง}$ get $X$ to have $Y$（animate）：

Allow me，a 50－year－old，to have a child！



＠๐－blma－əる－ง recall／make recall：


мठ－м＠－6ృб I want to make the Germans recall how they used to treat me

## Copula（to be）




## An alternative passive

Not all verbs have passive forms，and the most natural way for Georgian to get round this is to use the active with a non－specific 3rd person plural subject

 An alternative is to use the past participle in association with $\cap-f 6-\jmath^{3-}$ it will be or $\cap-f 6-\bigcirc$ it was．This is usually confined to either the future sub－series or

Series II. If the participle immediately precedes the auxiliary verb, it normally loses its final -п, e.g.:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Measures will be/were taken }
\end{aligned}
$$

## An alternative Series III for transitive verbs

Georgian, especially the colloquial language, has developed IIIrd Series forms for transitive verbs that exactly mirror the English type with auxiliary verb have plus past participle. Since Georgian has two verbs for have, depending upon whether the possessed entity is animate or inanimate, it is important to select the appropriate auxiliary. In the perfect, no sense of apparently is attached, and these alternative formations are equivalent to the English perfect or pluperfect e.g.:


```
Have/Had you received my letter? \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
Yes, I have/had received your letter
zo mo
Have/Had the soldiers killed anyone? \(\rightarrow\)
```



```
Yes, they have/had killed someone
```


## Indefinite clauses

These clauses of the type however you do it, wherever you go, whoever comes are produced by using the optionally negated particle of obligation (namely, (om) y @() in association with (a) the aorist subjunctive for a future event, (b) the present subjunctive for an ongoing event and (c) the pluperfect for a past event. In addition the particle -3 attaches to a word at the start of the clause:


```
Wherever/Whenever you go, I shall come along
```



```
However old you are, I still want you as (my) husband
```



```
Whoever is doing this, I'll show him what for!
```



```
However much/To whatever degree you abused me, I still love you
```


## Dialogue 4

Jim returns to Maq'vala's for his last Georgian feast (Jəogo)







$$
\text { [ }(\underset{\operatorname{mos}}{ }
$$



 xoдll．．．

## Vocabulary

| उMOூO ứn nyml | greatly |  | how |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | you（pl．）are |  | you slip into Mingrelian speaking |
|  | you＇re not bad |  | to $X$ |
|  | How are you？ | $0-$－norb－o3 | you（will）ask $X$ |
| 3－0－3nonb－m－n？ | （in answer to кппддmén <br>  |  <br>  | how did you find Tbilisi？ |
| Oubloryln | fussing about | ＠u－L－gmmom－jo | you flap around $X$ |
| －－bmindnj－yz－n <br> （るロ＠৩－） | you trip up over $X$（dat．） |  | you trip up over <br> $X$（dat．） |
| Oुmotnmu＠！ | Careful！ | nuдu＠u | toast master |
| －300ூn－93 | you excuse | Fofo | glass |
| $\mathrm{u}_{3}-\mathrm{u}^{\left(y^{2}-\right)}$ | $X$ for $Y$ you propose | 5̧3u a－o－bmd－つ | give me permission （polite） |
|  | （toast） |  | toast |
|  | distant | －＠uдกuбの | human being |
|  | luckily（vs | －fuvjommo | here（ness） |
| （vs Lovbృ＠y๙m＠） | unluckily）for us | 6ง6－m8（ $0--0^{8}$ ） | you regret |
|  | decision |  | healthy |
|  | you give joy to $X$ |  | fellow countryman |
|  | you mention $X$ | ¢̧mingou | Georgia |
| 2yomo | unshakeable | дпf0－－8y［0］mo | territory |
| Om－n（＠u－） | you drain $X$ | 30.530 cmbu | manliness |
| 3－3－3－03（8ゝ＠ゝ－） | you drain $X$ in | yง¢¢0 | drinking－horn |
|  | one gulp | －mu30＇m＠ | the toast passes |
| － | honest |  | to $X$（dat．） |
| งర3 | well then |  |  |

## Supplementary dialogue

This is part of an interview given by Vasil Maghlaperidze to Ivane Amirkhanashvili and published in Literary Georgia on 17 July 1992. They are discussing a problem relating to the taking of exams by school leavers that needed to be eradicated if it was not negatively to affect the newly emerged independent Georgia.














 "убழ๐, sठо


















## Vocabulary

| 3olugbntazabmmbu | responsibility |  | you know（polite） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | typifying us | ＠๐－Lo－dum－o | to be hidden |
|  | taker of school－ leaving exams | Bu－ $2 m-0-3 m^{m-0}$ | you will do a tour of |
| jmantos | commission | 6u 6 ¢mbmbu | acquaintanceship |
| daujozmbu | close friendship | －－8y－mb（Ro－） | you（will）fix $X$ |
| Ro－fy－mz－o | fixing | 的ठまuma | ritual |
|  | perturbing |  | humane |
| vdmuyón | powerless | Lubymaubafaymo | renowned |
| งธufmenoono | ascetic，virtuous， incorruptible | зu－дm－д－ชए－уm－n | examiner |
| ง2œuzzumo | this kind of | dるงठпदुmठง cronyism | being lads together， |
| Euoglumbu | kinship |  | normal |
| yenongénmbu | relationship |  | you（will）scrutinise $X$（dat．） |
| умзวмззойп | every kind of |  | principle |
|  | transgression |  | egocentric |
|  | you（will）shield yourself behind $X$（dat．） | R＇мепемззиб <br> （adj．） | shady，shadow |
| Јзмбmanjo | economy | งбuммmдо | analogy |
| amenomo | moral | yamuzmolmos | majority |
|  | patron |  | $X$ appears（will appear）to you |
|  | at a glance | Rogrn－oz（＠u－） | you（will）oppress $X$ |
|  | paradox |  | asker，requester |
|  | driven to distraction | ฐ๐бงzuбn | internal |
| y30 ${ }^{\text {chmmbm }}$ | patronless | $0-b \operatorname{m-g} \text { B-0 (るu@u-) }$ <br> towards | you（will）incline |
|  | one with patron |  | you（will）get／let $X$ oppress $Y$ |
|  | patronhood | jnbingemb $\left(0--j^{B}\right)$ | you（will）take $X$ upon yourself |
|  | attitude of mind |  | having witnessed |
|  | for the main part |  | you（will）reveal $X$ |


| $39^{\text {\% }}$ | orientation | Lmornomuy | social |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\lg ^{\text {6\% }}$ | disease |  | you (will) confirm $X$ |
| yomenglo@ | supremely |  | prepared |
| a)的 | after (+ gen.) |  | in surprise |
| उलmorofors | protection |  | desired |
| ธกว[0]ธก | mark |  | without having to talk |
| @uठммм | and lastly | lovz[0]mo | conversation |

## Proverb


A raven will not turn white, no matter how much you may rub it with sand

## VOCABULARY

|  | you (will) turn white | ymem [0]6n | raven |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| no zпб¢ | whatever/however much you (may want to) $X$ | (80-) $\boldsymbol{b}_{3} 6\left(-0_{3}\right)$ | you (will) rub/ scrape $X$ |
| ป3กวง | sand |  |  |

## Prose text

The following two passages come from the prefaces to two successive volumes of Mingrelian texts, the first a collection of verses collated and translated into Georgian by T'ogo Gudava (Ap'olon Tsanava, unacknowledged in the book), published by Tbilisi University Press in 1975, the second collated and translated into Georgian by K'orneli Danelia and Ap'olon Tsanava, published by Tbilisi University Press in 1991.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { I } \\
& 3 \mathrm{mg} \text { bos } \\
& \text { Fonobloo̊y }
\end{aligned}
$$
















$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { II }
\end{aligned}
$$









VOCABULARY

| Jumorym | Georgian（thing） | bucrbumo | folk－ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| しヵすyzajngou | literature |  | Mingrelian（thing） |
| O）柇ず | text | 3 mg \％ 0 | poetry |
| Foбulnoуzumbu | foreword |  | oral literature |
|  | study（ing） | उmmm | last，recent |
| bubu（－১－） | era，time |  | serious |
|  | attention |  | you（will）turn to $X$ |
|  | impossible |  | more or less（adj．） |
| しnLinymo | fullness |  | $X$ will be conducted |
|  | if |  | properly |
|  <br> （ 0 ） $0-\mathrm{j} 6-\mathrm{o}$ | X was considered， taken account of |  | Georgia |
| узวщ๐（－ง－） | all | 300rbo | corner，area |
|  | creativity | しułdう | business |
| nozoun | X＇s own | Brenmo | contribution |
| วృองงธง | take in |  | $X$ is（will be） possible for you |
| $L_{3}$ ubuyno | Svan（thing） | ajoknumの | Mingrelian（thing） |
|  | Laz（thing） | aılumu | material |
| のuabo | although | L3u6jon | Svanetia |
| Loajzingmm | Mingrelia |  | collected |
|  | as yet | lujaum | sufficient |
|  | quantity |  | brought to light |
|  | superfluous |  | affirmation |


| ง2z30 Mn lualubivinn | of this type service | зидм дзаубъдь $\left(z_{0}-\right)_{y-\eta(-)}$ | publication you（will）render $X$ to $Y$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| uno atmm＠＠ | not only |  | folklore |
|  | interested | 30\％o | person，face， mouth |
| งセึuaje | but（after a negative） |  | Georgian（person） |
| ${ }^{65}$ | language | jonరmgmuozo | ethnography |
| いठmmo | history | luginome | in general |
|  | culture | oुumom | wide |
| Lu\％mzuemjos | society，public | ¢0бua＠うるumg | present |
| зงдmълдง | publication， publishing |  | several |
| ठ̇man | volume |  | intended |
| उए | attempt |  | in a certain way |
|  | you（will）fill $X$ | 6lyб̧bugmo | mentioned |
| butuzo ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | gap，lacuna | ajnorb ${ }^{\text {ajem }}$ | reader |
|  | you（will） hand $X$ to $Y$ （there） | LuБ＠m | reliable |
|  | original source | zoluzajo | understandable |
| ৩¢з○м๐¢ | easily | зuдmbuyəбjzวmo | usable |
| Lobo | shape，face |  | story |
| $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{J}} \mathrm{Om} \mathrm{n}$ | light，lesser | yubmo | genre |
|  | you think $X$ |  | you（will） need $X$ |
|  | gathering |  | scholarly |
|  | unpostponable |  | non－delayable |
| ydzomato | most ancient | 以的д | deep |
| yglolifozme | for studying | ＠¢g | today |
| งMożп | no one | \％ylob | exact |
|  | you（will） define $X$ | кппzmm | how |
|  | $X$ proceeds （will proceed） |  | unwritten |
|  | Kartvelian | Вృ＠ | destiny |
| Lovju5\％ | century | วృдœ⿰㇇ | after（＋gen．） |
| の施 | say（ing） | 30 | indeed |
|  | $X$ is possible |  | fixed，established |
| дmдı3［ง］mo | future | mfom | gold |
| oुuto | value |  | $X$ gets（will get） <br> laid on you |

## Exercises

1 Write out the IIIrd subjunctive paradigms for:
May I (etc.) stay!
May X wound me (etc.)!
May I (etc.) get X to write Y !
May I (etc.) have animate X !
May X fall in love with me (etc.)!
May I (etc.) get X to kill Y !.
2 Fill in the gaps and translate:


(c) $3^{\mathrm{b}}-6-\mathrm{b} 0-$ @ $-8-9-0-9--\mathrm{d} 3-6$ ?



(g) @-@-з-, - $3^{\text {๖a }-9 ~ @ ゝ-b-o!~}$

3 Imagine the following sentences, all with verbs in the present indicative, standing after the words $\Delta \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{m}}$ dubbmzb I don't recall, and make the necessary changes, of which the main one is the use of the IIIrd subjunctive:








4 Replace the following perfect verb forms with their colloquial variants:










5 Put the nouns below into the correct case with the causative verb forms:


(c) dom- $^{2}$ (d)





6 Put the following into their causative forms by asking of the given example





(d) $\mathrm{ba}_{3} \mathrm{~g}_{3} \mathrm{o}$ 的dgb $\mathrm{b}_{2} \partial \mathrm{\partial l}$




7 Translate into English:










 sonso




8 Translate into Georgian:
(a) You can't show us the way to a hotel, child, can you, so that we may spend the night somewhere?
(b) The hooligans made the girls shatter the plates. They then made fun of them and in this way made them cry.
 clean the greenhouse and at the beginning ( $=$ œддœэる ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ) of spring gets us to sow (his) seeds.
(d) What meat should I get our daughter to bring from the market? It depends how much everything costs and how much money we have.
(e) Your dog finally gave up barking at 10 o'clock, but what made it start barking last night?
(f) This nation wants to make the whole world love it.
(g) If the others had had such foresight as that, this misfortune would never have come crashing about their heads.
(h) God grant that all your wishes be fulfilled and that the work you have begun end in success!

## SUPPLEMENTARY PRACTICE

9 For supplementary practice take a dialogue from one of the later lessons in this book and retell it so as to give yourself scope to practise the strategies for speech reporting in Georgian.

## A glossary of grammatical terms

Abstract nouns are common nouns referring to non-physical concepts (love, beauty, intelligence).
Active voice is a form of the verb marking the entity performing or experiencing the verbal action as the subject (e.g. Mary is sitting; Mary is sitting down; John is sleeping; John is going to sleep; the wind destroyed two houses; we hear a noise; you see the ghost).
Adjectives are words that qualify nouns either in terms of quality (good, just, white, big) or quantity (some, five, many, all, each, few). The definite article (the) and indefinite articles ( $a$, an) may also be viewed as types of adjective. Adjectives may be used either attributively/adnominally (big man, few women) or predicatively (the man is big, the women are few).
Adposition is the generic term of reference for prepositions and postpositions.
Adverbial is the name of the case used in Georgian when the noun is used predicatively (e.g. we elected Thatcher (as) Prime Minister).

Adverbs are words that qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs. They can be of negation (not), manner (e.g. slowly, brilliantly, fast, how?), degree (very, sufficiently, hardly), time (today, yesterday, last year, never, when?), place (here, there, thither, thence, where?), or causal (why?).
Adversative conjunctions link items of equal status but with an element of contrast (but, however).
Affricate is a consonant that combines both plosive and fricative components (e.g. ts, $d z$ and ch as in church).
Anaphoric pronouns are identical with personal pronouns.
Aorist is another term for simple past tense (e.g. I sat down, he died, we watched the match).
Aspect is a verbal category that intersects with the category of tense. Consider the examples I watched TV last night for two hours compared with I was watching TV last night for two hours. Both verbs are in the past tense, but the same event has its unfolding described differently: the second verb form stresses the continuous aspect of the event, such that the imperfect indicative (in both English and Georgian) combines past tense and continuous aspect. In Georgian the opposition between perfective (completed activity) and imperfective aspect (uncompleted activity) will also be of relevance.

Auxiliary verbs are those used to help in the formation of a part of the lexical verb (e.g. the English past participle is produced with the aid of the auxiliary having, as in having come). Auxiliaries are common in English but rare in Georgian.
Bipersonal verbs are those containing two agreement markers.
Bivalent verbs are those with two arguments. Transitive verbs are bivalent by virtue of having a subject and direct object, while an intransitive verb may be bivalent by virtue of having a subject and indirect object, which is a common occurrence in Georgian.
Cases are the different forms nouns may take in languages where nouns alter in some way according to the grammatical role they play in their clause. Georgian has seven of them (nominative, vocative, ergative, dative, genitive, instrumental, adverbial).
Causal conjunctions are linking words that indicate an explanation. They may be coordinating (for) or subordinating (since, as, because).
Causative is a particular type of verb form used to indicate that the subject (causer) somehow gets another person (the causee) to carry out the verbal action.
Clauses are sequences of words containing a finite verb; they may be subordinate (e.g. when you came home, if he had done his duty, because I love you) or main, in which case they may function as simple sentences (e.g. I saw you, I shall kiss you).
Collective nouns are common nouns signifying groupings (army, clergy, judiciary).
Common nouns are nouns which are not proper nouns.
Complex sentences contain at least two clauses, where one is subordinate to the other (e.g. when you came home, I saw you; if he had done his duty, he would have been rewarded; because I love you, I shall kiss you).
Compound sentences contain at least two clauses of equal status (e.g. I see you and recognise you; You looked at me, and I went out; John likes Jane, but Bill loves Mary).
Concessive conjunctions are linking words that indicate a concession. They may be subordinating (although, even if) or co-ordinating (albeit).
Concrete nouns are common nouns referring to physical objects (women, town, shoe)
Conditional conjunctions are linking words that indicate the circumstance in which the action of the main clause will take place (if).
Conjoining conjunctions link words, phrases or clauses of equal status (and, also).
Conjugation is the pattern of change undergone by finite verb forms as they show agreement with their various arguments in their different tense/mood/aspect forms.
Conjunctions link words, phrases or sentences. They may be co-ordinating or subordinating.
Copula is the intransitive verb to be, named as such because it serves primarily to link the subject to something else in the clause. In such examples as the book is an encyclopcedia/yours/here, the three possibilities following the copula represent respectively a noun, adjective or adverb complement. In many languages the copula is irregular.
Dative is the name of the case used primarily to indicate an indirect object (or, under certain circumstances in Georgian, either the subject or direct object), which is typically the recipient with such verbs as give (e.g. you give the pen to Max)
Declension is a set of changes characterising the different case forms a given noun may take. Georgian basically has only one declensional pattern.
Deliberative questions are those containing the idea of obligation (e.g. what am I to do?; Is she to stand up?)

Demonstrative adjectives point to the noun they qualify (this/that book, these/those books).
Demonstrative pronouns have a two-way contrast in English (e.g. take this (one) compared with that (one); take these/those) but a three-way contrast in Georgian.
Disjunctive conjunctions are co-ordinating and link items of equal status where there is an element of choice (or, nor).
Dynamic is used of verbs expressing a verbal action.
Emphatic pronouns in English are formally identical with reflexives but have a different function (e.g. I did it myself; they themselves wish it).
Ergative is the name of a case found in some languages that is used to mark at least some subjects of transitive verbs.
Finite forms of the verb are those which, when accompanied by appropriate arguments, can form a simple sentence (e.g. see in I see you).
Fricative is a consonant produced by creating turbulence in the airstream emanating from the lungs; the lip or tongue is brought close to some other part of the vocal tract to form a narrow channel in which the air vibrates (e.g. $s, s h, z$ ).
Genitive is the name of the case used to mark the possessor (e.g. father's pipe) or when one noun qualifies another (e.g. box of crackers).
Gerund is a non-finite form of the verb, which may act grammatically as a noun (Bill's coming surprised everyone; Bill's killing upset us all). There is only one verbal noun in Georgian, and, though it could be called a gerund, it is conventionally called the masdar.
Glottalisation is a feature of certain plosives and affricates in Georgian, which is absent from standard English, although English speakers do sometimes glottalise $p, t$ or $k$ when speaking with intensity. The vocal chords close, as for the traditional cockney but now ever more widespread articulation of $t t$ in bottle, and are opened immediately after the closure in the mouth for the plosive or affricate concerned, lending the acoustic effect of sharpness to the articulation.
Imperative mood is employed for the issuing of orders.
Inceptive is a particular type of verb form that marks the start of the verbal activity.
Indefinite pronouns mark (degrees of) uncertainty (anyone/anything), someone/something).
Indicative mood describes events as facts in time (e.g. Mary fainted yesterday; John will appear on stage at 7 o'clock).
Infinitive is a non-finite form of the verb acting grammatically as a noun (e.g. (to) come, (to) kill). Modern Georgian has no infinitives.
Instrumental is the name of the case used to mark the instrument by means of which an action is carried out (e.g. I hit it with the hammer).
Interjections are words simply 'thrown' into sentences to express emotion (e.g. gosh! alas! blimey! oh!).
Interrogative conjunctions are linking words used to mark a question (whether) that introduces indirect questions (e.g. I wonder whether he will come).
Interrogative pronouns appear in questions (e.g. who(m) did you see? whose book is $i t$ ?).
Intransitive verbs are those that have a subject but no direct object (e.g. I am reading; John was sleeping; Mary died).
Manner conjunctions are linking words indicating the manner in which an action is realised (as, as if, as though).

Masdar is the Georgian verbal noun (see gerund).
Medial verbs are a particular class of verbs in Georgian that seem to share features of both transitive and intransitive verbs.
Monopersonal verbs are those containing only one agreement marker.
Monovalent verbs are those taking only one argument (i.e. the subject).
Mood is the verbal category that indicates the disposition of the speaker towards the truth of what he is saying.
Morphemes are the basic units of grammatical analysis (e.g. in John killed Jane, the verb killed consists of at least two morphemes: one is the lexical unit kill, the other, shown by $-e d$, marks the grammatical feature of pastness). If morphemes are abstract concepts, their concrete realisations are known as morphs.
Morphology is the study of the way words are composed of the basic units of grammatical analysis (morphemes).
Negative pronouns are such words as none, no one, nothing.
Nominative is the name given to the grammatical case used as the basic (citation) form of the noun. Usually it will be the case of the subject with intransitive verbs.
Non-finite forms of the verb are those that cannot serve to form a complete utterance (e.g. see or seeing in the phrase to see/seeing films; by adding a finite verb we can produce a complete utterance such as I like to see/seeing firms).
Nouns are the names of objects/concepts and may distinguish singular from plural forms
Oblique case is a generic term covering all cases other than the nominative in those languages that have a case system.
Paradigm is a set of changes to a noun as it declines or to a verb as it conjugates.
Participles are non-finite forms of verbs acting as adjectives (I saw Bill killing the sheep; having come in, Bill sat down). Georgian has four participles: active, future, past and privative.
Passive voice often expresses what is done to the subject, so that the passive subject is in these cases equivalent to the direct object of the equivalent active (e.g. two houses were destroyed (by the workman), where in English the 'doer' or agent may be either present or omitted). Passives are intransitive, although they may take an indirect object (especially in Georgian), but not all verbs with typically passive markings will necessarily be transformations of active expressions. For example, the Georgian equivalent of the door opens (where in English opens is an intransitive active) will contain a verb form that is traditionally viewed as manifesting passive morphology. This is further proof that grammatical categories applicable in one language are not always clearly establishable in another.
Perfect in English is usually described as a tense indicating a past event with present relevance (e.g. John has died). In Georgian it often conveys that the speaker is not vouching for the truth of what he is stating and may thus be interpreted as more a mood than a tense.
Periphrastic refers to an alternative way of expressing some idea.
Personal pronouns usually distinguish at least person and number (e.g. I/me, you, he/him she/her, we/us, they/them).
Phonemes are the distinctive units of sound in individual languages.
Phonetics is the study of sounds produced by the human vocal apparatus without reference to individual languages.
Phonology is the study of the sound systems of individual languages.

Phrases are groups of words that do not contain a finite verb but that form meaningful sequences (e.g. the black cat, in the front room, breeding rabbits, spending sleepless nights, having stupidly fired his gun).
Plosive is a consonant produced by stopping the airstream from the lungs and then releasing the closure when the air has built up behind it. In English, plosives may be voiced $(b, d, g)$ or voiceless $(p, t, k)$, whereas in Georgian there is an extra series of glottalised voiceless plosives, or ejectives ( $p^{\prime}, t^{\prime}, k^{\prime}$ ); Georgian also has ejective affricates (e.g. $t s$ ').
Possessive adjectives are built on the personal pronouns and show possession (my, your, our, their, his).
Possessive pronouns identify the owner of an entity (e.g. mine, yours, ours, hers, theirs).
Postpositions are the class of words used like prepositions in languages such as English but that stand after the nouns and pronouns they govern.
Prepositions are the class of words that are used in front of nouns and pronouns to indicate their relation to other words (e.g. on, in, under, beside, from, to).
Preverbs are parts of the Georgian verb that have a variety of functions, although originally they indicated direction. They often combine with the root to change the overall meaning of the verb. They may be compared with the prepositional elements making up the second component of English phrasal verbs (e.g. look up/back/down/ around/at/into).
Privative is used to describe certain types of adjective (including participles) that contain a negative notion (e.g. unpitying, fatherless).
Pronouns are elements that stand in place of nouns.
Proper nouns are the names of persons (George Smiley, Zaza), towns (London, Tbilisi) and countries (England, Georgia) and in English are written with a capital letter.
Purposive conjunctions are linking words that indicate the aim of an activity. They are subordinating only ((in order) that).
Reflexive pronouns indicate identity, normally with the subject (e.g. I/he/we saw myself/himself/ourselves).
Relative conjunctions are linking words used to introduce relative clauses ((the time) where; (the place) where/whither/whence; (the manner) how; (the reason) why).
Relative pronouns in English are formally identical to the interrogatives but have a different function (e.g. kiss the boy who(m) you saw; show me the girl whose book it is).
Resultative/consecutive conjunctions are linking words that indicate a result. They may be co-ordinating (therefore) or subordinating ((so) that).
Semantics is the study of meaning.
Sentences are sequences of words, containing at least one finite verb, that represent complete utterances in themselves.
Simple sentences contain only one clause (e.g. I saw you; I shall kiss you).
Stative verbs are a small group of special verb forms used to indicate a state rather than an action.
Subjunctive mood, where it exists, usually describes events less factually than the indicative. In English it has only a few residual forms (e.g. God bless you; if I were you; I ask that he attend) but in Georgian it is widely attested.
Subordinate clauses are those that cannot stand alone but are linked to a main clause. They can be nominal if they stand in place of nouns (e.g. that you are here surprises me; I know that you are ill), adjectival if they replace adjectives (such as most
relative clauses, e.g. the boy whom I met yesterday), or adverbial if they function as adverbs (e.g. when you arrive, we shall leave; he went out in order that he might see the film). Though the sequence from the house (which we have just bought) contains the bracketed relative clause with its own finite verb, this is dominated by the preposition from, and thus the whole sequence represents a prepositional phrase.
Suppletion is where one root substitutes for another in certain well defined circumstances.
Syncope occurs when an internal vowel of a word disappears under certain conditions.
Syntax is the study of the way words are put together to form longer meaningful units.
Temporal conjunctions are linking words that indicate the time when the action of the main clause takes place (when, as soon as, after, before).
Tense is the grammatical analogue to time in the real world. In English, verbs distinguish between past tense, present tense and future tense.
Transitive verbs are those where the action carried out by the subject directly affects or perhaps results in the entity we call the direct object (e.g. I kill the mosquito; she wrote a letter). When a transitive verb has two objects, one direct and the other indirect, it may be styled 'di-transitive' and it is, of course, trivalent.
Verbs are parts of speech which denote actions or states.
Version is a category of the Georgian verb, expressed by different vowels standing before the root, used to express certain types of relation between the verbal arguments. Georgian has neutral version, subjective version, objective version and locative version (as explained in the relevant Lessons).
Vigesimal is a method of counting based on units of twenty, whereas the more usual pattern in languages is based on units of ten and called 'decimal'.
Vocative is the name of the case used when addressing one's fellow interlocutor (e.g. come here, John).
Voice (or 'diathesis') is the verbal category that usually distinguishes at least an active from a passive.

## Key to the exercises

## Lesson 1

2 (a) gamarǰobat; (b) amindi/midian; (c) madloba; (d) rogora xart; (e) jalian; (f) magram; (g) mšoblebi; (h) dganan.

3 (a) ingliseli; (b) madloba; (c) mivdivar(t); (d) mšvidoba; (e) savarjeli; (f) saavadmq'opo; (g) surati; (h) mšvidobisa(t).
4 (a) cudi; (b) čemi; (c) k’argad; (d) sasiamovno; (e) eg; (f) čveni; (g) nela; (h) imati; (i) cudad/avad.

5 (a) k'argi sk'ola; (b) čveni saxli; (c) balaxze; (d) misi logini; (e) tkveni surati; (f) čemi mšoblebi; (g) kalakši; (h) ra k'argi loginia!.
6 (a) Thank you, Nana, this is very good. (b) Today I am (we are) going to school. (c) My parents are sitting here. (d) Where are you going? We are going to the centre. (e) They are at the hospital. They are ill. (f) Why are you (pl.) running to town? (g) How are you? Very well, thank you.
7 (a) dġes kalakši mivdivar; (b) sada xar(t)? ak vzivar loginze; (c) irak'li da zurabi k'inoši midian; (d) sad midixart/mibrjandebit? saavadmq'opoši mivdivart; (e) eseni arian/ gaxlavan čemi mšoblebi; (f) tkveni saxlebi sad ari(s)/sadaa? (g) rat'om c'vanan balaxze? (h) čven vsxedvart - isini/igini dganan.




## Lesson 2



3 (a) uk'acravad excuse me; (b) otxmocdametvramet'e 98th; (c) mat'areblebi trains; (d) sxdebit you (pl.) sit down; (e) rvis naxevarze at half past seven; (f) daaxloebit approximately; (g) romeli saatia? what time is it?; (h) damouk'idebloba independence.
4 (a) meoce; ocši; (b) xutšabati; xutšabats; (c) jmebi; (d) kališvili; (e) albat; (f) rodis?; (g) tebervali; tebervalši; oc tebervals; (h) naxevrebi.

5 (a) p'irvelia = p'irveli saatia; p'irvelze = p'irvel saatze; p'irvel saatze; (b) tertmet'is tvramet' $\mathrm{ia}=$ tertmet'is tvramet' i c'utia; tertmet' is tvramet'ze $=$ tertmet'is tvramet' c'utze; at saatze da tvramet' c'utze; (c) otxis naxevaria; otxis naxevarze; txutmet' saatze da ocdaat c'utze; (d) p'irvels ak'lia/uk'lia ati (c'uti); roca p'irvels ak'lia/uk'lia ati (c'uti); ormocdaat c'utze; (e) cxras ak'lia/uk'lia ocdarva (c'uti); roca cxras ak'lia/uk'lia ocdarva (c'uti); oc saatze da ocdatormet' c'utze; (f) p'irvelis atia =
p'irvelis at c'utia; p'irvelis atze = p'irvelis at c'utze; tormet' saatze da at c'utze; (g) cxras ak'lia/uk'lia erti (c'uti); roca cxras ak'lia/uk'lia erti (c'uti); rva saatze da ormocdacxramet' c'utze; (h) tormet' is txutmet'ia = tormet' is txutmet'i c'utia; tormet' is txutmet'ze $=$ tormet'is txutmet' c'utze; ocdasam saatze da txutmet' c'utze.
6 (a) Why are those brothers coming into our house? (b) At what time do your daughters get up? They get up early and go to bed late. (c) Those two friends of our parents are coming/arriving early tonight. (d) On which bed are those children by you lying down/On which bed do those children lie down (= go to bed)? On this bed (on this one). (e) When it is your birthday, you get up early, don't you? Yes, I get up at seven o'clock (at seven). (f) Either tonight at half past eleven or tomorrow at a quarter past six we are going to the station. (g) Who is in this one? That (by you) is my father. In that one your mother is sitting. (h) On the first day of the third week in May we regularly go to the sea.








* Note that although the human subject is semantically plural, it is morphologically singular, so it is the singular form of the root that must be used: one cannot say here *เbcogる。

8 The answer depends on each reader's birth date.

## Lesson 3



3 (a) mogeg6o fimols bum(๓)? How old are you? (b) jumb6n@ob from the factory; (c)






5 (a) The naughty lads went into the factory and sat on the floor. (b) A large 42-yearold tortoise slowly came out of your (pl.) yard. (c) Than whom are you taller? I am the tallest, aren't I? (d) From which town did you come last night? We came from Moscow. (e) In your opinion, how old was that man when he came to our house? (f) With whom did you go to Tbilisi? We went to Tbilisi with the best Georgian women. (g) Their neighbours went up to the eighth floor, went into the boss's office and sat down, but they stood up when the boss came in. (h) Why have you come to our place? Because tonight we are going to the cinema. You are coming with us, aren't you?







7 The answer depends on the reader's birth date.

## Lesson 4




 (h) fobslform in advance.












7 (a) What are you cutting? I am cutting the dough. (b) The English eat Caucasian beans, don't they? They drink Georgian wine, don't they? (c) Now what are you putting on the table? I am putting the scales on the table. (d) How many windows are your sisters painting today? (e) My grandmother is sweeping the floor with a large brush, whereas my mother is watering my father's plants. (f) Until what time did you sit in the guest room last night? I sat there until ten. (g) What are Zurab's brothers translating? They are translating your letters into Georgian. (h) Why do I train these men when they only sit at home and drink coffee?

## Lesson 5



















6 (a) I am tidying up the room, whereas Shota is cleaning out his ear. (b) Somehow these Englishmen are earning/earn a reputation for themselves. (c) Why are you washing your hand(s)? Someone (known to me) has come and we are going to eat something (known to me). (d) Who is seated on the suitcase and what is he doing? That is Zurab, and he is scratching his head. (e) Their daughter is getting up, putting on her coat and (putting on) her hat; she is probably going somewhere. (f) The child is putting a dress on the doll, is putting a hat on it and is now lying down/going to bed together with it. (g) Why do I wake up as a rule so early (as this) when I am not ill? (h) If you rent the flat to the tenant, why are you giving him/her money?







## Lesson 6










4 (a) byab o๐gb The teacher will show me to you; (b) $0 \circ$ bl We shall kill ourselves; (c)

 Who will give you to me?; (g) ๓дom(mb) The woman will drink this wine herself; (h) $B_{3 g^{66}}^{6 \leq g b}$ They will show us to their parents.



6 (a) I/we shall send you (pl.)/we shall send you/X will send you (pl.); (b) you (pl.) will see me; (c) they will dress us; (d) they will undress you/you (pl.); (e) I know you; (f) X knows us; (g) I/we tire you (pl.)/we tire you/X tires you (pl.); (h) you choke me.







8 （a）Will the soldiers take anything off us？（b）I shall plant a few plants and then I shall wash my hand（s），wake up the baby and put the red dress on her．（c）Why are you putting your coat on？Are you going somewhere？I am going to the neigh－ bours＇－I shall get something back．（d）What a long time you have been sitting there！ What＇s going on？I am just resting．If I go to sleep，you will wake me before 2，won＇t you？Of course．（e）How much will you lend me？Since you are ill，I shall lend you 1，000 lari．Thank you．（f）The parents will entrust the（ir）children to me tomorrow． At school I shall show them many interesting things．Then their parents will give me a lot of money，won＇t they？（g）I shall wake you（pl．）up at 7 ．Then you yourselves will get dressed，wash your face（s）and snatch a bite to eat，won＇t you？（h）They won＇t execute us，will they？No，our friends will soon set us free．Good，otherwise I shall kill myself．



 （pl．）take article（／s）of clothing off me $\rightarrow a^{\text {b} \text { goon，（j）} \mathrm{X} \text { shows } \mathrm{Y} / \text { them to them } \rightarrow}$



## Lesson 7

| ＠．3的丘 | ＠o3069 |  | 2o369\％ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ＠onfor | 2mofym | 2ol69\％ |
|  |  |  | 2osfomb |
| ＠o369\％m | ＠o30¢9\％om |  |  |
| ¢っかの年の | ＠onfymom |  |  |
| ＠ofornja | ＠on¢jarg 6 |  | 20ヶ695ma |








 fulfil their request．
3 （a） $\operatorname{molsog}_{3}$ That which／What they are saying is not true；（b）madmgobogob（os） Those women for whom you came are my aunts；（c） $3^{\circ \sigma_{3}}$ Greetings to the one who has come in！；（d）madmol Tomorrow I shall see that man whose father is sitting on that chair；（e） $3^{\circ} \mathrm{b}_{3} 5\left(\mathrm{o}_{3}\right)$ You know everyone from whom you will receive a present； （f）的dambors I know well that teacher whom you will ring tonight；（g）molsor Everything that you see is mine；（h） $3^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}{ }_{3}$ I too shall write to everyone to whom you will send a letter．
4 （a）＠งдп

5 （a）we shall send X to Y；（b）I shall take it／them to X；（c）you（pl．）will take me （there）；（d）you（pl．）are translating it／them for us；（e）you（pl．）will give it／them to
us; (f) I am writing it/them for you (pl.)/we are writing it/them for you/we are writing $\mathrm{it} /$ them for you ( pl.$) / \mathrm{X}$ is writing it/them for you (pl.); (g) they will bring you/they will bring (some person(s)) to you; (h) X is lying (flat) on us.
6 (a) Zurab, why don't you fulfil our request(s) as a rule? (b) Who are those lads beside whom your sisters are sitting? (c) If anyone writes anything on the wall, you will tell me, won't you, madam? (d) What will you buy for me and bring me, dad, from that shop that they will open later in town? (e) What on earth do our enemies intend to do to us? Will they really kill our parents? (f) If you give me the handset and dial the number for me, I shall be much obliged, lad, as I am unable to manage that. (g) Your cousin is going to France. If I write to her, she will send me, won't she, a letter? She and her husband too will probably send you a letter. (h) If your teacher is ill today, it doesn't matter - I shall teach you (pl.) Georgian grammar and mathematics from these books.










* The bracketed alternative is less liked by native speakers but included for practice with the locative version.







 дмдз๐ถ゚งбјб



## Lesson 8

|  | ¢oşc3omy | $3.303^{\circ 66}$ | $3 \times 3 \mathrm{bbomo}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \%2ys30 |  | $3^{300} 3^{060}$ | $3^{\text {albuemo }}$ | @osab 39 |
| эym | ¢o.33) | $3^{000} 3^{6 m}$ | 3olbemo | @osabm |
| 3๊y³00 |  | $3^{3} 3^{\circ}$ (3)60\% | 3.3bbemoon |  |
| эy> ${ }^{\text {an }}$ | ¢o¢zorjom | $3^{000}$ (3600m | bubbemon |  |
| ny39 ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | @oçormb | $3^{\circ 00} 3(3) 6 \mathrm{~g}^{\text {b }}$ | $3^{\text {ubbejab }}$ | @osab $\mathrm{zag}^{\text {l }}$ |






 window.




















8 (a) Who cut your hair? I cut it myself. It's good, isn't it? Of course. (b) I did introduce to you and your husband my new wife last year, didn't I? (c) The guard told me that you are ill. It was precisely for this reason that I came and brought you these apples. (d) I got that shirt which I put on yesterday dirty at school. And so mother hit me but then washed it for me. Did you start to cry? (e) What did the teacher teach you today, lads? Today (s)he taught us only one French poem. (f) You did explain everything well to the children, when they were unable to translate that letter into Georgian, didn't you? I explained to them everything which was difficult. (g) Why did Zurab switch off the television? The neighbours rang us. Their child is ill, and Zurab will bring the doctor to him/her by car. (h) Where did the policemen arrest the thief? He burgled your friend's house. When he came out of the house, they noticed him, arrested him and took him to the police station.













## Lesson 9

$1 \mathrm{ay} \mathrm{ob}^{2} /$ ozo $^{\circ} 3^{\circ} 3^{\circ}$



 ปృon ob/ozo ก(zosb

 nt/ozo дゝt on

 olobo/ozobo dul п_(zbmд







2 (a) $\partial_{\mathfrak{y}}$ no $3^{\circ} \jmath^{\circ}$ ? What do I know? (= How should I know?); (b) saьl $3^{\circ}$ дmayocoot?




 father is!
























7 (a) After you write that letter, you will prepare lunch for us, won't you? (b) I, as their teacher, took the sweets off the children. (c) We all know that, as soon as the police learn anything, they will inform us. (d) What did you tell the Georgian you brought home last night about England? (e) We too are paying them the same sort of attention the teachers are paying to us. (f) If the teacher writes you a ' 5 ' (i.e. top marks), that won't upset you, will it, lads? (g) I met the girl who phoned me yesterday at the/a cinema. (h) That the girl phoned me yesterday surprises me very much.
 (b) пиœ












## Lesson 10

1 The future forming preverb is given in brackets.

|  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| (@) $39^{\text {a mej }} \mathrm{g}^{\text {bon }}$ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |









4 (a) $X$ will be sent (hither); (b) we give $X$; (c) you (pl.) will touch $X$; (d) $X$ will be decided; (e) you (pl.) will tell X to us; (f) we are doing X to you/you (pl.)/I am doing X to you (pl.); (g) they will flop down; (h) you (pl.) will bite me, (i) they will be wrong, (j) X is warming for them, (k) we trust $\mathrm{X} /$ them, (l) you (pl.) are hiding, (m) $X$ will be translated, ( $n$ ) $X$ will come to them $=$ they will get $X$, (o) I shall become sovereign, (p) you (pl.) will believe $\mathrm{X} /$ them.





















7 (a) When you meet your wife, what will you say to her about what will happen tomorrow in Tbilisi? (b) Your friends are greatly mistaken if they think that the enemy will not attack us and will surrender to us today. (c) For whom is your mother waiting? She is waiting for my brother. After he comes, mother will take us to town where she will take us to the doctor. He will examine our hair. (d) What's going on, man? Why are you all behaving so badly? If the teacher unexpectedly sneaks in upon us (comes to stand over us), (s)he will take us all to the school's director (= school head), and (s)he will show us what for! (e) If this house catches fire, our books will be burned, the house too will itself be completely ruined, and we shall lose everything. Then where shall we be? (f) What I am saying to you is understandable for you, isn't it? If you stay here a little while, you will have a good rest, and then you will get everything done in time. This way is best, isn't it? (g) What will your relatives do if a fifth daughter is born to them? They think that this time a son will be born to them. (h) How many letters you get as a rule! Now what is your mother writing? I don't know why, but she writes that a man will lose a little and gain a little. She is correct. When you write to your mother, you will pass on to her best regards from me, won't you?





## Lesson 11

|  | @o3or $32^{\text {¢o }}$ | @ogrydumə |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | @๐0\% 32 mo |  |
|  | @om3的 | @orydoms |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  | $\sim \sim 3.808180$ |  |
|  | ¢00. $0^{\circ} \mathrm{J}$ | Foodas |
| ¢ojavems | $\sim \sim 02080$ | $\square \mathrm{O} \mathrm{d} 3^{\circ}$ |
|  |  |  |
|  |  | fondas |
| @ogдombj6 | foodrojer | foode $\mathrm{f}^{\text {b }}$ |





 дмдпудз๐?* what did I relate to you yesterday?
 example from Vazha-Pshavela, quoted in the Academy Dictionary, of the original intran-
 his own adventure(s) to the priest.


4 (a) we dined; (b) it was translated for us; (c) they put on weight; (d) you lost them; (e) you will ask for X; (f) they are coming crying; (g) you (pl.) followed me; (h) $\mathrm{it} /$ /hey turned red for you (pl.); (i) you (pl.) got set in motion; (j) they were somewhere to meet me; (k) we shall learn X; (l) you (pl.) lost weight; (m) I tried; (n) you (pl.) pinched us; (o) they will read X/will ask; (p) we ran out.







 words can also mean you (pl.) gave X to me, where the verb is construed transitively.)
7 (a) Since it rained yesterday from 10 o'clock to 5, we stayed at home. And so we do not know and shall be unable to tell you what happened in town, but we know that guests visited us at 4. (b) What happened to you (pl.)? You are not ill, are you? I feel bad - I feel sick. God knows how my wife and I survived. Gracious, what happened to you (pl.)? (c) I'll tell you everything that happened to us. This car is no good at all - it's conked out on us. When the tyre burst, my wife fainted, while I suffered a dizzy spell. The wheel spun out of my hand and we hit a tree. (d) Did the policemen arrest the hooligans who pestered you earlier or not? (e) How should I know? It's just good that, as soon as the policemen approached us, those hooligans left me alone. (f) Why have you grown bored with our spread? You are greatly mistaken, sir - it's just that sleep got the better of me. Excuse me! (g) Do you think it will snow tomorrow (just) the way it snowed yesterday? How our dogs barked last night! (h) Does your boy study well? When we enrol him with the new teacher, he will probably study better and learn all his lessons well.










##  

## Lesson 12

| Fozod $\mathrm{m}^{\text {om }}$ | Posodz3 | 30350ろm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Food $8^{\circ \mathrm{om}}$ | foodea | 3000\％\％m |
| Food $0^{\text {omb }}$ | ¢ 00 dag ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | 30．0．bmb |
|  |  |  |
| fooderomo | ¢0っd（3） |  |
| Foodiomb | Poode $\mathrm{S}^{\text {g }}$ | 3دЈmठ̀m6 |
|  |  |  |
| $\chi^{\text {Job }}$ |  |  |
| $3^{\text {sondjb }}$ |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| д30\％るの＂ |  |  |
|  |  |  |














 ＠g＠




 zolbems 3 ．
7 （a）If it＇s not possible for us to open the door and enter the house，what are we to do？（b）Why must we force wine on foreigners？It＇s possible this may be considered bad behaviour on the part of us Georgians．（c）Sit at the table．I have to fetch some－ thing from the shop．If possible，I urge you to pour wine for the other guests．I＇ll come soon．（d）I translated for you（pl．），didn＇t I，those words（i．e．Do not lean against the doors！）which you see on the door？So why did you lean against them？ （e）At the post office they will explain to you how a postcard should be sent to England．It＇s possible there is a big queue，but you should stand there and wait． （f）Mum，I should be at the station at 11．Is it possible for someone to meet
me? Your father will certainly meet you. Don't be late. Now I have to put down the receiver. (g) Let someone explain to us exactly what happened to our friends, then we must go and help them. (h) Don't let the wheel spin out of your hand, otherwise it's possible you'll hit something. I should also remind you that you'll lose nothing, if you are late by one hour, only let no misfortune befall you on the way!























## Lesson 13

|  | $32 y^{\text {m.ma }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | aymma ${ }^{\text {do }}$ | วy930ヶbum |
| $3^{3} \times 3^{\text {b }}$ | วуmend | эу\%ง๙и |
|  | 39ymmaban |  |
| зу>3 ${ }^{\text {bumm }}$ | аумmg ${ }^{\text {bom }}$ |  |
| з 3 ¢ $3^{\text {b }}$ | aymmab | วy3 ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ |
|  | ว๐6¢ | วмзขб¢о |
| ขудоузью¢ | зоб¢ | дмขŋб¢о |
|  | yb¢os | 2mขy¢¢ |
|  | $33^{\text {об¢ }}$ | дмдуб¢оп |
|  | $3^{\text {ob@oon }}$ | дмөуб¢о\% |
|  | ybeom | дмข⿰б¢¢ |





 (pl.)) be afraid, we are bringing everything!








6 (a) they took fright; (b) X (sing./pl.) will have me; (c) they will feel a desire for X (sing./pl.); (d) we remember you (pl.); (e) they thought; (f) you (pl.) prefer X (sing./pl.); (g) they will like X (sing./pl.); (h) we have X (sing./pl.) lying (somewhere).

7 (a) Who does that woman think I am? Has she gone crazy, or what's it all about? (b) When will you know the answer? Don't be afraid, as soon as I find out, I'll ring you and let you know. (c) Don't put yourself to any trouble, please. We must go soon we are in a hurry - and we don't want any coffee. (d) Will you be able to put its shirt on this child? If it doesn't have it on when its mother returns from town, she will be very angry with me. (e) In what language do you want us to speak? In Georgian or in English? I personally prefer Georgian to English. (f) Mother wants us to buy apples in town. In that case we can stay here, as father is already fetching them - look! (g) Where did I put my pen? Have you really forgotten that it is lying on your table? You should put it in the kind of place that you will not forget! (h) I think (that) I have fallen in love with Nana, and I want to marry her. Okay, but what feelings does Nana have towards you? If I am not mistaken, she loves me. And if you are mistaken, do you think she'll soon fall in love with you?

















* The latter alternative is preferred for this expression.




 （302 $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{m}}$ ）





## Lesson 14

| $3^{\circ}$ Ø̊ym＠o | $3^{\text {д¢лのмм＠}}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ○ீум¢о | дœуウм＠ை |  |
| －¢¢¢＠ |  | dが边 |
| 3＾O̊ym＠om |  |  |
| ○Øிym＠om |  | \％＇rogom |
|  |  |  |
| $3^{\circ} \mathrm{dt} \mathfrak{y}^{\text {bm＠}}$ |  |  |
|  | $\mathrm{j}^{\text {¢¢мдбм＠о }}$ |  |
|  |  |  |
|  | $33^{6}$ ¢пбдм¢оо | $3394 m \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{a}^{\text {bm＠}}$ ¢ $\mathrm{g}^{\text {l }}$ |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |






 come．








7 （a）If I knew the answer，I＇d certainly tell you，believe me！（b）If your friend is interested in my opinion，I would advise him to stay here and not to go any－ where．（c）If you（pl．）were to take my parents to town，I＇d be much obliged．（d） When we met last week，where exactly were you going？You weren＇t taking the car to the garage，were you？No，I was taking fruit to the market．（e）If you were to come to our place tomorrow at 12 ，you would see our new daughter－／sister－in－ law．（f）I＇ll try to come，but I can＇t give you a promise that I＇ll be on time．I may be late．Try not to be late．If you come，it＇s better you come on time．（g）If I were to fall into a bad situation，you would help me，wouldn＇t you？（h）Of course，I would help you，but it＇s better you try not to fall into a bad situation．You agree with me， don＇t you？










＊Note that despite the repeated，regular nature of the activity，native speakers prefer the prover $\mathrm{do}_{\mathrm{o}}$ here．

Lesson 15

| дodocos | 3）dombos | ¢๐домлазоь |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| длдощо八 |  | ¢одомлдз |
| 3＇Jg＠os |  |  |
| д„z30¢оь |  |  |
| д．zomoso |  |  |
| 3a＇gMoson | 3＞yondoson |  |
| aobubogb | д๐๓งдっว（6）๐ゝ | $3^{\sim 6} \mathrm{mb}$ ¢ $33^{\circ \mathrm{m}}$ |
| zobsbo3 $3^{\text {b }}$ |  | y $y^{\text {bobog }}$ bom |
| y $\mathrm{y}_{\text {cobog }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ |  | y $\mathrm{y}^{\text {bobog }}$ b |
| $33^{\text {o6sbog }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ |  |  |
| zoбっboza |  | yb¢bozbormon |
|  |  | vabobogb |






 （have）got you（pl．）drunk．











7 （a）Have you actually spent ten months in Georgia without learning Georgian？How is it possible？（b）They say that in the war you evidently saw many interesting things
and did many interesting things - it is so, isn't it? I did see many things, but I did nothing interesting. (c) Although many foreigners attended our conference, not even one read a paper - can you imagine it?! (d) Such a tasty cake lies before me on the table that I want to devour it. (e) Although this woman has not yet given birth to (her) baby, she is still not staying in hospital. (f) Your friend has not invited us, and so how can we go? (g) She is such a woman that neither has she asked for anything nor will she ask for anything. (h) He is such a bad lad that he has probably never uttered the word 'thank you'. Don't give him anything more!










## Lesson 16

1 agbsbs
$32^{\text {bobs }}$
$j^{\text {bobs }}$
$232^{6}$ bo
$39^{\text {boboon }}$
$9^{\text {babson }}$












 us up.












7 (a) Had you (pl.) built the house on time, we would have given you more money. (b) If you had shown to me immediately the letter you received yesterday, I would not have become angry with you. (c) I should have taught you Georgian better, and if you had learnt the lessons better, you would now have known all the verbal forms. (d) Although I reached Tbilisi last night, I was unable to hand on to you that document which you should have received last week. (e) The government sent us here to arrest the thieves and take them to Moscow. (f) I asked the Georgians to send me to Svanetia, but they could not fulfil my wish. (g) Which do you (pl.) prefer, Georgian or Armenian? Although I prefer Georgian to Armenian, I still conceived a desire to learn Armenian too. (h) What did you (pl.) want to do in my bedroom? We came in here in order to change clothes, but we find it embarrassing because you are here.










## Lesson 17

| (@s) д $^{\text {ambs }}$ | วм®ึง6ง | дощg ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |
|  | дmbogrobo | 2оbo@y ${ }^{\text {\% }}$ |
|  |  |  |
| @Jддmठомо |  |  |
| (@) mglizs | (@) ᄂط2ь |  |
|  œoдágbo |  |  |
|  | (@) bobbagmo | $\left(\partial_{\text {g }}\right)$ bodabymo |
|  @ooglomo | @ılbaymo | $\mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{yd}} \mathrm{d} \mathrm{6}$ ¢mo |





 My ice cream has melted.











7 (a) When we were going there, we saw that lad who deserves to be killed. (b) The writer wrote (and) wrote but couldn't finish writing that play before his death. (c) In order to amuse her tired children (their) mother began singing. (d) The girl read that poem to the end without making a mistake. (e) Don't you have anything to do? Don't you have anywhere to go? (f) If I turn out to have somewhere to go or have something to do, I'll tell you. (g) Don't trouble yourself, I have no time to stay here, but tomorrow I'll make time to come again and to drink the coffee (you) offered today. (h) As far as your question is concerned, I can tell you that this cannot be translated without using your newly published textbook.











## Lesson 18






 дддщзмдодь์
 ддьедмдоь

 mylœдмдоد6

|  |
| :---: |
| codomzabón |
|  |
|  |
| ¢одงmzobırnon |
|  |
| $\operatorname{cosg}_{3} \mathrm{bmg}^{\text {os }}$ |
| cos $3^{\text {bmas }}$ |
| cosb $3^{\text {bmans }}$ |
| ¢o333 ${ }^{\text {bmaos }}$ |
|  |
| coble ${ }^{\text {bmancon }}$ |


| $33_{\text {gozarnzorn }}$ |
| :---: |
|  |
| sacosomo |
|  |
|  |
|  |
| $39^{\text {mamozorn }}$ |
| 3ymmoborn |
| 3ymmos (ob/ozo) |
|  |
| 3ymmobstnon |
| зумmmos (obobo/ozo6o) |




 nothing! (f) xom دmboc (om) fobvgmob They have not yet gone anywhere; (g) $3^{m \mathrm{mmb}}$















7 (a) My mother told me that my brothers had enrolled in the army, but they apparently did not enrol (have not enrolled). (b) How can you introduce that girl to me, if you yourself have never got to know or even met her? (c) The answers were apparently written in the old textbook, whereas in the new one nothing is written. (d) The hooligans apparently fled lest anyone arrest them. (e) Those foreigners apparently didn't like that spread, as following it they have not visited/did not visit us again. (f) I told you, didn't I, that that American was apparently unable to master Georgian at all? (g) Your friends apparently wanted to take you to Svanetia, but they evidently were not able to. (h) They say that Shota has apparently fallen in love with an Armenian and has apparently conceived a desire to fetch her to live in Tbilisi. Imagine it!










## Lesson 19

| $3^{\text {д\%g.ormoyozo }}$ | 34mмm@o |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дж¢отоулzo | 3уммппை |  |
| дж以окоуm | 3ymmm@s |  |
| $3^{\text {albgoumoyszom }}$ |  |  |


|  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |
| $3^{\text {Јaのgonngom＠}}$ | $\partial^{(3)}$ am＠$^{\text {m }}$ |  |
|  | $33^{\text {am＠}}$ | ข刀ldy |
| 3ubogonngom＠o | ${ }^{6}{ }_{3}$ дm＠$^{\text {m }}$ |  |
|  | $333^{\text {2m＠}}$ |  |
|  | $33^{\text {am＠um }}$ |  |
| 3ubongmmgom＠ | $\mathrm{l}_{3} \mathrm{am@um}$ |  |






 awake．






（c）ழっз







7 （a）If you（pl．）had wanted fruit，you should have said before I went to the market． （b）They were playing hide－and－seek．One of them began counting，while the others rushed off in order to hide from the one with eyes shut．（c）If we had had 1，000 lari， we would certainly have given you 900 ．（d）If you had not attended the conference， you would never have been able to get to know that scholar．（e）If a child hadn＇t been born to me at the age of 49 ，I would have died childless．（f）If that woman had married you when you asked her for her hand，she would now have been with you in England． （g）Have you been in Georgia？Yes，I spent two weeks there before I got into university． （h）Let＇s not elect this man president until we find out his opinion on our motherland＇s independence．













## Lesson 20

| @o3mpabomoym | @ 3038 dros |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| @otrijbonmoym |  |  |
| @orfjbimoymb |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| @ormbjoncmymm | @ojatmom |  |
| @orfigbomoymb | @Jjatubl |  |
| dymmm@ab |  |  |
| 3ymmm@gls |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| 34m@m@ga |  | дмдコззщəз๐бృбобмп |
| зумемм¢уの |  | дмวдзмวзобддпбмо |


 Where did you (pl.) have the horse tied up/have X (sing./pl.) tie up the horse? (d) sbocm



 be fulfilled!















7 (a) By this we do not want to say that Soviet imperial rule was pleasant for the Georgian people. (b) We must tell only the truth and get others too to tell it. (c) You are right. And so, if others accept your advice and make you listen to the truth, you won't have any grounds to get angry with them. (d) We wish that you spend (your) holidays pleasantly and that in the future you (pl.) and yours be completely happy! (e) Whom am I to get to take these letters to England? Get Zaza to take them - he will undoubtedly take them. (f) What did this dress cost? I bought it for 2,000 lari, but today it costs 10,000 . (g) I don't recall anyone going into the theatre. And so, there is no point going in until the others join us. (h) God grant that the whole world at long last learn the truth about the rights of man!












## Georgian－English vocabulary

This section consists of all the Georgian vocabulary presented in this grammar （plus some items that are not），minus the myriad non－finite forms of Lesson 17 and any new items given in the vocabularies to the proverbs，conundra and literary texts，that were not included in the first edition of this book． Verbs are listed according to their root，together with an indication of any variations．After the listing for the verb root，the present and future indica－ tives are given，in most cases with 2nd person singular（logical）subject．
 the thematic suffix is $-\jmath 8$ ，accompanied by the neutral versioniser $\lrcorner$－and （outside the present sub－series）preverb $\partial_{m}$－．Medial verbs have their present and future forms separated by a slash．Since an understanding of the verb is an absolutely crucial prerequisite for mastering Georgian，considerably more information is given here than in the grammar for some verbal roots， though no entry should be thought to be necessarily exhaustive．Subjective， objective，locative versional variants or intransitive transforms are not given unless some special point needs to be made．Each sub－entry under a verbal root is numbered，and the relevant meaning is given against the same number in the gloss．A noun（indirect object or logical subject）that stays dative even in Series II（and Series III if the verb is either intransitive or indirect） is marked＇（D）＇；＇ G ＇＝genitive，＇ I ＇＝instrumental，＇ A ＇＝adverbial，＇ N ＇＝ nominative．

| $\bigcirc$ |  |  | 1 facilitate， 2 you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 080 | well then |  | （D）find easy |
| 38＠u－vi＠ | nonsense |  |  |
| ozumozn | dacha | －¢з○мо | easy |
| －89¢ | over here | ง¢п¢วうмп | Adyghe／Circassian |
| －83018m | August |  | （person） |
|  | also |  | Adyghe／Circassian |
| －＠っдпибの | human being |  | （thing） |
|  | place | －ง＠⿰丿／－œuдп | towards（＋G） |
|  | local | －以的 | early（adv．） |


| ucongluơn | addressee | دmo | no |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | early（adj．） | دmocongzu® | unbendable |
| งз०＠думоुо | ill person | umuznonumo | none |
| －з↔думоुм | illness | ง（ruzan 6 | no one |
|  | bad，evil，fierce （poorly） |  | but（after negative） |
|  |  | unu－mozoznumumo | unofficial |
|  | Australia | งmug［0］60 | soured cream |
| ublornojmo | Austrian（person） | vinucoinmu | never |
|  | authority | umolm＠g | never |
| د\％¢n | opinion | งmulifumo | incorrect |
| somon | 1，000 | गmogh［0］mon | nothing（ X has |
| vonufingymo | millennium | （omoogan | nothing to do |
| טon | 10 | yyodno | with it） |
| へoがmajmo | decade |  | not at all！ |
| on | lo！，voila！，voici！ |  | holidays |
| ujéndumıme | forbidden |  | found |
|  | the toast passes to ．．．；Alaverdi Cathedral | － | nowhere |
|  |  |  nomlogるる | exist |
| umumo | honest |  | elections |
| umbum | probably | vinc．．．omom | neither ．．．nor |
|  | cherry |  | not one |
| งจuбuonn | packet，parcel | دMbo | canal；channel |
| งวum | vain，useless | －10yo | age |
| งдuलua | tonight | ） | like this（somehow |
| งдıy：งдuymठ／ | take pride，boast |  | or other） |
| กงдuy ${ }^{\text {b }}$ |  | ulono | such as this |
| ง28：ง23m3 | say［present sub－series］ | ， | 100 |
|  |  | － | of a hundred； |
|  | news，report； business， happening | ubm | hundred－unit note letter；element； organ |
| งabmbn | rebellion | ubusmgon | field，arena |
| งд＠๐б | so many as this | －${ }^{\text {ungen }}$ | daughter（in |
| adjónozo | America |  | patronymics） |
| vagonnjumo | American（person） | －¢¢［0］å | peach |
|  งдпбœ๐ | American（thing） weather | underoumo | commotion， disturbance |
| ง2nlo（งaumo） | this one＇s（these ones＇） |  <br>  | necessary （certainly） |
| งд๐б๐мд | for this reason such as this | vozluyl！ | oh dear！what a pity！ |
|  | either ．．or | uogbu\％jonn | Abkhazia |
|  | bill，account |  | Abkhazian（person） |
| งб¢๐\％ | proverb | －0360\％uym | Abkhazian（thing） |
| －63g | hook | of | here |
| งбठのзジゥの | classical | ৩fo（дм）2＠っ | up to this point， |
| un（0） | not |  | up to now |


| ofo－nt | here and there |  | childhood |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －foymo | belonging to here | 30\％［0］mo | market |
| －fuymmbo（zzumo | here（ness）（Touch | 30¢がymo | market（adj．） |
| －fuyḿmbzul！） | wood！） | 3ome［0］6n | fur |
| －foon | over here | Bumubo | grass |
| － | on the way here | 3［J］mo | cherry |
| －fmgan | camel | Bumozn | pillow |
| －foñymo | active | Buabu | cotton（wool） |
| omoun | no longer | 3งдるก | like cotton wool |
| －counozo6 | no longer anyone | Зงб： 1 （œ）Зงб， | 1 wash， 2 wash |
|  | no longer anything | $2 \text { (@u) ๑৪งб }$ |  |
| د¢nom：unoumgs | confess； acknowledge | Зงбง（3）： 1 Зงбum8／ กВงбงзวる， | 1 take a bath， 2 （will）bath X |
|  | exceeding | 2 งชงбงзл ${ }^{8}$ |  |
|  | superlative | 3ง6n | roof；Georgian |
|  | excellence； excellency | 30бзп， | $\begin{aligned} & \text { letter 'b' } \\ & \text { bank } \end{aligned}$ |
| －＜．amuzzman | east | 306 fm | cards |
|  | eastern（person） |  | 1 entrust X to |
|  | flourishing | 2 aпful anjou＇rgon， | $\mathrm{Y}(\mathrm{D}), 2$ be |
| －${ }^{\text {coso }}$ | vaccinating |  | consigned to earth |
| งbuçzo\％血＠っ | young person |  | $=$ buried， 3 deposit |
| $\mathrm{ub}[0] \mathrm{mo}$ | new | 5 （＠）ņumjz， | pass（exams）， |
| abmo | now |  | 4 be handed／ |
|  льммззедо | approach | 7 （ho）nるumg <br> （ $=$ nonutigas | hand self over to $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ， |
|  | close（friend） | $=$ nozu／onis ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | 5 summon， |
| ubmml | near |  | 6 transfer responsibility |
| 3 |  |  | for X to Y |
|  | 1 tie up， 2 fasten， |  | （D）， 7 take |
|  | 3 bind to， 4 get |  | responsibility for |
| 3 （дп）งชงд， | stuck into（some |  | X upon oneself |
|  | affair）， 5 spin | Bunuon | card |
| 5 fummu／ | web（network）／ | Bumizo | luggage |
| Loyb［0］mb／ | hold a long | Bum＠u | pea（s） |
|  | conversation／ | Bunga | just |
| 6 bj 6uymogl | catch in a trap， | 30§3［u］50 | lamb |
| （am）nठual， 7 | 6 tree puts on |  | infectious |
| byl buymozn دठno | a fruit， 7 tree |  | diseases |
|  | （D）has a fruit on it | उ०ठ¢m6n | lord，master， mister，sir |
| 3080 y | grandad | Buठ¢mbyambu | feudalism |
| 3080 | lip | bumo | garden |
| Bue：（＠）రu¢93 | give birth to | 30f［0］mon | rope |
| ठ๑＠） | net | ${ }^{3} 9$ mo | sound |
| Bu＠moz［0］60 | aubergine | $\square^{\text {bobou }}$ | grandmother |
| $\mathrm{Bu}_{3} \mathrm{~m}^{\circ}$ | child |  | patch |


|  <br>  | 1 dare， 2 dare |  | radish |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | to do X against | ठmmeminotyumbu | epilogue |
|  | Y （D） | 3mnmoro | evil |
|  | fate，fortune （luckily for me） | 3 mlor ［0］60 | vegetable plot |
|  |  |  | vegetable（s） |
|  |  | 3mynб：（＠）zu৪－ | belch |
|  | luckless | mynбjol |  |
| Byeboymo | happy，fortunate many | 3md：ybmdjb | grant X to Y |
| ${ }^{3} 3^{\text {monn }}$ |  |  | （polite） |
|  | many times | उm尹zm | fibre |
| 子gom： 1 nuz <br>  <br>  | 1 upset，annoy， 2 you（D）grow fed up with | Bmazmoubo／ <br>  | fibrous |
|  |  | 3nome 1 | 1 accuse， 2 you |
| Вృ6\％กбก | petrol |  | （D）are accused |
| Bgm： 1 Jumn <br>  <br>  grow old）， | 1 the wind blows （on X（D））， 2 blow on X （D）， 3 fill with air |  <br>  | of X， 3 you（D） pity X |
|  |  |  | accusation |
|  |  | 3－numejoznon | accusative |
|  |  | 3inomo | fault |
| 3 （zu） 8 ¢moz |  | 3 mbm | crowd |
| ${ }^{\text {bom［g］m }}$ | barn | 3＇motzo | rice |
| Вง¢3\％ | fur | 3＇0nyz | idiot |
| 3〕ぞ「〕］＠ | ring | उかд」 | blind |
| 3\％ <br>  | spin | 3кдง（3）： <br>  | blind |
|  | quince |  | pomegranate |
| 3ก\％6̧） | business | 3íoryamo | flat |
| Bn¢gono | ticket |  | ， 1 return X， 2 get |
| Зกб๐ | flat |  | back， 3 return， |
| Зกбง 3 $_{3}$ ）： 1 <br>  <br>  | 1 give lodging to， 2 take up residence | 3 （＠） <br> 4 วงбђงб๐ <br>  | 4 turn the car round |
| Bnymm | office |  | 1 be（polite）， 2 sit |
| 3n＿zmmo（0） | uncle＇s wife | 2 ＠uర́ndu5＠o， | down！（polite）， |
| 3odu | uncle | 3 дmbenduб＠๐， | 3 come！（polite）， |
| Bnduzzomo | uncle＇s child |  | 4 go！after you！ |
| Bnfo | boy，lad |  | （polite）， 5 give |
| $36{ }_{3} / 36 \cap(3) / 3(9) 6:$ <br>  | scatter；lead off course | 6 3＇mduby！ | order to X （D）， 6 please speak！ |
| 36 м ： 1 <br> （＠） $36 ృ$ м＠っる。， | 1 get dark， 2 be dark |  | yes，please！ （polite） |
| 2 збум๐ |  | 3indj50 | wise（person） |
| 36 змп | dark | 3md（3）／3indmer： 1 | 1 fight， 2 fight |
| 3m＠っかの | apology；sorry！ |  | with X（D） |
| 3mome | bottle | 2 gondzo／ |  |
| Bmmo | smoke | j3ídmegoro |  |
|  <br>  | end（at last， at long last） |  <br> 3＇ndmeso | wise（thing） <br> fight（ing） |


| 3mizyomo | claw；quotation mark |  <br>  | decision exaggeration（cf． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3. | owl | 303ว） | they exceeded |
| В $\begin{array}{r}\text {＠}\end{array}$ | nest |  | the plan） |
| Bugmbyme | nightingale | zuginm（zuginonova | UNO |
| Byynon | ball |  |  |
|  | sandwich |  |  |
|  | bleat | 8．3：зzuzbum | you resemble X <br> （D） |
|  |  | $\left.8(0)_{3}:(@)\right)^{3}$ | sweep |
| 3 |  | зงзмлбь | influence |
| 8： 1 （ $\ddagger 0) 089^{3}$ ， 2 （дм）пз $\jmath^{\text {子 }}$ <br>  3 （œ）（๐zo子， <br>  <br>  <br>  7 （зง） <br>  8 дงววзว๐๐， <br>  | 1 lose（game， war）， 2 win（win against $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ）， 3 lay，set（trap <br>  4 build，thread， 5 answer X（D）， 6 get hooked on （ $=\mathrm{D} /-\%_{\jmath}$ ）， 7 find out，learn，under－ stand（cf．find out X for Y （D）， understand person $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ）， 8 you（D）have the ability to under－ stand X［present sub－series］， 9 lay X out over Y （D），spend X exclusively on Y （D）；ruin | 子u3m＠n | via（＋G） |
|  |  |  | widespread |
|  |  | 3u\％u®bivmo | spring |
|  |  | 80\％jon | newspaper |
|  |  | 30nLue | next year |
|  |  | 3033000mo | lesson |
|  |  | るuलmbu | singing，hymning |
|  |  |  | Hello！（as opening gambit） |
|  |  | 8uдutzomabu | sharpening，paying （attention to） |
|  |  | зงд8j＠๐зп | daring |
|  |  |  | continuer |
|  |  | зudm | because of（＋G） |
|  |  | дидмоззми | computing |
|  |  | zudmozzmeno | computer－（adj．）， computational |
|  |  | zudmbujmoun子uдмбиуоко | exception rash |
|  |  | zuambu＠ən | advantageous |
|  |  | 子uambug［u］mの（cf． <br>  | way out，escape （cf．exit） |
|  | daring（noun） | zuдmubbymjou | expression |
| зubjerme | daring | zuamumu | coming out， |
| 子ubmurgbumo | angry |  | making an |
| 8u8930（ymのnogmon－ | understand（ing）， |  | appearance |
| $808980)$ | learn（ing）（mutual understanding） | 子uдmठీmzjonn （330 molus， | every other（week， month，year） |
| zuzndumxmb／n | Hello！（usually as response） | azolo，femolo） |  |
|  |  | зงдмоुјб๐ | exhibition |
|  | infectious | зuдмуэбјдง | use |
| зu＠uma | beyond（＋G） |  | practical |
|  | programme， |  | release，product |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { broadcast, } \\ & \text { hand(ing) } \end{aligned}$ | audmjubu | puzzle |
|  |  |  | experience |
| 8u＠ulub＠⿰m | to be paid | 子uдmdnбjठumn | wide awake |


| зuдmbuठ8 | portray | solugmo | last，having passed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| зงдм | expression |  | （of time） |
| зuдmbuठ゙リmo | expressed， |  | unrepeatable |
|  | portrayed |  | broken down， |
| zudymozn | divisor |  | kaput |
| zuddmgmo | resistance |  | rousing |
|  | cleaner | 8uyombjou | falsifying |
| zuab＠omo | thin | 80 （3） | giving out |
| －8งб | from，by（＋G） | 800330nnmo | worn |
| 8งб0 | is it really the case that | 80030mjonn | much（＋ comparative） |
|  | isolated，far distant | zodńmau | squeezing through |
| zuбuymozo | quotient |  | 1 throw away， |
|  | spoiled | 2 （h））из＠лる， | 2 throw down |
| зuбznonominbu | develop（ing） |  | into， 3 get into |
| zuбznonotngouen | developable | （R）пə＠⿺夂， | one＇s clutches， |
| zuбznonomgbucmzu | developability | 4 （д๐／дм）уз＠っる， | 4 throw X to Y |
|  | renowned |  | （D）， 5 pay |
|  | isolating | 6 วulbunue | attention to X |
|  | isolation | （0）пз＠л ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | （D）， 6 mock， |
|  | isolated | 7 Un¢уz | 7 change the |
|  | amazing |  | subject for X |
|  | during（＋G） |  | （D）， 8 flop down |
| 8uちlujymíngon | especially |  | cf．$y(0) \mathrm{m}$ |
|  | special |  | 1 send X to meet |
|  | amazed |  | Y （D）， $2 \mathrm{go} / \mathrm{come}$ |
| 8งб¢ก6๐ | cupboard |  | to meet X（D） |
| zumoun | garage | зวздı | plan |
| zominuto | apricot | зวдм | taste |
| zum＠u | apart from $(+G)$ |  | sense by taste ［present sub－ |
|  | transforming； perestroika | зэдмпэмп | series］ <br> delicious |
|  | transformed |  | locate X（D） |
|  | deceased |  | darling！ |
|  | wardrobe |  | geography |
| zuingos | outside | 30 mo | stepchild |
| zuknamgo | circumstance |  | German（person） |
| zumg ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | outside；without |  | Germany |
|  | （＋G） |  | German（thing） |
|  | corruption | 3olmo | venom |
| zumgjam | around | 3） $\mathrm{lum}_{\text {m }}$ | venomous |
| るuluzjo | understandable |  | sort out， |
| 30LuJu的 | opportunity |  | manage |
| 3ulumjo | key |  | bring X to Y （D） |
| zubuymorn | dividend | 330以n | kind，race； |
| zulugomo | great need |  | surname |


| 330ヶ¢¢ | side |  | it＇s cool |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 330）́ronom | side－（adj．） | उ＇0．me | cool |
| 33006 | late | 3indyeme： 1 | 1 extend， |
| з3пง6： 1 （＠）－ | 1 do X late，delay | （zu） z （ndy－ | 2 lengthen |
| งззกงбј8， | $\mathrm{X}, 2$ turn up | $\cdots \mathrm{m}^{3}, 2$ |  |
|  | late， 3 you（D） |  |  |
|  | are late | 3 ${ }^{\text {madjum }}$ | long |
|  | road | 3md（g） 5 ： $3^{\text {m }}$ d6m8／ | feel |
| $3^{q} \iota_{3}$ б：$(z u(\partial m))-$ <br>  | send |  <br>  | feeling |
| 8ny：（zu） gnoyg $^{8}$ | madden | 3 $\begin{array}{r}\text { ¢ } \\ \text { cmbuen }\end{array}$ | perceptible |
| 3nyo | mad |  | sense－（adj．） |
| zoñzubfo | pound（weight or money） |  2 （＠u）идкй |  |
| 3mabn | peasant |  | 1 adapt X to Y |
|  ammbugun | tear，rip <br> globe |  | （D）， 2 adapt to X （D） |
|  | mourn | Зツの［ง］6の | plough |
| $=3 \mathrm{mmgmb} /$ |  | з 9 ¢иb®омп | honest，frank |
| пзммзлд |  | з甲ल＠olanon | assiduously |
|  | censure |  | calm－hearted |
| 3дı＠ем\％（の） | $\begin{aligned} & \text { thanks }=I \text { thank } \\ & \text { you } \end{aligned}$ |  <br>  | warm－hearted clairvoyant |
|  | hero（ine） | 3ソल⿺ | heart（cf．［present |
| 3 antumbu | heroism |  | sub－series］ |
| дмдм／ямдмб๐（－ง－） | girl |  |  <br> （D）suppose X to be somewhere／ consider X to be； <br>  what do you suppose I have？） mean |
| zmgno | pumpkin |  |  |
|  | basket |  |  |
| 3man | barn |  |  |
| змб： 1 （дง）пдмбъз <br> （Note：perfect | 1 sense by hearing；hear of， |  |  |
| зизпдмбпь）， <br> 2 （дм）пзмббд | 2 recall to mind； invent；make |  |  |
| （perfect | pretence of； | дワmпиbam8／ |  |
| дмдпзмбјвпง）， | think／make up |  |  |
| 3 （дm）дงдмб¢๐రง， |  |  | kind－hearted |
|  | 3 you（D）have |  |  |
| 5 звмбпо／ | memory X come | くりまった | yesterday |
| зэдмбృठ๐， | into mind，have |  | of yesterday |
| 6 （am）ugmbjb | an idea， 4 put a thought in X＇s <br> （D）mind， 5 you | 3ขขก6¢0ヶ6 | the day before yesterday |
|  | （D）think， | $\varrho$ |  |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & 6 \text { remind } X(D) \\ & \text { of } Y \end{aligned}$ |  | 1 put， 2 put in， 3 put down in， |
| 3mfo | piglet |  | 4 put to one side， |
|  | grammar |  | postpone， 5 X |
|  | twist | 5 （80＠）／ | transfers over to |


|  6 ＠っз $ا / 9 \varrho y^{8 \circ}$ or の＠っる。 | $\text { Y, } 6 \text { (thing) }$ <br> is lying |  <br>  <br>  | destroyed surrender（ing） 1 be guard， |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ＠ゝ | and | の＠umußg3， | 2 guard X （D） |
| ＠） | sister | 2 L¢omosm3／ |  |
| ＠ゝ | etc． | y＠umorab |  |
| ＠ưbemjobnom | approximately | ＠umbu\％ | hall |
| ＠っరい＠うる | birth | ＠umign | field，subject |
| ＠u8jajnmo | patched | ＠ut¢o | sadness，grief |
|  | ending |  | cinnamon |
|  | do sit down！ |  | certain |
| ＠๐¢னд | play |  | Westerner |
| ＠๐＠うర | put（ting） |  | west |
| ＠u＠bంon | affirmative， positive | ＠uLububn（mu ＠اน๐бงбกっ！） | to be pitied （what a pity！） |
|  | having been put | ＠ubutinymo | end |
| ＠og！ | let！ | culufyoln | start |
| ＠๐зumgठ | homework， obligation |  <br>  | unconfirmed <br> lack of |
| ¢๐\％мзлэмп | registered |  | confirmation |
|  | dated | ＠๐yzofyomo | unforgettable |
|  | occupied |  | exhausted |
|  | in connection （with X －ヵっб） | ழ๐мепеп <br> œ๐миззи | tired perish（ing） |
|  | losing | ＠ugmengos | separate， |
| ＠usjob～mo | locked，shut |  | separating |
| ＠uдubunnongる［g］men | characterising | ＠udmengornon | ablative |
| ＠uabuhu | gun | ＠ubuabuajbu | twinkling（of |
|  | at the start | （onzumoto） | an eye） |
|  | prepared | ＠ubaumgou | help |
|  | coincidence | ＠usemas | sitting down |
|  | at the close | ＠a／eof 1 ＠8ubum／ | 1 be standing， |
|  | dependence， relationship | ৎৎృる○（masdar ＠ямдь）， | 2 stand up <br> （cf．Easter $=$ |
|  | dependent |  | טм＠̧мдง）， 3 begin |
|  | independent | （masdar ৬＠̧mдง）， | to do $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ， |
|  | independence |  | 4 set out， 5 take |
|  | conqueror | 4 3\％ul | up standing |
|  | holidaymaker | （8コ） $9 ¢ 8)^{\text {b }}$ | position at some |
|  | shattered | （ $=3^{\text {coul }}$ | place（e．g．in |
|  | writing， literature |  <br> 5 （œ）œ๐з | $\begin{aligned} & \text { queue } \left.=\text { nn }_{n} \eta_{n}\right), \\ & 6 \text { be of } \end{aligned}$ |
| －（п）＠๐б | from（historically $-৪ ৩ \boxed{+} \text { + I) }$ | 6 （дงдм）œるว ${ }^{30}$ ， <br>  | advantage， 7 be of |
| ＠๐б๐ | knife |  | advantage to you， |
|  | upset，out of | Luouzjon | 8 become the |
| ＠uбงனコンym | sorts <br> crime | （h） $9 ¢ \bigcirc 3)^{\text {¢ }}$ | head of the／an institution |



|  | national | $33^{\text {m（ }}$ ） | not（potential） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| g（alago） | this（these ones） | 30 mo | no（potential） |
|  | （has／have）just |  | treacherous |
|  | i．e． |  | no one（potential） |
| af3 | 6 | 39 ¢ 0 Leomm | never（potential） |
| ว Joan | doctor | 39がolm＠ | never（potential） |
| 9れujmbos | excursion | 30 moou［g］mo | nothing（potential） |
|  | experiment | 30的しo＠ | nowhere |
| 9əวゝ̧の | devil |  | （potential） |
| วき3ก | doubt | $30^{m_{0}} \cdots 32^{\text {mon }}$ | neither ．．．nor |
| $\mathrm{a}^{\text {b mo }}$ | now |  | （potential） |
|  |  | $39^{m} \mathrm{Cobm}$ | silver |
| 3 |  | $3903^{6}(3)$ | panther；tiger |
| 300－のy | woe if！ |  | Man in the |
| 3งกว ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | alas，oh dear！ |  | Panther＇s Skin |
|  | pseudo－scholarship | 30लún | no longer（potential） |
|  | oblige |  | no longer anyone |
| 3umo | debt |  | （potential） |
| 3oyn | lad，boy |  | no longer anything |
|  | son |  | （potential） |
| 300150 cmbu | manliness | з๑¢эм | video |
| zutng：uńm zumgnaum （om zomgo） | you＇re no good（X is no good） | 30¢べ刀 | while，until， before，than |
| 3um＠： 1 （＠）－ <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br> 5 бумп＠ьб <br>  | 1 fall down， 2 fall down（here）into， 3 fall out，come rushing out， 4 fall off， 5 X falls out of your （D）hand［all with singular subject］ cf． $33^{\circ} 3^{(6)}$ | $30 \% 0$ | visa |
|  |  | －300 | like（ $+\mathrm{N} / \mathrm{D}$ ） |
|  |  | 3 nonom： | develop |
|  |  | （zub）＞zonuting |  |
|  |  | 3nonumgo | state |
|  |  | 306 | who？ |
|  |  | 3กб๐ก＠๐6 | since，because |
|  |  | 3๐бдว（－9－） | anyone |
|  |  | 3 nemors | rat |
|  |  | $3^{0}$ ¢no | donkey |
| 30ヶ＠ | rose | $3 \mathrm{meng}^{(0)}$ | someone |
|  | pink |  | 1 make forget， |
| 3umnubठo | variant |  | 2 put out of one＇s |
|  | 1 comb X＇s（D） |  | mind， 3 you（D） |
| （＠u）30m（366n， | hair， 2 comb |  | forget |
| 2 ¢วul | own hair |  | run X over Y （D） |
| （＠u）пzumorben |  | 3m： 1 （am）узмпп， | 1 look after， |
|  | you train，make practise | 2 （дృдм）уз ${ }^{\text {m }}$ | 2 encircle <br> ［both＋D］ |
| 3）dme | apple | $3 \mathrm{mo} / \mathrm{n}=3 \mathrm{mnб}$ ： | 1 despatch |
| 3ubə［ง］an | dinner | 1 （дп／дм） дел $^{\text {¢ }}$ | （cf．study trip）， |
|  пзиъวдృる | dine |  （cf．дпзмпбјठь）， | 2 reveal， 3 be revealed |
| зэmmしn3g＠ | bicycle |  |  |
| $33^{50}$ | Vienna |  |  |


| $3^{\text {б：}} 3^{6} 3^{3 / 0} 3^{\text {¢ }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ | harm | $\infty$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $3^{\text {mos }}$［J］men | wide | の0830 | mouse |
| 3 l ：（92／0／80） $3^{2} \log$ | fill | 0033：（8u） $00033{ }^{3}$ | complete |
|  |  | のuアue | （by）X＇s self |
| \％ |  | 0030\％\％：Lon $\mathrm{z}^{\text {u\％m8／}}$ | offer X to Y （D） |
| \％ud：ก\％ua | will do |  |  |
| \％uдの［0］mo | winter |  | polite |
| \％u6mo | ponderous | nozu\％ 006 mbu | politeness |
| \％（s）的 <br>  | rear | 003 ${ }^{\text {briny }}$ | dizziness |
|  |  | nuj－nuznubom | each their own |
|  | lazy | noz－mozola | each his／her／its |
| \％oribmo | get tipsy |  | own |
|  |  | oro3n | head；chapter； |
| \％uogbymo | summer |  | start；self |
| －\％） | on，about，than$(+\mathrm{D})$ | 003пubono | their own |
|  |  | nozaton | his／her／its own |
| ${ }^{\text {\％}}$ \％ | day after tomorrow |  | particularity， peculiarity |
| \％ø¢（） | above | nozoluyor［ $]_{\text {c }} \mathrm{mo}$ | free |
| \％g＠ | upper | 003nlugome： | free |
|  | superfluous |  |  |
|  | in detail | noznluygmabu | freedom |
|  | detailed | позbor | arrogant |
| \％ $3^{\text {anos }}$ | up（stairs） |  | arrogance |
|  | knead | nodueu | toastmaster |
| ${ }^{6} 930$ | heaven | ๓งдుð： 1 ๓งวuఇm3／ | 1 play， 2 play with |
|  | harm，injure | nouduðjo， | X （D）， 3 move |
| \％nubn | harm |  | around in play， |
| \％num：（zu）ntouting | share | 3 ＠umuduฐmる， | 4 play around X |
| \％วธ） | verb | 4 ＠u／ģLのuaujృる， | （D）， 5 start |
| \％วбทֹм | verbal |  | playing， 6 put |
| \％ду（3м）：\％2yn／ ก\％дэзмэる | moo |  <br>  | X into play， 7 spend time in |
| \％mg（ogmos） | some |  | play，be played， |
| \％mas | measure（cf． |  | 8 be replayed |
|  |  ＇measure＇， <br>  |  | with，by，at，chez， bei（together with＋D） |
|  | ＇measure X | no6 | along，with（adv．） |
|  | against Y（D）＇） | nubuzz\％uzimo | fellow－traveller |
| \％manguno | measured |  | post，job |
|  <br>  | care |  <br>  | contemporary fellow |
| \％ulo | exact |  | countryman |
|  | pay recompense to | nu6uaglugorn | fellow diner |
| \％लu3［0］ mo | story |  |  |
| \％¢3० | sea |  | successor， |
| \％¢дumben | medlar |  | follower |


|  | sequence， succession | （80） 00 のу $5 j^{8}$ <br>  | 2 dawn comes |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | sequential， successional | ag年zo <br>  | River Terek eleven |
|  | sequential， successional | ogbl： 1 （＠u）oglous， 2 ongou | 1 sow， 2 is sown |
| nubuaŋmma［g］men | co－worker | ajumo | seed |
| mutur | at the same | のソロず | plate |
|  | time |  | 16 |
| nububau | agreed |  | 1 count X， 2 count |
| nub＠ulparjonn | accompanied by $(+G)$ | 2 （＠）ползмп， <br>  | （abstract）， <br> 3 consider， 4 list， |
| notbo | sum |  | 5 count X in |
|  | 1 get X to agree |  | with Y (D), |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | with $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ， | 7 （aj（am）yonze | a message to X |
|  | ， 4 bring into |  | （D） |
|  | agreement， 5 you |  | with eyes closed |
|  | （pl．）come to |  | （cf．ozomb |
|  | an agreement |  | （＠） $60.70^{\text {a }}$ |
| nง6bambu | agreement |  | ＇close eye＇） |
| numbu | generation | пбoun | eye |
|  | translation |  | look around X |
| 000ngab： | translate | （＠u） onzomojngos |  |
| （zu＠u）nomingano |  | のzumuntomoln | point of view |
| nomz̧o［0］60 | interpreter |  | in front of the eye |
| nulas | twine；shoelace | $\square_{30}$ | month |
| nobym | honey | ๑ூゥの（мб） | oneself（emphatic） |
| のठ：（zu）$৩ 00 \mathrm{mb}$ | warm |  | autocracy |
|  Lncobm ○fбjbu， | 1 it＇s warm， 2 you <br> （D）are warm |  <br> мmठ்non | autocratic |
|  |  | －man | for（＋G） |
| ¢ర力mп | warm | azoymo | monthly；period |
| nobnmol： | enjoy／find Tbilisi |  | eighteen |
| （2m）noionmoly |  |  | 1 make drunk， |
| ¢ónmolymo | citizen of Tbilisi | 2 （＠）orzingon | 2 become drunk |
| ainconluy | thing of Tbilisi | momo | finger |
| ajuotm | theatre | のnoman | almost |
|  | February | nnonfmu | as if，allegedly |
| aj3／an（3）：（zu）บosj3 | spend night |  |  |
| $\square^{\circ} 3$ \％ | fish |  | fabricate |
| ajomin：（zu）ungoning | whiten |  | kidney |
|  | linen |  | 1 divide（Divide |
| ajomen | white | （8u0nวう＠u | et impera！）， |
| のうдı | theme |  | 2 switch X off |
| のృб：1，¢uдgu | 1 spend sleepless | 2 （zuдm）$n$ ¢ัu3 |  |
| ydпмем＠ | night， | $=($（udm $)$ mosu3 |  |


| ゅว兀 | hair | $\mathrm{ab}(\mathrm{s})$（n） 1 y yonuomo | 1 you（vs X）said |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | endure X with patience，be patient | （vs yonbmo）， <br>  | $\mathrm{Y} \text { to } \mathrm{Z}(\mathrm{D}),$ <br> 2 you relate（vs |
| ммmbajo゙o | fourteen | （vs дмпуобкм， | X related，has |
|  nommzobl， | 1 it snows， 2 snow will come |  | related）Y to Z <br> （D） |
| 2 amomz |  | 00603 | pour（ing） |
| омлцп | snow |  | fluid |
| amjo | rope，string |  | composition |
| omminga | otherwise | 06\％\％リмก | composed |
| omeño | special round | abomo | （hazel－）nut |
|  | earthenware oven |  | 1 ask for X， 2 ask |
| ¢mbुn | gun | norbmz， 2 Lontmz， | X （D）for Y ， |
|  | toy |  | 3 borrow for a |
|  | 1 drag in here， | 4 amlorbmz， | period， 4 demand |
| 1 （әудм） | 2 drag out | 5 ампоитmz， | X of Y（D）， |
| 2 （8u）טondon | 3 piss off out | 6 دombmzj3， | 5 demand X， |
| 3 （zu）gon migz | if | 7 зммиц | 6 lend X to Y |
| 毋y (ロッjo) | or not；as soon as |  | 7 give in |
| のvyos | mulberry |  | marriage（to $\mathrm{X}=$ |
| のnado | although | 10 （＠） （＠orbm3 | $\left.-\%_{j}\right), 8$ get |
| のyう＠u（3） | even if，albeit |  | married（of |
| ovýa力 | apparently |  | woman）（to $\mathrm{X}=$ |
|  | perfect（tense） |  | －\％o）， 9 take leave |
| のuy的joon | Turkey |  | of X（D）， 10 sack， |
| のvinjo | Turk |  | get rid of |
|  | Turkish（thing）；foot |  | request |
|  | and mouth disease | のbyonajo | fifteen |
| のf3： 1 のf3n， | 1 you said， 2 utter／ |  |  |
|  | declare | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | （publicly）， | $\mathrm{OuF}_{3}[0] \mathrm{mom}$ | January |
| 4 ¢¢пmu＠uafzua | 3 express， | nomoc： | $1 \mathrm{arm}, 2$ disarm |
| （cf．＠uo faym | compose， |  |  |
|  | pronounce， | 2 （zuб）¢numu＠jる |  |
|  | 4 agree a time in | numomo | weapon |
| зобд3l（zu＠）－ | advance（cf．at | nơozo | floor |
|  | the designated | ๑งOुก | cheap |
|  | time）， 5 get | nojomo | Iberian（person） |
|  | someone（D）to renounce their | －8\％（\％马пбم） | that（those ones） over there |
|  | decision | ก8ก30 | the same（as that |
| の $3_{3}{ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | you（pl．） |  | over there） |
| のタ3うよ | your（pl．） | ๑＠） | idea |
| －のfm | saying，you | azmolo | July |
|  | should say | －36non | June |
| abo | goat |  | violet－coloured |
|  | dig |  | （violet） |


|  | so many (as that over there) | -fnommb(n) | on the way over there |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | of that (over | $\square 76{ }^{\circ}$ | maybe, perhaps |
|  | there) time |  | force, compel |
| ๑วృœ๐ | hope |  | mistrustfulness, |
|  | because |  | suspicion |
|  | that one's (those ones') | ๑ษзбуэм๐ | mistrustful, suspicious |
|  | because |  |  |
|  | imperium | 3 |  |
| ค2bjem | so much (as that | j080 | dress |
|  | over there) |  | office |
|  | English (person) |  | impudent |
| ๑бzmolo | England |  | 1 deign to, |
|  | English (thing) | njocongos, <br> 2 кпмдме́ $30^{-}$ | 2 How can you <br> (D) say such a |
| -6¢0.ymo | turkey | зu@ónjo? | thing?! What a |
| -б¢млоп | India |  | thing for you |
|  | 1 interest, |  | to say! |
|  2 (@) - <br>  | 2 become interested in X (I) |  <br>  <br>  | 1 take hold of, 2 restrain oneself, 3 have |
|  | interest |  | hold of |
| -6oुúnfo | heart attack | jo3julno | Caucasus |
|  | informed | (odngójuzjulno ) | (Transcaucasus $=$ |
| пммп | easy |  | S. Caucasus) |
|  | around (adv.; postposition | 303julnjem | Caucasian (person) |
|  | + G) | 303julnymo | Caucasian (thing) |
| ol ( anoro) $^{\text {a }}$ | that (those ones) over there |  <br>  | 1 connect, 2 get in touch with X |
| ob-ob nym | (had) just | 2 (@) - | (D) |
| obo | like that over there |  јu3 $3^{\text {gnonn }}$ | contact |
| ov3 | again |  | dress (horse) |
| - | just like that over there | juj[0]mo <br>  | walnut <br> knock |
| njono | such a (as that over there) | $\begin{aligned} & 3(\mathrm{o})_{\mathrm{m}:} 1\left(\partial_{\mathrm{m}}\right)_{3 \mathrm{MO}}, \\ & 2\left(\text { (口) } \mathrm{smu}_{3},\right. \end{aligned}$ | 1 kill, 2 kill with blade (usually |
| かठmmóno | history |  | for eating), |
| of | (over) there |  | 3 extinguish, |
| -fuẏónmo | there(ness) | 5 (@) озме3, | suppress (some |
| -fom | thither |  | feeling), |
| -fnom-ufon | here and there, hither and |  | 4 sacrifice self for $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D}), 5$ kill |
|  | thither, to and fro, this way and that |  | X over a corpse/ grave (D), 6 kill X by Y (D) |


| jumb［0］an | pen | sofine 1 （＠）juftmor， | 1 scratch X， |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| јЈдง | dill | 2 пјupango | 2 scratch |
| зuagho | water buffalo |  | ［present |
| јлбјлме：злбјимлд／ | shake |  | sub－series］ |
|  |  |  | $I$ bite $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ， |
| зงбмбп | law | эз ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ б， | 2 bite［present |
| зuбmbngono | legal | 2 пјопбјठо， | sub－series］， 3 bite |
|  | legislating， legislation |  <br>  | oneself on the lip／finger in |
|  | legislative |  | realisation and |
| ju30L：ju3ulmb／ njuzulog | behave spitefully |  | regret at some－ thing as opposed |
| ju306n | spiteful；bitchy |  | to bite oneself on |
|  | 1 tie together， |  | on the tongue |
| 2 2umbel／ | 2 knit one＇s |  | （to stop oneself |
| Lugbaraul | forehead／hold |  | saying anything |
|  | one＇s breath， |  | further）， 4 bite |
| 3 （＠）Ojomoz， | 3 stick X（e．g． |  | one＇s own lip／ |
| 4 （＠） $\mathrm{g}_{3} \mathrm{~m}_{3} 3$ ， | stamp dutinjo |  | tongue |
| 5 （дп／дm） 933 mobu， | on Y （D）， 4 play | $3^{3} \mathrm{n}$ mo | tooth |
|  | （instrument）， | 30＠［9］mo | wall |
| 7 oु ${ }^{\text {bl }}$ <br>  | 5 attach oneself firmly to X （D）， |  2 （วŋ） | 1 do，make， <br> 2 repair， 3 get |
| $8 \text { 3jenoz (bymb/ }$ | 6 drain in one | 3 （子レдм）зののœうるの， | well， 4 you（D） |
| Fobme $3_{\text {jonoz }}$ ）， | go；drop a hint | 4 3njomnol | wear（e．g．ring， |
| $90^{3} \mathrm{mozab}$ | to X （D）；with a | 303009ర0 | glasses） |
|  | colour／emotion | 300nmo | kind，good；okay |
|  | as subject the |  | well－disposed |
|  | meaning may be | 3039 димиммпठง | hide－and－seek |
|  | ＇flicker across， show itself upon＇， |  <br>  | 1 reduce X for Y <br> （D）， 2 subtract |
|  | $=\mathrm{D}), 8 \text { strike }$ | з（дм）пзм $\jmath^{\text {d，}}$ | 3 reduce one＇s |
|  | （slap／kick X＝ | 5 дujmno／ | X ；become less， |
|  | D）， 9 X is fixed |  | grow smaller， |
|  | to Y （D） |  | 4 X is reduced |
| зumu＠u | bookcase | пз¢93 | for you，you |
| jumofo | butter |  | suffer the |
|  | lose |  | reduction of X ， |
| jumzo $=$ jun | good（well） |  | 5 you（D）lack |
|  |  |  | $\mathrm{X}, 6$ you reduce， |
| उumo | door |  | get smaller |
|  | potato | $39^{58} 0$ | odd |
| 3080 | cat |  | 1 sew， 2 sew up |
| 3003：8\％\％u（8）300303 | open up／blaze | 2 （80） 30 moz， | （something with |
|  | a trail | 3 （＠） $03 g^{\text {m }}$（ ${ }^{\text {a }}$ ， | holes）， 3 patch， |
| 30030 | café |  | 4 sew X onto Y |
| $303^{\circ}$ | man |  | （D） |


| 30 ñ <br> $=$ Lubうм＠мд | private（in particular） |  <br>  | 1 hang up， suspend， 2 hang |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | lock | 3 （дм）элп¢убп， | up，kill by |
| 300：$\left.{ }^{(\mathrm{dm}}\right)_{303}{ }^{3} 3$ | fold | 43 jn＠obum／ | hanging（ $=$（hงam）－ |
| $33^{\circ} \mathrm{mo}$ | track |  |  |
|  <br>  | do something deviously |  | upon／get the better of X（D）， |
| 33ubn | pumpkin |  | 4 be suspended， |
|  | 1 die， 2 die |  | 5 pester X（D） |
|  | together with X | Ј๑＠うろ | to boot |
|  | （D）， <br> （metaphorically） | зnonb： 1 зnontymm8／ <br>  | 1 read；ask for information |
|  | perish over | ＜́magmin zojnorbmon？ | （＇How are you？＇ |
|  | X （D）， 3 be | 2 Fonzoorbus， | in answer to |
|  | sacrificed for X | $3 \overline{3}_{\text {gnorbus，}}$ |  |
|  | （D）， 4 you die | $4\left(\partial_{j}\right)_{93 n o n b g} \text { Bn, }$ $5 \mathrm{dmz}_{3} \text { nocbus. }$ | buon（o）？＇How are you？＇）， 2 will |
|  | $\text { their will }=X$ | 6 2mп znorbuz， | read， 3 （will）ask |
|  | （D）will kill you |  | $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ，ask X |
|  | accidentally； |  | （D）Y， 4 ask X |
|  | cf． $\mathrm{bm}_{3}$ |  | （D）， 5 seek |
|  | 1 slice body part |  | explanation from |
| （aybmgol | off X（D）（cause |  | X （D）， 6 give |
| （2m） $3_{33}{ }^{\text {an）}}$ ， | X＇s（D）knees to |  | regards to；ask |
|  | buckle）， |  | for information， |
| 3 （zu） j3jon，$^{\text {a }}$ | 2 reserve， 3 cut |  | $7 \mathrm{go} /$ come to ask |
| 4 （Јдm）${ }^{3} 380 \mathrm{~m}$ | open，remove |  | after X（D）， |
|  | surgically from |  | 8 interrogate X |
|  | X （D） |  | （D） |
|  | egg | jnorb30 | question；reading |
| $333^{\text {b（6）}}$ ： $332^{6}$ | boast，vaunt | znorbzomo | interrogative |
| $={ }_{3} 33{ }^{6}$ |  | зпјпб：зпзпбј8／ | bleat |
| $={ }^{3} 333^{6}(6)$ |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 33 \operatorname{nn}(3): 1(80)- \\ & 333^{n i n} 30^{3}, \end{aligned}$ | 1 surprise， 2 be surprised | зпmm | kilogram；dialect； mood |
| 2 зпз3ก¢心／ |  | зпб๐щゝа | nearly（of |
|  |  |  | something bad） |
|  | week，Sunday （Sunday） | з ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ m | cinema |
|  |  | зпбm－レல゙り＠๐ | film studio |
| 33n¢umbrnon | on Sundays | 3ol［0］ mon | neck |
|  | receipt | 30¢mon | cucumber |
| $33^{\circ} \mathrm{O}{ }^{\circ}$ | foal | 3mborn | class |
|  | research | 3mbunjumo | classical |
|  | research－（adj．） | зщ＠） | rock |
| 30 | yes；but， however | змепзибо | rocky |
|  |  |  | client |
| $3{ }^{\text {n }} 30$ | ladder，stairs | јдıymozne：（＠）－ | satisfy |
| 308m | cancer |  |  |


| здıymognejobu | satisfaction |  | together，screw |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| здıymozn¢0 | satisfied |  | up（e．g．lips，cf． |
| здృ／nちゃ：bau | shut up |  |  |
| （30） $3^{\text {¢ }}$ ）$¢$ |  |  |  |
|  | mew |  | （＠） 3 ¢no6łu3／ |
|  |  |  | （＠）¢るのぞ |
| збบठ์ | kitten |  |  |
| $3^{3} 3{ }^{\text {\％}}$ | spoon | 3ymbo | course |
| зmantionnymo | cats and dogs（of rain） |  | stomach |
|  | collective | $\cdots$ |  |
| змल¢రం | herd of pigs | m（m＠）： 1 Јm－ | 1 wait for， |
| змдるмıరึm | cabbage | （m＠っる）$/$ | 2 expect |
|  | computer |  |  |
| змวข\％ | quince | 2 дмумп |  |
|  | envelope <br> rag（s） | mug： 1 （）） muzas $^{\text {a }}$ | 1 tidy up， 2 be |
| змбз ¢ $^{\text {® }}$ ） |  | 2 umuza | stored |
|  | contact | muzugn | unleavened bread |
|  | conference | mugjon | Lazistan |
|  | concentration | mucn | Laz（person） |
|  | costume <br> 1 kiss， 2 plaster with kisses | muturn | Laz（thing） |
|  |  |  | Latin beautify |
| oum（ $30^{8}$ ， <br> 2 （＠u）зm（zбم |  | लuдدष： |  |
|  | 1 gather X， 2 you （pl．）gather together | мuдง\％n | pretty，beautiful |
|  |  | mubde： <br> 1 （дง）мибdмиз， | 1 abuse， 2 utter abuse |
| jughog： 1 （am）jongos， | 1 pick， 2 dial |  |  |
|  |  | molumoje | 1 speak， 2 speak |
|  | $l$ cut X ＇s hair；cut your own hair， 2 X can be／is being cut off； X smirks | 1 musumajm $8 /$ | to X （D） |
| （ $\partial \mathrm{m}$ ） 3 jung\％； |  | amu3umosja， |  |
| （am）ojumat， |  | 2 jucuomojabn |  |
|  |  | mu3umozo | talk（ing） |
|  |  | mub：（zu＠u）mubuz | overcome |
|  | 1 startle， | $\mathrm{mag}^{2}[0] 60$ | half nut kernel |
|  | 2 become startled | мәз／еп（з）： 1 ＠имлз， <br>  | $I$ will drink， 2 devote（time－ |
| 3 ${ }^{\text {mabobo }}$ | crisis |  | span）to X （D）， |
|  | purr |  | 3 you（D）run |
|  |  |  | out of X |
|  | tail | ¢эз30 | pup，whelp |
| зり＠ |  | mofun | poem，verse |
| 35006 | corner | modommin | lecturer |
|  | angular | mofoso | lecture |
|  | culture | мәщzo | fig |
|  | 1 reduce in size by exerting pressure， 2 squeeze | $\mathrm{m} \cap \partial[\mathrm{m}] 6 \mathrm{n}$ | lemon |
| $2(\partial m)_{3 ข 2}{ }^{\text {d }}$ |  | $\mathrm{mOO} 3^{\circ}$ <br> mmb̊n | Lithuania bean（s） |


| ммппбп | bed | дьмо | soon |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| мп＠ | （large）stone | дЈмйми® | secretly |
| мп¢обп | wait（ing） | дงдง | father |
| mмyo | cheek |  | homosexual male |
|  | 1 pray， 2 congrat－ | auaujuro | man |
|  | ulate $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ on | duaujozŋmón | manly |
|  | Y， 3 cast healing | วงว［ง］mo | cockerel；male |
| $\begin{aligned} & 3 \text { (ŋg/zudm)- } \\ & \text { ymm( } 303 \end{aligned}$ | spell over X（D） |  | father－in－law （for the wife） |
| m3：（＠）บ．m3mb | cause to rot | дงдп＠u | father＇s sister |
| мッŋ¢ | beer |  | father＇s sister＇s |
| ハッŋる | mouthful |  | child |
| muymzo | （dark）blue | дงдпбง๐з［ง］men | stepfather |
| cuvfo | even |  | multiplier |
| $\mathrm{mb}(3) / \mathrm{mc}(3)$ ： | smelt |  | patriotic |
| （8） $0 \mathrm{mb} / \mathrm{mmb}$ |  | дงธงว | up to the time， during the time |
| $\partial$ |  | วงธ¢ | there by you |
| duzumnonn， | example，for | วงбృヵก | rouble |
| duz（umnon＠） | example | วงб才งбง | car |
| duz［ง］mo | strong | dumuzn | stock |
| аидщ๐б | as much as that | дงलぃ๐ | ever |
|  | by you | dumion6o | wine cellar |
| дuzn＠o | table | дumgumono | margarine |
|  | instead of（＋G） |  | weed |
| auznlo（auzunn） | that one＇s（those | （zu）дuмņmuz |  |
|  | ones＇）by you | วumon： 1 （＠）－ | 1 X happens to |
| аızпరัмa | for that reason by you |  2 （zu）กдง | $\text { you (D), } 2 \mathrm{X}$ <br> takes place； |
| วugбun¢ัก | of that type by you |  <br>  | straighten up， 3 X straightens |
| dugm：（zu） dug $^{\text {cogjo }}$ | make firm；fortify | 5 （am）дumouz， | up for Y（D）； |
| auzmoa／aumo | but | 6 （zu）autionu3， | X sets out／gets |
|  | with appetite | 7 （fum）るu¢nous | ready to set out， |
| дэем： 1 ддьழемв－ （๓）， 2 эдьщмп | 1 thank you， 2 thank X（D） for Y |  | 4 （turn to and） address X（D）， 5 tune，wind up， |
| дьњемви （－लдృ向ol！） | thanks（thank God！） |  | 6 straighten X ， put in order， |
|  | thankful |  | organise（e．g． |
| алзбл | harmful，malignant |  | demonstration， |
| วu\％mo | husband＇s brother |  | meal）， 7 direct， |
|  | mathematics |  | look after the |
| дıп6\％ | however，still，yet |  | running of， |
| auno | May |  | control |
|  | 1 hide $\mathrm{X}, 2$ hide | dumos［0］mo | true |
| 2 （hu）дьмиз， | X in， 3 hide | дunomzo | directing，driving |
|  |  | dumome | indeed，truly |


| du＇momo | salt |  | 2 you（D）hold |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2umommobn | salty |  | X in mind |
| dumjo | stamp | $\partial_{3}[\mathrm{j}]_{\mathrm{mo}}$ | wolf |
| aumorn | March |  | 1 travel， |
| 2um̧oñ | simple |  | 2 set out |
| ১uగூ\％ | alone |  |  |
|  | defeat |  | traveller |
| dumizbon | to the left |  | journey |
| dumifyo | strawberry | agménozo | rolling |
| วงMn） 3 ： <br>  （cf．zuznวu（m̧mu！） | gain a victory | д＠gmaungmos | situation |
|  | （cf．［God］grant |  | tenant |
|  | you victory！＝ Greeting！Hello！） | －д＠⿰／－д＠и | up to，until，as far as（＋A） |
|  | to the right | аœ口¢［0］mo | rich（man） |
| autin6d［j］mo | host |  | secretary |
| 2u aja＠os mors | after |  | river |
| 2uしfozmab［9］mo | teacher | демвзп | mustard |
| aulbomo | fool，jester |  | boiling |
|  | （ridicule） | $\partial_{0}$ | I／me |
|  | 1 grow bigger， | ajoonlo | thousandth |
|  | 2 increase one＇s | ajooj | tenth |
|  | own X（perfect | ај๐0う¢ | one tenth |
|  <br> 4 （д॰／дм）дәдь๐๐るь， | дмдпдงชృठпง）； | ajuabmb | rebel |
|  | put on weight | ajoug | hundredth |
|  | （perfect | ajou＠ýno | net－fisher |
|  | дmдnдug์6ก๐）， |  | porter |
|  | 3 add X to／for Y | วృరงल๐ | gardener |
|  | （D）， 4 you（D） | аэдmb［0］mo | friend |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { gain X, } 5 \mathrm{X} \\ & \text { exceeds Y (D) } \end{aligned}$ | дддм 8 ки： <br>  | become friends <br> with X （D） |
| augungo［g］mo | train |  | friendship |
| добумо | wool | алдтлмо | Mingrelian |
| дumu\％ | shop |  | （person） |
|  | tall，high（on high） |  | Mingrelian（thing） |
| duczodumo（0） | alarm－（adj．） | 20ว 3 ¢\％ | sixth |
|  | viewer | agomb［j］men | neighbour |
| วงจ | in that case | 2〕\％＠zuy的 | sailor |
| วงวกб | then | ajouvino | leader |
| วงдกб¢っ¢ก | of that time |  | one－twelfth |
| วงวกб์ว | there and then | －ajofo | saying（for 1st |
|  | fridge |  | person singular |
|  | giver／sucker of the |  | speaker） |
|  | breast | agjumg | doorman； |
| 2uf［m］6n（3） | yoghurt |  | goalkeeper |
| 2ubnбs：（＠））－ <br>  | mutilate，distort |  | fox |
|  |  |  | left－winger |
| dublmzen： 1 | 1 make effort to |  | right－winger |
| のaublmbing ${ }^{\text {a }} 2$（＠u）－ | －keep in mind， | дృдกдกбмз๐ | falconer |


| วృวกరீกбวว | participant in a meeting | aృbumo <br> วใ๐œ | fifth ready |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ajmorb | fourth | ว\％ง＠： 1 （ $\mathrm{gm}_{\text {）}}$－ | 1 prepare X， 2 get |
| aymonbjen | one－fourth | งจ\％๐＠⿰习习， | oneself ready |
|  | repeat |  |  |
| agmong | second | 2\％） | sun |
| дృm（3） | twentieth | 2\％y／n¢m： 1 ya\％gm， | 1 gaze upon X |
| дృм®ூ＠ | one－twentieth | 2 ๑ว\％nomgo | （D）， 2 stare |
| ajmbjorn | with the help of $(+G)$ |  | ［present sub－ series］ |
| a̧3umo | baker | dono | mountain |
| 20¢0 | then | donoz［0］ mon | main |
|  | eighth | donozm： | finish |
| agono | mayor | （＠u）（anozurgo |  |
| agmofnozo | wine－bearer | donozinmou | government |
| agños | milkman | дпуmп | whole，entire |
| aglosong | watchmaker | дヵलu® | entirely |
| agluag | third | 2mfбumin 1 （＠）－ | 1 yawn |
|  | leader |  | deliberately， |
| ay | wordsmith | 2 （＠）－ | 2 you（D）yawn |
| 2ృర๐ | more | 子uan fбumjol， | （involuntarily）， |
|  | too |  | 3 you（D）feel |
| ajobohomo（0） | show－off，busybody |  | like yawning |
| วృชீบขวว | woodsman |  | X befalls you（D） |
| дјэмел | spouse |  |  |
| дјов： 1 дృоुм3／ | 1 be sovereign， | angú | by（＋G） |
| กวృชэァ， | 2 become | วก\％［0］6ก | aim，target |
|  | sovereign | 2ก\％〕\％ก | reason |
| дృ๐ว | sovereign |  | aim at X（D） |
|  | being sovereign | дпмп | pipe，tube；mile |
| ajemers | swineherd | 2ncmoúmon | billion |
|  | seventh | дпмппмбуйо | millionaire |
|  | study | дпмпппбп | million |
| дэзu＠пбуm3／ |  | дпวu＇mon | towards（＋G） |
|  |  | дпว\％п＠зコハー | alluring |
|  | studying | дпдпбм | hawk |
|  | scholar，scientist | дпб¢［м］＜ко（3） | meadow，field |
| ajosborn | shepherd |  | awarding |
| ajobero | ninth | anlonobo（0） | like X |
| aydmomb | cowherd | anlon（auon） | X＇s（their（s）） |
| aydydymo | giver／sucker of the breast | anlfinuogjo <br>  | aspiration unbiased |
| ayde3бл | gift－bearer | 2пysjondmj ${ }^{\text {membu }}$ | lack of bias |
|  | leader | дпल̧ว） | receiving， |
|  | miller |  | reception |
|  | plumber | дпй $_{\text {¢ }}$ | giving |
| дэจузпмо | partner |  | dative |
| agbomso | tax collector／payer | anfo | land，earth |


| anfu－fy［u］mo | territory | aménomo | obedient |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| anfiy的ymbl | at the close of | amuobmjo | opinion |
| anby＠znon | according to（＋G）； | amlombjomo | appellant，plaintiff |
|  | кпmamel | 2mu＊fyว | boring |
|  | antyeznonor | amusfiaso | invitation－（adj．） |
|  | according to which | amusbmo | dweller |
| $\partial_{j}:\left(\partial_{m}\right) \partial_{j} 0$ | reap | amuobegmbu | population |
| aj9 的边 | seamstress | amuzmo | coming |
| $\partial_{33}$［0］${ }_{\text {mo }}$ | dead（one） | дmbyп＠z | enticement |
| a330¢0＜0 | native | дмйозмл | pupil |
|  | researcher | amojbomo | broken |
|  | killer | дmठjibm | sweetish |
| ajnorb 30 mo | reader，questioner | амঠуэうठ๐ | deceiving，lying |
| ajmuzn | arm |  | impatient |
|  | meaning |  | impatience |
| дธกวзбумпзงбก | important | дмумпп¢бјмп | unexpected |
| дми＠зのмл | assistant | amfumufo | citizen |
| дmдzпиб弓るпо | late |  | action，activity |
| дм＠əдь | tribe |  | instrumental |
| дмл¢［ь］бо | square |  | behaviour， |
| amzum＠olozimm | pinkish |  | conversion |
| amzozing | trader | 2m＠umu®o | traitor |
| дмоддпбృठu | patience |  | treachery |
| дмолимзби | demand，requirement | дмузппомм | yellowish |
| дmontmmo | story，narrative | дmı3п | bilberry |
| amobinmornon | narrative $=$ | amduмиœ๐ | oppressor |
|  | ergative | amdumo | oppressor |
| amjuzanorno | union－，ally | amdmb［0］mo | religious teacher |
| amznorbz | regards | дmºoso | pupil |
|  | abbreviate，shorten | ampnosum | reddish |
| дмлме | short |  | leader |
| аmलu૩umoza | speaker，speaking | วмпŋว | witness |
| ammuring | cashier | amfymbu | getting into |
| аmдоз［ง］mo | future，coming |  | （university）； |
|  | fatal |  | arranging |
| дмд＠⿰збм | next | Imbuonso | taxpayer |
| дмддзз＠ио | having died | ambumumo | joyous，pleased |
|  | singer |  | clerk |
| аmaroz［0］6n | appellant，plaintiff |  | assistance |
| amaroz［0］$_{\text {con }}$ | appellant，plaintiff | ambligjou | academic paper； |
| амддбкм | smallish |  | talk |
| ambu＠ongo | hunter |  | labourer |
| дмбง\％［m］6๐（3） | nun | дмхибул | revolutionary |
| ambuoglozo | related | 2moz［0］mo | several |
|  | monastery | дмлдм： | multiply |
| am3ulugbo | defendant |  |  |
| дmбuymmo | what was／ |  | plural |
|  | has been said |  | industry |


| 2mosbajem | calculator |  | 1 sing， 2 you（D） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  <br>  | fornicate | กaलǵngる， $2 \text { zodeǵngou }$ | feel like singing |
| atuygmbo | fornication | ว＠g的 | singing |
|  | adviser（cf．elector） | ayom： 1 <br>  | 1 establish， strengthen， |
| aubonmon | actor | 2 （80）¢ayomgo | 2 buttress |
| alubyñ： <br> 1 （＠u）nalubuyngot， <br> 2 （am）alubuyngon | 1 earn for oneself， 2 serve X（D） | dyomo | unswerving |
|  |  | dyoyo | stagnant |
|  |  | дy（o）6：（＠）دаубп | graft |
| วレaym | drinker |  |  |
| 2umozmen | world | думоz： 1 دдумозл， | 1 make／allow X to |
|  | wisher |  | be somewhere， |
| aしゃf［0］6の | fat |  | 2 find oneself， |
| aub［0］mo | pear |  | be |
| 2ubzomo | thick | dymomo | stinking |
| aubzпмозjbu | thick－hooved |  | builder |
|  <br>  | converse，discuss |  <br>  | beautiful （beautifully， |
|  <br>  | enter into enmity with $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { wonderfully) } \\ & \text { calm } \end{aligned}$ |
| амз¢［э］мп | priest |  |  |
| дठ［0］ mo | enemy |  | take leave of X |
| $\partial_{\text {¢3 }}[\mathrm{g}] \mathrm{mo}$ | dust |  | （D） |
| дঠெз¢пибп | dusty |  | peace |
|  | shatter | วขm3［9］mo | parent |
|  |  |  | native |
| аэœ๐д | ever，always |  | observe X on Y |
|  | permanent |  | （D） |
|  | （permanently） | 2Rbozuб๐（0） | cawing |
| думеп | husband＇s sister | ageumo | erroneous，wrong |
|  | cartoon film | a $_{\text {（3）}}$ | plant |
| aumudo | jam | $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{OH} \mathrm{O}$ | slight，small |
| aylozo | music | azorigolozmzuбn | of young age |
| ayfumo | threat |  | of young years |
| avjo | dark | $\partial_{3} \mathrm{~J}_{3} \mathrm{O}_{0}$ | concept |
|  | threaten X（D） | д（3м＠б๐ | expert |
| avgo | work－（adj．）； workman | agbmzingon <br> $\mathrm{advb}[\mathrm{J}] \mathrm{mon}$ | living，dweller child＇s spouse＇s |
| $\begin{aligned} & \partial_{y} y_{u}(3): \\ & \partial_{y} \text { gumb/nayguz } \end{aligned}$ | work |  | parent |
|  |  | 2do3［u］mo | hostage；pot－egg |
| avogun | workman |  | to encourage |
| aygumbu | work（ing） |  | hen to lay |
| 2vo［9］mo | stomach | adoaj | heavy；comma |
| 2ッヂワァ | spot | ว¢＠っ | wine－bearer |
| 2abbmo | knee；verse | 2¢3иœ | shashlik |
| ayberivan | brake |  | green（Greens） |
|  | owner | аЯзงбпмп | greens |


| а¢๐обว（cf． | ripe（cf．make ripe） | $\mathrm{Lug}_{3} \mathrm{c}_{3}[\mathrm{lu}] \mathrm{mos}$ | cake |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （дм）งafoosjる） |  | ธงธ： 1 ธงбмठ／๐бงбృว， | 1 regret， 2 you |
|  | cleaner | 2 （＠ง） 29 бงбృ3ง | （D）feel regret |
| afmz［0］mo | sucker |  | at／are reluctant |
| a¢yodun | shepherd |  | to（cf．repent） |
| д马̧以 | barley－bread | Бum＠ | backgammon |
| дद̆п＠রm | intimate | bumymiozo | narcotics |
|  | bring down | 6umRuy5： | preserve |
| abuong（cf． $\mathrm{ab}^{\text {colomo）}}$ | side，region （cf．shoulder） |  6ulu＠пмэзп | afternoon（in the |
| 2bog3［0］囱o | painter，artist |  | afternoon） |
|  | reveal（something secret） | bulubmokno | site of former house |
| 2tyoun（2bjoun bum | beast，savage （＇you＇re a lucky devil！＇） |  <br>  2 Бெठிゥmる／ | 1 you（D）feel longing for， miss， 2 long for， |
| 2bnotrumejou | joy |  | 3 envy， 4 look |
| 2bmмm＠ | only | Бoठimgr， | upon X（D）with |
| 2bmмmmóno | singular | 4 gу（am）6ugimo | longing［present |
| аи乚блмо | saviour |  | sub－series］ |
| abuñ̇zumg | warm | Eujucmufuto | site of former town |
| 6 |  | ¢๐Jumofozo | site of former |
| Бuvbegend j30 | bequeathed |  | town |
| 5u8［ ${ }^{\text {］¢ }}$ | shepherd＇s felt | ちum＠ | real |
|  | cloak | Бощзобузの | （having）drunk |
| $\mathrm{Luz}^{2}[]_{3}$ | waste，rubbish |  | sad |
| Guzijmoltajzo | meant | Euyuhomutoro | former brigand |
|  nбu＠๐向g ${ }^{3}$ | hunt | Euyzuzomutio | former flower bed； pock－marked |
| 6umomo | game | 6uynбo | ice cream |
| Бくzon | oil | Euymozn | fruit |
| Eungluzo | relation | 6uymozogmo | productive， |
| Eunglumzo | kinship |  | fertile |
| Esoglumónom | genitive | БЈðmman | （result of）work |
| Бงのf̧งдの | （what＇s been）said |  | snatch a bite |
| 6ujzj6\％ | bite |  | to eat |
| бuznu6n | leap－ | 6og［0］mo | ash |
| 6ujmo | defect | $\mathrm{L}_{0} \mathrm{OB}_{3}[\mathrm{~s}]_{\mathrm{mo}}$ | substitute（in place |
| ธuməJo | dregs | （бь⿴змощ） | of＋G） |
| 6umos | maize store | 6030mbumoligumo | nationalist |
| бงд＠zomo | real | 6036mbn | acquaintance， |
| Бงдmbulormomo | site of former |  | known |
|  | monastery | bugerolug［g］mo | grey |
| Бงдмизмп | product | 5ufomo | part |
| ธงavgr3［0］mo | result of work | 60¢［J］mo | slice |
| ธงдym（бงдym dnल́nomo＠o） | $\begin{aligned} & \text { past (simple past } \\ & =\text { aorist }) \end{aligned}$ | 6งb： 1 Бงbu3， <br>  | ```l see [non-present sub-series],``` |



|  | 1 put into motion, 2 move |  | 5 sneak X somewhere |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | Friday |
|  |  |  | parliament |
| $\cdots$ |  |  | shave (self) |
| -m | saying | 30Móno | party |
| mb[m]mo | orphan | 3obugb: 1 3oluybm3/ | 1 answer, |
| -м@っ | about | n3uligboz, | 2 answer X (D) |
| m@glas | anytime | 2 33ulugtm8/ |  |
| m@olmos | sometime | y3ulugha |  |
| м@б๐3 | slightly | 30 uighn | answer |
| moubo | room | 30¢omo | small |
| monbo | four |  | 1 forgive X (D) Y, |
| monbzubumn | Thursday | 2 д930 | 2 you (D) are |
| må | war |  | forgiven X |
| m63[0]6n | tap |  | esteem; manure |
| m3grozou | operation | ${ }^{\circ}$ (3) ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | (cf. show respect |
|  | treacherous |  | to X (D)) |
| мкпzamemb | treachery |  | respect |
|  | medal |  | respected |
| mono | two |  | invite |
| morozo | both |  |  |
| mondm | hole |  | butterfly |
| menbufañozo | twice-married (woman) |  | shirt |
|  |  | 3пещ3п¢п | pepper |
| móluyme | pregnant |  | 1 intend, |
| mendubum | Monday | 2 (@)//〕)- | 2 promise |
| mffom | gold |  | X to Y (D) |
| mfठmas[g]mo | October |  | personal |
| мепб@ | except that |  | straight ahead, |
|  | amaze |  | direct (adv.) |
| mor@usonnto fimjon | 'thirties |  | direct (adj.) |
| mueugmon | twenty-one | 3пйзวмо | first |
| $\mathrm{m}_{3}$ | twenty |  | mouth, face (on |
| mosbjou | dream | 3 3ntul) | the edge of |
| mb | och |  | extinction) |
| $\mathrm{mb}[\mathrm{g}$ ] mo | damned | 30 mofron | on the contrary |
| mbimbuy | parsley | 3п¢ววขm | first-born |
| mpubo | family |  | animal |
|  |  | 308860 | mint |
| 3 |  | 308030 | jacket |
| 3umom | coat |  | 1 find, 2 earn, |
|  | tomato | п3m3(6) , | 3 (not) have, is |
|  | 1 steal, 2 steal |  | (not) found for |
| 2 (am) 330 ¢noz, | X from Y (D), |  | you (D) [usually |
|  | 3 sneak in |  | negative] |
|  | upon X (D), | $3 \mathrm{mbn} \mathrm{Z}^{\text {O }}$ | position |
| 5 дп/дmusumgo | 4 sneak up on, | 3mmoros | police (station) |


|  | policeman | modmamos | somehow |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | politics | 的以003（ | something |
|  | political | mumozbunmoc | somehow |
| 3м3уymutnymn | popular | mol（＠っ＠bubno， | which（it＇s a |
| 3mingrujo | portrait | 的O（3） | long while |
|  | president |  | since／that） |
|  | presidency | nubuybo | bang |
| 3＇mの6zo3n | principle | m8（ $\mathrm{g} / \mathrm{\sim 6}$ ）： | 1 run here， 2 run |
| 3ímmolo | process，trial | 1 дmmonbuom／ | away from X |
| 3ymo | bread |  | （D） |
|  <br>  | 1 seize control， 2 take possession | 2 zuvembobum／ <br>  |  |
| กзумm3， | of， 3 grab | 的る） | running |
| 3 （дп）пЗу＇иmb | （attention）， |  | soft |
|  | 4 treat X（D）， | uns： 1 （0）morzos | 1 be of benefit to |
|  <br> 5 дпЗуணัก | 5 you（D）hold |  <br>  | X（D）， 2 use X to benefit $Y$（D） |
| 3730／ก6：З9395／ | pinch X （D） |  |  |
| ข3行 ${ }^{\text {6 }}$ |  |  | 1 select and fit X on Y（D）， 2 it |
| $\checkmark$ |  |  | fits you（D） |
| yงбz：（＠）оулбzวठ） | rust | Wro： 1 （＠）Mnzoz， | 1 plant， |
| ¢Јб830 | rusting |  | 2 transplant |
|  | liable to rust | $\mathrm{n}_{33} / \mathrm{mon}(3)$ ： | 1 derange， 2 go |
| yงбzo | rust |  | mad， 3 involve X |
| ymg／not：（土am）ymso | exterminate | 2 （z৩＠）¢的弦， | in（ $=-y_{\text {n }}$ ）， 4 get |
| ymme | raspberry | 3 （弦）мизз， <br>  | involved in $\left(=-\eta_{n}\right), 5 \operatorname{mix}$ |
| m |  |  | up together； |
| mo（mo のfるo चб＠u） | what？，what！， how！，please （of course） |  <br> 7 （土）的运， <br> 8 （ง）пйゥるの， | corrupt， 6 mix up together， 7 throw into |
| mu＠gut（0） | as，because |  | disorder， 8 be |
| 的めом | radio |  | thrown into |
| momo | in order that |  | confusion， 9 you |
| mu（o）aj／moa | anything | perfect（́ngymu） | （D）are sick， |
| munmbo | district |  | 10 be mixed up |
| 的zo | as，because |  | in，be part／ |
|  | as far as |  | one of |
| （3n（3） | （I know） |  | 1 ring， 2 drive |
|  | how many？ |  | （e．g．herd）out， |
|  | as many | 3 9的うзgo | 3 drive X some－ |
|  | anyhow |  | where［present |
|  | some |  | sub－series］ |
|  | a number of | mojmuas | advert |
|  | mes |  | recommended |
| mubunomo | of what sort？ | 的うyndo | diet |
|  | of course | 的う39030 | recipe |


| 白碞 | wash eight |  <br>  | as（as soon as） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| mos： 1 （Ro）mosu， | 1 switch on， 2 join | 隹çjor | when |
| 2 （＠u）mosu3 | X to Y （D）（cf． | 隹mon | not |
| （cf．6̧oul | give X （D） | 隹めol | when？ |
|  | permission）， | 的mo | role |
| 3 （＠）〕ónoso， | 3 spin， 4 marry |  | that；if |
| 4 зmलu® | female X to Y | киmдugmo | Roman（person） |
| （ $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{g}}$ ）moso3， | （D）， 5 marry | ¢ma［g］mo | which？ |
| 5 змем⿺𠃊 | female X | mmajmody | any |
|  |  |  | some |
| mon（3）： 1 （ z 0 ）umo 2 （zu）gஙぁmmón nosz［J］mo | 1 amuse， 2 amuse oneself | кпma［g］mor | which |
|  |  | mmar | even if |
|  | vintage，grape |  | when |
|  | gathering |  | hit（gulp down |
| mod／ $\mathrm{norz}_{3}$ | 1 take X off Y | (5uog vibl | cigarette smoke） |
|  | （D）， 2 shake |  |  |
| 2 bృलし（hっдм）－ <br>  | hands with X | র্yzon | rugby（under |
|  | （D）， 3 snatch |  | Russian influence |
|  <br>  <br> 5 （дп）ก向のдృ3 | X from Y （D）， |  | （ryzos） |
|  | 4 pass X to Y | 自ulugos | Russia |
|  | （D）， 5 help oneself（to |  | Russian （person） |
| monymo | food／drink） | knylummo | Russian |
|  | complex |  | （thing） |
|  <br>  | 1 distribute； | mugbo | grey |
|  | advise， | 的才o | horn |
|  | 2 reconcile |  | 1 name X （D）＇ $\mathrm{Y}^{\prime}$＇， |
|  | order，queue（in order／in the queue） |  <br>  <br> 3 3． 300 | 2 give $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ the nickname＇$Y$＇， 3 you（D）are |
| mociban | number |  | called |
|  | 1 reveal by investigation （cf．self－ determination）， 2 it is revealed， transpires， 3 emerge from thought，come to one＇s senses， sober up |  <br>  <br>  <br>  | transgress |
|  |  |  | corrupt |
|  |  |  | why do you have |
|  |  |  | it in for $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ？ |
|  |  |  | 1 distinguish， |
|  |  |  | 2 choose，select， |
|  |  |  | 3 elect， 4 give |
|  |  |  | X as advice to |
|  |  |  | $Y$（D）， 5 choose |
| rimgmén （隹gmen دóno） | how？（of course） | 5 ง⿱㇒⿺丄丅八⿱丶万⿱⿰㇒一乂， <br>  | in preference to Y （D） |
|  | of what sort？ | د㘯hos lubjmmzuбn | （cf．X chose a |
| ¢nızmóno | of which sort | Loz3e＠mo） | glorious death in |
|  | anyhow |  | preference to life） |
|  | somehow |  | advice |


|  <br>  | you（D）prefer |  | 1 water， 2 squeeze out |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢ B （g／oб）： | 1 save（from X |  | your X |
|  | （D））， 2 survive | 的 $f(3): 1$（＠）人的为mo， | 1 make pointed X |
| 2 （zu＠）mḩobo， | （ X （D））， 3 heal | 2 （hu）ungmo | firm in something， |
|  | $X$ from／make X |  | 2 fix X down in |
| 4 （am） $\mathrm{mh} \mathrm{j}^{\text {bon }}$ | avoid Y（D）， |  |  |
| （cf．Imenho（＠） | 4 get over X |  |  |
|  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  | （D），finish with | $\checkmark$ |  |
|  | X （D）（cf．it＇s | $L(3):(@)$ ）Lum | stick X in Y （D） |
|  | over（and done | $=$（＠u） （mizm |  |
|  | with for good）！）， | Louzu＠думоुल | hospital |
|  | 5 remain（to X | Louon | watch，clock；hour |
|  | （D））， 6 fall | loumgrum | affectionate |
|  | behind（ X （D））， | Loomojm | legendary |
|  | 7 leave X for Y | Lububn | excuse |
|  | （D），pay X（D） | LuBu3 $\mathrm{m}_{3 \mathrm{~m}}$ | child－（adj．） |
|  | back with Y， | Lu8［0］60 | blanket |
|  | 8 keep body and | Lubyono | document |
|  | soul together | LuBumuza | tyre |
|  <br>  <br> 2 ain $\cos ^{6} 3 \rho^{\text {ºul }}$ <br>  | 1 put to shame， | Lu8fm（Luzagmos） | council，soviet |
|  | 2 you（D）are | $\log _{3}[0] 60$ | subject |
|  | ashamed（Note： | いo＠ | where？ |
|  | the future given | しゃ＠ゝ30 | rein |
|  | here along with | いocuymo | of where？ |
|  |  | Locor | where |
|  | and perfect | Lu＠aymo | station |
|  |  ＇feel shame＇， | Lu＠g＠uдnпmm | future mother－in－ law（for woman） |
|  | whereas the non－ inverted forms |  oluencerob | lunch |
|  |  | lu＠omo | lunch |
|  | ajmisazol | しゃ＠みつ | anywhere |
|  |  | ucemor | somewhere |
|  | used to mean （＇the man）will |  | toast（for drinking） |
|  | find／found／（has） | lughnozminolm | international |
|  | apparently found | lognomm | common |
|  | himself | luzumumm | regrettable |
|  | embarrassed＇） | lozusd［9］men | armchair |
| md［0］mon | daughter－／sister－in－ | Luzuzimm | commercial |
|  | law | Lughor | full |
|  <br>  | rock | Lu\％uдmmm | watermelon |
|  |  | Lu＇om［g］me | horrible |
|  | 1 convince， <br> 2 believe X（D）， <br> 3 try to persuade | Lu\％\％\％ल［0］mon | disgusting |
|  |  |  | society；company |
|  |  | Lu＇rezumzumgos | abroad |
|  |  |  | frontier，limit |


|  <br>  | limit，define | Luayumm แงวฉงるง๓ก | world <br> Tuesday |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Lunuzuy | mousetrap | ᄂuagmbmm | homeland |
| Luoududm | game，for playing | Luadubmm | future in－law／ |
| Lonougho | title |  | parent of child＇s |
| Lumbuyno | greenhouse |  | future spouse |
| Luazuem | spectacles | Luadna［u］mon | condolence |
| Lomomy | thimble | しゃadnam： | offer condolence |
| Lon＠u6 | whence，from |  | to X （D） |
|  |  | Luafiobumm | unfortunate |
| Lun＠ubou | whence，from | Luabmgon | south |
|  | where？ | Lu6uzzo | bin |
| Lun＠ubay | from anywhere | Luбuzaj（－7u） | oil－（oil well） |
| Luncubcuor | from somewhere | ᄂงธัa | while，until，before |
| Lon¢удмем | secret | Lubusormm | bank |
| Lunon（39б） | whither，where to？ | Luбubumbu | sight |
| Lunbogarglum | interesting | Lu6m［0］mo | candle |
| Lojoc30 | stretcher | Lumg［0］mo | surprising |
| Lusgrjob［j］mo | patch |  | opposite |
| Lujnomba | question，problem |  | toilet；bathroom |
| Lujaum＠ | sufficiently | Lo3［m］60 | soap |
| Lujun［0］ mo | own | Lu3ymmoncmo | prison |
| losyonm： <br> （＠u）nuajnonngo | make one＇s own | しった <br>  | take advantage of X（I） |
| lojunomoz | proper |  |  |
| lum［o］an | greeting | Lum＠${ }_{\text {Lu }}$ | general |
| Lomuón | cashpoint | Lumozama（0） | weeds |
|  | 1 let $\mathrm{X} / \mathrm{get} \mathrm{X}$ to | bumorymo | floor，storey |
| uимmajz， | greet Y（D）， | しotuso | mirror |
| 2 （дп／дm）－ | 2 greet X （D） | Luthrome | complaint，lawsuit |
| glumajorn |  | Lumdjozo | for milk，milk jug |
| Luauzumnomm | exemplary | Lumdme | future daughter／ |
| Luдızпうкмm＠ | instead |  | sister－in－law |
| ᄂงдงдuдnomm | future father－in－ <br> law（woman＇s） | Lorifyozo | for watering， watering－can |
| Luวuaymm | patriotic | Luluc口ммm | dining room，café |
| Luautiomo | salt cellar | Lotumgabmm | useful |
| Luajarijme | Mingrelia | LuLnuдmzббm | pleasant |
| Luaj\％mbmm | neighbourhood |  | future mother－in－ |
| Luarotngymm | kitchen |  | law（man＇s） |
| Luan | three | LuLnaıamm | future mother－in－ |
| しงajy | healing－（adj．）， medicinal | buludm | law（man＇s） <br> future son／ |
| Luamz［u］mon | samovar |  | brother－in－law |
| luam fumufm | civil | Lulymmm | school－（adj．） |
| luamuzm | multiplicand | Lotufomjzonomozu | hopelessness， |
| Lualubuy mo | work |  | depression |
| Luavgum | work | Lutinfunjusanomo | depressed |


|  | guest room，hotel | Lolo | face；appearance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| uluymo | windpipe |  | name |
| Loluyozj3［9］mo | heaven，paradise | Lubymemón | in particular |
| bubinoorm | urgent，speedy | Lubymo | name，reputation |
| Logobn | chisel | Lubymadмзибумм | textbook |
| Luybjeymm＠ | unfortunately | Lubjeraj̃ogm | state，state－（adj．） |
| （ ${ }_{\text {（\％ago－）}}$ | （for me） | Lubjermbu | having a name |
| Luø\％る：Lov\％дmb／ | breakfast | lubjermznonn | nominative |
| nuovibaj3 |  | Lubmo | house |
| Luv ${ }^{\text {bag }}$ | breakfast | Lubuymozo | roof |
| Luysjoglum | best |  | punish |
|  | century | boxomm | public |
| Lovjx．0 | treasure，treasury | Lozuкммmbs | openness；glasnost |
|  | ashtray | $\log _{3} / \ln (3):$ | 1 send X to attack |
| lugreaza | grave |  | Y （D）， 2 attack |
| luģmborm | post－（adj．） |  | X （D） |
| Luoberubajon | France | しうз＠пงбの $^{\text {¢ }}$ | sad |
| Luobu［0］ $\mathrm{MO}(3)$ | yeast |  | sight（show X（D） |
| Looुymo | wallet，purse |  | what for） |
| Loobyd3［9］mo | base |  | walk |
| Lufumay | chicken coop | пunombjo |  |
| lufunのozjmм | Georgia |  | serious |
| Lofzayбm＠ | universally | Lylt： 1 Ligltymm3／ | 1 borrow， 2 lend |
| Lufaj（muzou | business，job， | ougltaja， | X to Y（D）， |
| しufaj？） | work（what＇s |  | 3 pay back a |
|  | going on？） |  | loan to X（D）， |
| Lufдкм | fiancé | 4 （Ro）oligltag | 4 redeem a loan |
| Lofmb［9］mo | livestock |  | September |
| lufonjeno | behaviour |  | 1 drink， 2 be |
| lumuam | evening | 2 ぃLajou／ | drinkable， 3 seat |
| Lommóng | pigsty | ＠ип¢эзз， | （singular X）； |
| Luyzum［9］mo | favourite，lover | 3 （＠） $\mathrm{L}_{3}$ ¢а， | place（punctua－ |
|  | uterus |  | tion mark $=$ |
| じずす\％ | dangerous |  |  |
| いつวm3（0）m | of Christmas |  | 4 seat down in， |
| Luayomjo | means |  | imprison， 5 seat |
| Lohyd［0］mon | present |  | （on horse $=$ |
| Lohfurm | urgent |  | $\left.\left.\left.3^{6}\right)^{5 \%}\right)^{\prime}\right)$ ；propose |
| Logejme | draft－（adj．） |  | （toast）， 6 under－ |
| Logron mo | sieve |  | line $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ， |
| logm＠ozo | wretched |  | 7 seat beside |
| logmmo | fiancée |  | oneself（cf．wipe |
|  | place of abode， apartment block |  | the hand over the forehead） |
| Ludnemj $=$ Lufimmo | bedroom | Lzubjon | Svaneti（a） |
| Lupy［o］mo | miserable，poor | $\square_{3}$ L $^{\text {¢ }}$ | Svan（person） |
| Lufo | steering wheel |  | Svan（thing） |
| Luzomm | necessary | $\mathrm{l}_{3}(\mathrm{~s})$ 的：（zu） $\mathrm{l}_{3} \mathrm{mon}$ | dirty |
| しułる［9］mo | food |  | wet |


| し $_{\text {¢ }}$ | wet | Unan | string，chord |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 give rest to； | しnวっธ巨п | maize |
| 2 （＠） | place（icon $=$ | Lnamgú | song |
|  | boठ̊／corpse $=$ | Lnayoyo | putridity |
|  | $33^{\text {Јд＾／} / \text { coffin }}=$ | unay $\mathrm{moma}^{\text {a }}$ | stench |
|  | $3 \mathrm{j}^{3 \mathrm{~m}}$ ）some－ | Lnadoaj | weight，heaviness |
|  | where， 2 have | Lnafious | ripeness |
|  | a rest；place | しпбummo | light |
|  | （corpse，etc．） |  | reality |
|  | before oneself， | Lnbeoln | conscience |
|  | 3 calm down； | Lnを¢olughon | honourable |
|  | have a rest， |  | test |
|  | 4 have a little | Lnuymamo | foolishness |
|  | rest | Lolifming | correctness |
|  | 1 coming， 2 you | Lnlifmooza | speed |
| 1 дmuzmu， | come， 3 you will | ᄂпठうठm | sweetness |
| 2 am＠obu＜n， | come， 4 you | LヵOy3\％ | word，speech |
| 3 дmbzum， | would（have） | uncuomozo | poverty |
| 4 дмьзп＠м＠о， | come， 5 you |  | love |
| 5 дмьдз＠๐， | came， 6 you | Lonfumg | speed，gear |
| 6 дmuvmbuen | have come | Ln（3）30 | cold |
|  | 1 shoot， 2 shoot | Lnogmismo | life |
| 1 пиз | at X （D） | Lnozbo | heat |
|  |  | undy | son／brother－in－law |
| Lnumizme | walk（ing） | LndEjmo | difficulty |
| Ln8930 | short－sightedness | Lnfinmery | redness |
|  | filth；pollution |  | adolescence |
| ᄂп36умл | darkness | Lņugro | variety，motley |
|  | evil | ujudn | seat，chair |
| しnるふдıз | blindness |  | burst |
|  | mother－in－law （husband＇s） | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{L}_{33}(\mathrm{~g}) 6: \\ & \quad 1 \text { (@) } \mathrm{ol}_{33} \text { бم, } \end{aligned}$ | 1 draw conclusion， 2 tie |
| Ln＠o5xy | calmness | 2 （3） $\operatorname{lu}_{3} 3^{\text {¢ }}$ |  |
| Ln3ino | space |  | school |
| unta［0］mo | dream |  | 1 hear／listen to |
| ип\％ว <br>  | you（D）dream of |  e．g．zoしaj6o！）， | thing（vs listen to person（D）， |
| unomim | heat | 2 กเant／amolan | e．g．＇Yes！＇when |
| Lnovojo | cheapness | ＝amolajou， | answering the |
| Lnjucy | kindness | 3 ajlan ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | phone or，of |
| Unjz＠п¢п | death | дmzлlajou | waiters，when |
| Unјз＠пмпибт8ง | death rate | $=$ amajuan | taking orders in |
| Unलuau\％ | beauty |  | a restaurant）， |
| ᄂกวงว＜＜ | father－in－law （husband＇s） |  | 2 be audible（or smellable）， |
| Lndu＇moreo | truth |  | 3 hear（or detect |
| ᄂnдıмел | height |  | smell） |
|  | wealth | Limgm | mushroom，fungus |


| Lma［g］bo | Armenian （person） | Uyýnzomon じリビロ | wish weak |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Lumazjos | Armenia | byoij3：Lyojoz | X reigns |
| Lmatumeno | Armenian （thing） | bugozos <br>  | pure，clean 1 fatten， |
| Lmog［j］ mo umbuan | village，country Sukhum |  | 2 moderately fatten |
| L3：（ $\partial m$ ） L 3 mb | ruin | Lทуzว＜＜ | absolutely all |
|  | speculator | Loठวर́m | sphere |
| し3うoroumýyo | special | Ligun | sex |
| U3п¢о | AIDS（Russian borrowing； cf．Ən＠lи） | ufjuynón <br>  <br>  | sexual <br> 1 learn， 2 teach X to Y （D） |
| Lummion | sport | 2 山¢fozmп |  |
| Uing／ol：（zu）Lingl | press，squeeze | L80зми | learning（vs |
| L仿地：I Limouma／ <br>  2 bృмпœ๐б （zu）zol向のum＠ァる | 1 slip， 2 slip out of your（D）hand |  し®（o）m： <br> 1 （am）ulffrgz， <br>  | teaching） <br> 1 do X in time／ before Y（D）， 2 live to see X |
| Unyom：1．$\left(0 / \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{g}}\right)$ <br>  （＠u）（＠inymjo | 1 fulfil， 2 complete |  <br>  | （D）， 3 leave before X （D）， 4 attend X（D） |
| Linymolozmzuba | of full age |  | 1 put straight／ |
| Limymo | whole | 2 （g）ubimingo， | right，correct， |
| Linymoue | wholly |  | 2 correct， 3 put |
| Linymymoznem | perfect |  | in order； |
|  | of full years |  | discipline |
|  | carrot | Lipmóng | precisely |
|  пலззб | whistle | ugmél ufnuogn | a week from（＋G） quick |
|  | student | Ub： 19 （＠））ubud | $1 a$ pour（make |
|  | guest | （mozornyl | X（D）dizzy）， |
| しర゙yवm： |  | （＠）（0） | $1 b$ seat（plurality）， |
| 1 リర̧undmjon， | 1 visit X （D）， | $1 b$（œ）Lbua， | 2 pour X down |
|  | 2 see out， get rid of | 2 （ho）ulbua， <br> 3 bminglbmogbu | into， 3 put flesh on $\mathrm{X}=$ realise |
| $\operatorname{lug}_{3}$ | KGB |  | （D）／heap praise |
| lym | quite，altogether， entirely | 4 （am）nubua <br> （cf．（дm）داb | $\text { on } \mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D}), 4 \text { sea }$ <br> plurality beside |
|  пиумлмлる | act foolishly | 5 by boz б́n бuymoz （дm／＠u）nubual， | oneself；wrap X around oneself |
| Lymen | soul，spirit | 6 by 6 baz | （cf．wrap X |
| liymogion | spiritual | Euymogn $u$ Lbou | around Y（D）； |
| lug6o | smell |  | pour liquid here |
| byyn：glymul | you（D）desire |  | and there；bring |
| Luýnuon | picture |  | plurality |
| しuýn＠m | cold |  | together）， 5 tree |
| bugno vivimzob | wish X to Y （D） |  | puts on a lot of |



|  | cake | － $3^{\circ} 3^{\circ}$ | ignorant |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  －bunalk | boast |  m\％ | ignorance |
| 万ónza＠n | tragedy |  | safeguard |
| ónuazon | tram（way） |  | （I safeguard） |
| Ofonome 1 | 1 spin， 2 fuss |  |  |
|  | over X（D） |  | lack of agreement |
| notmoumjo， |  | yorzuem | eyeless |
| 2 ＠ulormnumg |  | yom | iron |
| סัym | jackal | yonym | doubtless |
|  | 1 notice X on Y | ソก | ooh |
|  <br> 3 зэбумठง， | （D）， 2 learn， 3 X is（now） | эзงб | back；behind， after＋G |
|  | noticeable on | ソЗ०60（0） | back one |
| 5 วరீymzu | you（D）， 4 X is |  | excuse me |
|  | （generally） | リృరпलm | toothless |
|  | noticeable on | yjunglo | better |
|  | you（D）， | Э330 | already |
|  | 5 apparently |  | dissatisfaction |
|  | skin，leather |  | turning back |
| ठуว | wood，forest |  | reflexive |
| O̊y3： 1 －סోyzం， | 1 will say， 2 will | эзう¢ | injustice |
| 29 э๐узо | tell to X |  | moustache |
|  | 1 tell lies， |  | illogicality |
|  | 2 deceive， | уวงдм | fatherless |
|  | 3 wangle X | ya\％gm | sunless |
|  | deceptively out | บวธกวัธృмм | unimportant |
|  | of Y（D） | vavgos［0］mo | unemployed |
|  | lie，lying | yaroringumo | minority |
| ס¢y 30 | twin | yarumb | younger，junior |
|  |  | yapmojut： | improve |
| כ |  | （8u）undzembjug |  |
| yo\％\％m | senseless | yaymzjun | better |
| yงdmız | countless | ybuznomo | saddle |
| yorugo | worse | ybuto | talent |
| yumo | ＇no＇，refusal | ขб＠ | it is necessary |
| yońymoro | deny（ing） |  | university |
| yunymoznon | negative | y3ugnym： | rape |
|  | misfortune |  |  |
| y36： 9 936，${ }^{3}$／ | tell to X（D） |  | privilege |
| 00゙yzn |  | ymumato | Urals |
| yる保m （ஏるウиммм＠） | ordinary（just） |  | without which （ones） |
|  | you（will）make | ymbo | disobedient |
|  | X tasteless | yondjm | milkless |
| э＠ృ¢ | motherless | yunちゃotm | dishonourable |
|  | bigger |  | moustacheless |
| ขวสзวмก | undoubted | эŋбu＜m | talentless |


| リob［ง］m0 | lord |  | colour |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | master X（D） |  | ash |
| リoुmృ30 | right | Ojbzuymon | football |
| ワชֹलm | more | Oj\％${ }^{\text {c }}$ | foot |
| リoु¢mb | elder，older， senior，boss | $)^{\text {ong }}$ badっay | pregnant |
|  |  |  | shoe，footwear |
|  | annul | \％⿴囗丷⿺𠃊⿳亠丷厂犬 | bowl－like cup |
| ッみる。 | idle | оुпеда | film |
| у¢зом | godless |  | firm |
|  | godlessness | oुolm | pussy |
| youfiom | sugarless |  | pussy |
| vวృちm＠ | without you |  | 1 think， 2 X sets |
| りまって［s］mo | fearless | nơn fimb ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | you thinking， |
| － $\mathrm{J}^{\text {bu＠}}$ | suddenly | 2（＠）zuogn fingol／ | 3 X makes you |
| －（3）${ }^{3}$ | suddenly |  | （D）think Y， |
|  | foreign（person）， foreigner | moubjol， <br>  | 4 become pensive（about X |
| yobmyón | foreign（thing） | 4 （＠）（y）ozo fím＠o子 | （D） |
| ydjm | sonless |  | thought |
| －¢folinozm | disordered |  | 1 give pledge to X |
|  | beardless |  | （D）， 2 swear |
| －¢fy：リfyn | know |  | to X （D） |
| ข¢̧¢ | harmless，innocent |  | （on $\mathrm{Y}=-\%_{j}$ ） |
| ybontym： | you（D）consider |  | plank |
|  | embarrassing | оुलor［m］mo | leaf |
| viburbume | embarrassing |  | orange |
|  | embarrassment |  | orange（－coloured） |
| ysum | drawer |  | form，prepare |
|  |  | ¢mboro |  |
| 83 |  |  | French（person） |
|  | window |  | French（thing） |
| grom：（＠u）\ogumg | cover |  |  |
| oुumo | flock |  | 1 warn， 2 take |
| － | curtain | 1 （zu）Јoुmontomjz， | care of／be wary |
| oुumom | broad | 2 （zu）リo̧ montom＠jor | of X（D） |
|  | broaden | оुmorbomo | careful |
|  |  |  | front |
|  | 1 evaluate |  | snort |
|  | （concretely， |  |  |
| 3 （Rodm）oogulig | metaphorically）， |  |  |
|  | 2 evaluate （metaphorically）， |  <br>  | shed，scatter |
|  | 3 reduce in price |  | peel |
| Oु৩oु［0］mon | mane |  |  |
| ¢๐¢0～ | fact |  | cause（dough） |
| oुuलumuon | diarrhœa | （उल⿰訁口） | to rise |
|  | put X on |  | wrap |
|  | exhibition | оัソツ๐ | money |


|  | loaf | Jomo | barley |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | special type of earthenware oven |  <br>  | you（D）have／had／ apparently had |
|  | page |  | the name |
| orviozylo | fuss |  | 1 you（D）have |
|  | ruin | 2 дmzง $\chi_{3}$ ， | （inanimate）， |
|  | flour | 3 дпз f3 $^{\text {¢ }}$ ， | 2 you（D）bring |
|  | crumble up |  | （inanimate）， |
|  | crumbling |  | 3 you（D）take |
|  | friable |  | （inanimate）， |
| Ob［［0］mo | spinach |  | 4 have，acquire |
|  | 1 scratch， 2 （your | J30 | stone |
|  | （D）back）itches | J3080 | pan |
| （\％ymingo） |  | 才зэœ๐ついб๐ | skirt |
|  | scrape | 才зコзnon | below；downstairs |
| $\mathrm{O}_{3} \mathrm{~b}_{3}(\mathrm{~g})$ 的： <br>  | uproot | Азддмо <br> Азоу［0］60 | below；downstairs country；world； |
| \％＇，$^{6}{ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | crumbling |  | land |
|  | friable | 才зоуб： <br>  | publish |
| $\mathfrak{j}$ |  |  | world |
| $f_{:}:\left(\partial_{9}\right) \cup f_{0}{ }^{3}$ | praise <br> preach | $\neg_{3}{ }^{\text {g }}$ | underneath（adv．， |
| ๑Ј৩＠uzวठ |  |  | receipt |
| fuon［u］an | chicken | f3olmo | wife＇s sister＇s |
| Juonnbury | compliment |  | husband |
| fumoforno | of the town | foms | jar |
|  | （person） | Jo6do | coriander |
| jumofo | town | formos： | 1 rent out， 2 rent |
| Jumbuठीmбn | lady，madam | 1 （＠））fo mo $30^{3}$ ， |  |
| Jumo | woman |  |  |
|  | daughter | Jmouzo | plum |
|  | rush off | fə［ 0 ］¢on | husband |
| јЈб队打ठ○ | statue |  | 1 create， 2 you did， |
| Jumbo | chaos |  | 3 you will be， |
| Jutnorzome | Georgian（person） |  | 4 you（D）will |
|  | Kartvelologist |  | have（inanimate）， |
|  <br>  | Georgian（thing） （in Georgian） |  | 5 it was（＋past participle） |
| Juóno | wind |  | 1 shake from side |
| Jumozb［0］mo | storm |  | to side， 2 shake |
| Jumb［0］60 | factory |  | up and down， |
| JЈल৩щ＠ | paper |  | 3 draw rapidly |
| Juß：（am）Juhou | tug | 4 （дм）¢ 拒วз， | in one direction； |
|  | encourage |  | come brandish－ |
|  － 700 Ozo | engage in feasting |  | ing something <br> ［present sub－ |
| Jonozo | feast |  | series］， |


|  | 4 wave X at Y ， 5 shake，wave； go brandishing something ［present sub－ series］ |  | convert to，turn up somewhere， 11 turn back， 12 fall down， 13 amuse self with，spend time |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Jman［0］6o | pot（ty） |  | doing；tuck into |
| Јмб๐ | having |  | $X$（D）for |
| 才mбj30 | possessions |  | sustenance |
| Jmбn | fat | J303 | turning；version |
| Jmanfomo | wedding（－feast） |  |  |
|  | 1 get wed， 2 get | ¢ |  |
| 1 （＠）－ <br>  <br> 2 （зงб）－ <br>  | divorced | ＠： 1 （дง）๑œうる， <br> 2 （gŋ）имлд， <br> 3 （ $\ddagger$ ））пмっる， <br> 4 мјвиммпд， | 1 open， 2 open ajar， 3 take， 4 receive regularly， |
| フméņo | wedding （ceremony） |  | 5 receive， 6 take up， |
|  <br> 2 （zu）fíngo | $l$ extinguish， 2 disappear， go out | 7 （るゝ＠）๑еうる （cf．Lynuon <br>  | 7 take picture <br> （＝Ligmuons） <br> （cf．take a |
| fin（me）：f（noll <br>  | it blows（of wind） |  | picture of X <br> （D））；pass over |
| fronodo | bribe | उmемец | （of bad weather）， |
| forouos | Christ |  | 8 extract， 9 put |
| flume：（am）fumz | knit |  | an end to X（D） |
| fりや | hat | －लu | only；on earth |
| JyEnemugo | scarlet fever | ¢（0）m：（＠）¢епо | exhaust |
| Jyう向＠ | thief | podo | night |
|  | thief－like | cumnd： | make poor |
| Jyno | street | （8u）ט¢utnozjz |  |
|  <br>  | dismember | 以umnorn <br>  | poor <br> paint |
| fumb：fybl／ | it thunders |  | shed |
|  | thunder（ing） |  |  |
|  | 1 turn X （into |  |  |
| 1 （8）＠っ）$)$ ¢ 303, | $\mathrm{Y}=\mathrm{A}$ ）， 2 make |  | stir up |
| 2 （8））¢ ${ }^{\text {（303，}}$ | X run off， | ¢3๐бм（¢3๐бกレ） | wine |
| $3(\partial m) \circ f(ও \partial 3,$ | 3 place in； | M3od： $1(z u(\partial m))-$ | $l$ wake X up， |
|  | convert， 4 turn X towards， 5 knock |  |  |
|  | over， 6 turn（e．g． |  | up， 4 you（D） |
|  | back $=$ \％umiono | 3 （zง（2m））－ | are awake |
| 8 （з）$)$ f ${ }^{\text {（2）30，}}$ | on X （D）， 7 turn |  |  |
|  | into， 8 rush off， | 4 amzodug |  |
|  | 9 behave， | ＠os | open［originally |
| 11 （an）$)$ f $3033^{\text {，}}$ | 10 behave |  | stative present |
| 12 （80）$)$ f（303ก， | towards X（D）， |  | of ¢］ |





|  | unadaptability |  | spinster |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | incomplete， unfulfilled | クロбuymon วกวก | domestic fear |
|  | incompleteness； lack of fulfilment |  | find（by looking） and acquire |
|  | inadmissible | วmbu | Christmas |
|  | inadmissibility | શmठu＠ | capable of being |
|  <br> ŋృземд」 | alarmed | วmbucombu | born |
| วృdృธ๐ | acquiring |  | 1 separate X |
|  | upset（ting） |  | from Y（D）， |
|  | viewpoint |  | 2 separate from |
| 万jbzop的 | meeting |  | X （D） |
|  <br>  <br>  | 1 let go， 2 commit an error， 3 let in， 4 let out here， | Immol | among，between （＋D，more rarely G） |
|  | produce， 5 relax | Iment | far（away） |
| 4 （zงam）$)^{\text {g }} 33^{\text {a }}$ ， | loosen；give X |  | whey，serum |
| $5(2 \mathrm{~m})_{9} \partial_{3}{ }^{\text {b }}$ | （D）a rest | Tmou | oats |
| $\mathrm{V}_{39}{ }^{\text {b }}$ | easing | Vnnozor | script |
|  | leave from work |  | 1 fix eyes on X |
|  | eased |  | （D）， 2 stare at X |
|  | Sweden | 2 （дп／дm）－ | （D） |
| วృว＠ | Swede |  |  |
|  | Swedish（thing） | mono | between，among |
|  | 1 aid X（D）， |  | $(+\mathrm{D}, \text { more }$ |
| 2 （弓ヵ／дm）－ | aid X（D） | วуь¢ел | midday（at |
|  |  | （2yucemotul） | midday） |
| 万3○＠ | seven | วับง\％ว | down the middle， |
|  | great－grandchild |  | in two |
|  | grandchild | 2ybmen | forehead |
|  | do［present sub－ series］ |  <br>  | $l$ you are in a hurry to do |
|  <br>  | 1 dry， 2 X dries on you（D） | 2 子ugºyngon， <br>  | something（cf． you（D）envy |
| －¢o | in |  | X ）， 2 you will |
| ตก（3）： 1 3 ${ }^{\text {mod }}$ | 1 you（D）are |  | set off in a |
|  | hungry， 2 you |  | hurry， 3 you |
| $=\partial m z \partial_{n z},$ | （D）get hungry |  | go／come in a |
| วก\％ | indoors，inside |  | traffic－lights |
| 2o＠lo（cf．LЗ○＠๐） | AIDS | Әу¢еп | conflict |
| วกб | at home | Toुmo： | $l$ arouse，stir up， |
|  | 1 alarm， 2 you |  | 2 rouse to anger |
| 2 зコวกбก๐， | （D）are afraid， |  |  |
| 3 วృวกб＠っる○／ | 3 you（N／D） | วbง3ıуб： | inject $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ with |
|  | become alarmed |  | Y |



| 5 （œ๐）әзддп， <br>  | 4 you will be given／give your－ self over to X （D）， 5 fall down， hurl self down， go down， 6 honour／respect X（D） |  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  | 3 fail to bring object in contact with its target， 4 make mistake， err， 5 remain unused，waste time； go beyond／out of X（D），vs X（D） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 30 | sky，heaven |  | loses Y（nom．）， |
|  | 1 wait， 2 wait for X （D）， 3 give X （D）time by waiting |  | 6 object fails to hit its target（D）， 7 some word un－ wittingly escapes |
| ও（0）＠： $1 \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{B}}$ 2 （zuдm） $\mathrm{L}_{\text {gen }}$ | 1 try， 2 test | उ¢（の¢）：उ＠っ¢ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { your (D) lips } \\ & \text { try } \end{aligned}$ |
|  （masdar＠o（330） | defend（defence） |  （ङ） | attempt |
|  | 1 give $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ free time；tear X off Y（D）， 2 make time for self， 3 you（D）have time， 4 empty |  | dance <br> naughty naughtiness hit X （D） you（D）sneeze |
| 30mo | one（of two） |  |  |
| （30m30（80m－（30msj） | apart（indepen－ dently of each other） |  $303^{6} \mathrm{mo}$ <br>  | centre fire 1 dress X（D）， |
| （uд）${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | thirteen |  | 2 dress self， |
| 3（0）6／036： | 1 introduce X to Y （D）， 2 get |  | 3 get changed， |
| 1 （zu）ogbmo <br> （Note：root in <br>  and aorist with | to know， 3 introduce self／ be introduced to | 4 дo（3300 <br> （33（0）m： 1 （2y $/$－ <br> зыдм）вземо， <br> 2 （зо）（ззего， | 1 change， substitute， 2 exchange， |
| 3rd person plural <br>  | X （D）， 4 be ），acquainted with； |  | 3 pass away |
| 2 （8ง）$\circ$（з 6 mb ， <br> 3 （д））эзбм 8 п， <br> 4 ก $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{6} 6 \mathrm{~m}$ ， <br> 5 пзбм | recognise， 5 can be known， 6 deem | ```030/non: 1 (z0)(33)\mp@code{m,} 2(8०)(з3@)ठ二 (perfect zua(उз@umo)``` | 1 wear out X ， 2 X wears out |
| 6 36mb |  | $33^{\circ} 3^{(6) / 033^{\text {6 ：}} \text { ：}}$ | 1 plurality falls |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { vaccinate X (D) } \\ & \text { against Y } \end{aligned}$ | 1 （ззпз）／ <br>  | （down here）， <br> 2 plurality falls |
|  | sieve | （perfect | down， 3 plurality |
|  | empty | ＝hoamozaбпmol | falls／rushes out |
| ৫＠（9／の6）： | 1 lead into error， | Roam（ззпзбумm）， | （here）， 4 X （D） |
|  | 2 not make use | 2 （＠）（33п3＠うる）， | moults， |
| 2 （8））（З＠） | of，waste；miss | 3 （z৩（2m））－ | 5 plurality |
| 3 （0） 0 （3¢）${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | （appointment）， |  | falls down（here） |



|  <br>  | live |  | （generally／thither／ <br> hither）＇（masdar |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | living，life |  | （зЈ／до／дм）демемл， |
| $3^{6} \mathrm{mos}$ |  |  | imperative $\mathrm{z}^{\prime} / \mathrm{\partial N}_{0}$ |
|  | nineteen |  | amydgbn（の）；cf． two useful |
| d |  |  | expressions |
| dus：（＠u）du8u3 | aggravate，make tense |  |  <br> ＇this precedes |
| duem： 1 （＠u）odumjる， $2\left(\partial_{n} / \partial m\right) g$ dum $^{2} \partial_{\circ}$ | 1 force X on Y |  | that（D）＇；mo |
|  | （D）， 2 force |  |  |
|  | self on X （D） |  | anzodmzol งa |
| dumu | strength |  | Lułəృ y ？＇what |
| dum＠ub | very，a lot |  | fault／good deed |
| dumujo（0） | uncle＇s wife |  | lies with you（D） |
|  | burgle |  | in this matter？＇）］ |
| duemo | dog canine | dзjem $^{\text {a }}$ | old |
| ducmujo |  | dzomo | expensive |
| dЈb： 1 （zudm） dubjor $^{\text {a }}$ |  | dzomozulo | dear，valuable |
| 2 （＠）ydutaj3， | 2 shout at，send a call to $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ ， <br> 3 shout out to X | $d_{3}(\mathrm{~g}) \mathrm{m}: ~(8 u) \mathrm{d}_{3} \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{~m}_{\mathrm{g}} \mathrm{O}$ | squeeze through |
| 3 （зидм）ᄂdıbj3， |  | $\Rightarrow$ masdar | narrow space， |
|  |  | 子udmmau |  |
| 5 ndubo | （D）， 4 direct a |  | sneak off（cf．get |
| （Imperfect | shout at X （D）， |  | X to squeeze |
| $=\operatorname{ndub}(m) @$ ）， | 5 shout out，say， |  | through opening）； |
| 6 gdubo（imperfect | 6 call to X （D）， |  | cf．（＠u） adz $^{\text {mon }}$ |
| $=9 \mathrm{dub}(\mathrm{m}) @$＠） | call X（D）＇Y＇ |  | （older form of |
| do | son（in patronymics） |  |  ＠undumo／ |
| dj360 | search（ing） |  | ＠odmummbum＇you |
|  <br> 2 miso | 1 display ability |  | move／moved／ <br> apparently（have） |
| $3 \text { శృกdm }{ }^{3 \Delta}$ | to， 2 you（D） |  | moved＇from |
|  | is possible |  | （＠）（L）dmoz／ |
|  | 1 acquire X for Y |  | ＠udumo／＠uzndmuzl |
|  | （D）， 2 acquire |  | ＇set X in motion＇； |
|  | （actively）， 3 you |  | Note：зmobgl um |
| 4 （＠）Lodj5 | （D）acquire |  | （＠）（b）d＇̇ozz＇you |
|  | （passively），get a |  | don＇t utter a squeak＇ |
|  | afterthought to X (D) |  2 ठуロzo | 1 strip X off Y <br> （D），flay， 2 your |
|  | satiate oneself |  | （D）skin is flayed，you are |
| $\Rightarrow$ imperative | ［Not to be | 3 （70）odmmo | ruined finan－ |
| zudjbo（m）（cf． | confused with |  | cially， 3 snatch |
| （8u） deg／m3）$^{\text {a }}$ |  |  | （e．g．ring）off X <br> （D） |


| domen | sleep | Fumbo | eyebrow |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| dп6： 1 （＠ゝ）งd＾бృ3， | 1 put to sleep， |  | success |
|  | 2 go to sleep， |  | successful |
| 3 злdпбృ8ง， | 3 you（D）feel |  | representative |
|  | like sleep， 4 you | Burbuyme | past |
| 5 adn6ug | （D）drop off to | Fouzes | going，departure |
|  | sleep， 5 you（D） are asleep |  | 1 afford（e．g．help， service）to X |
| dono（domb） | root（at the base， foot，bottom） | 2 （ง）しดัว <br> 3 วงวถึวзน， | $\begin{aligned} & \text { (D), drag X } \\ & \text { aside for Y (D), } \end{aligned}$ |
| dombnoupo | fundamental | 4 （am）ᄂ®оз， | 2 lift， 3 you（D） |
| dejos $^{\text {（cf．}}$ | 1 give X to Y （D） | 5 （зง）しดึวз， | have（strength， |
| dल्य3／ $\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{m}}(3)$ ）： | ［present sub－ |  | ability）， 4 drag $X$ |
| （œu）الdməz）， | overpower）， 2 it | 8 （œ）$৩$ คัวз， | （tobacco）， 5 drag |
| 2 злdмэзз， | is given to you | 9 Lпठீyzul | out／aside；rush |
| 3 กdм $3^{\circ}$ | （D）， 3 you give |  | off， 6 bend over； |
|  | ［present sub－ |  | budge up， |
|  | series］ | 11 （＠）レ¢03， | 7 draw to |
| dmojuno（dmogn） | strong（very， strongly） | 12 （œ๐）$๐$ คว <br> 13 （＠）คค゚วзง， | oneself，bring in （harvest＝ |
| derozl | with difficulty | 14 （คงдм）ᄂ（9） | amus3 $\left.^{\text {［ }}\right]_{\mathrm{mo}}$ ）；move |
|  | brother（cf．blood brother $=$ lit． liver brother） |  <br>  17 （дп） 9 ควззо， | up hither， 8 bring（misfor－ tune）upon X |
| dantazomo | brother＇s child | 18 ＠ubaungou | （D）；make X |
| danlfiymo | brother＇s child |  | catch up Y（D）； |
| dбумо | difficult | 19 ว¢ึวз | put in a good |
| dm6d $\mathrm{g}^{\text {B }}$ ） | rag（s） |  | word（＝Ln¢у3\％${ }^{\text {b }}$ ） |
| d＇mmbo | cow |  | for X （D）， 9 put |
| dym： 1 зdymb， | 1 you（D）hate， |  | in a good word |
|  | 2 make X （D） |  | for X （ with $\mathrm{Y}=$ |
|  | hate Y， |  | －mo6）， 10 catch X |
|  | 3 conceive |  | （D）up， 11 lower， |
|  | hatred for， 4 you |  | move X back a |
|  | （D）begin to |  | short way， |
|  | hate |  | 12 lower one＇s |
| dydy | breast |  | own X；move |
| de3［9］60（cf． | gift（cf．present as |  | downwards， |
|  | a gift to，dedicate |  | wane，sink，drop |
|  | to X （D）） |  | （e．g．of tempera－ ture or in value）， |
| $\theta$ |  |  | 13 lose value／ |
| Fobmo | chestnut |  | status， 14 draw X |
| Fu＠omo | yearning |  | downwards， |
| ¢od［ง］men | medicine |  | 15 move X |
| fuan | second |  | forward， 16 move |
| foam：（am）foamoz | poison |  | forward， 17 gain |




| 3 （am）afyn6＠o | （D）feel distress， annoyance， 3 you（D） become annoyed， distressed，fed up with X |  <br> fom（3）： <br>  <br>  <br> 4 子ก⿰习习的 | stretch，make taut， spin out 1 you（D）need， 2 be difficult， 3 you（D）suffer from X， 4 you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Byza／ヶơ／Bye： | 1 decide X ， |  | （D）are in |
| 1 （зь＠๐）Вузоб， | 2 break off， |  | trouble |
| 2 （зง） ¢узэঠ， | liquidate， 3 stop， |  | darling！（your |
|  | 4 snap off one＇s |  | darling eye（s）！ |
| 4 （ง）ค®ெзэठ， | own X（e．g． | 子onnag！） |  |
|  | button мпм๐ on | 子ofo | glass，cup |
|  |  break free |  <br>  | neigh |
|  | when tied up； | 3390 | intelligence |
|  | explode in anger， |  | intelligent |
|  | 5 be decided | 子mado | tuberculosis |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { simple past }= \\ & \text { aorist } \end{aligned}$ | 子monn | scrunch up <br> rumour |
| Byбum： | 1 calm X down， | 7rommbu | wound |
|  | 2 accept |  | crockery |
| 2 （\％）„®̧yбumg |  |  | crevice |
|  | become angry | 子uazy | dirt |
|  | 1 you（D）are | Эソすyกงธก | dirty |
|  | thirsty， 2 you （D）become thirsty |  ๑Ұупзмәว | squeal |
|  |  | b |  |
| $3{ }^{3}$ |  | b： 1 Somhl／bym | 1 bring lip／hand |
| $f(0)$ д： 1 Э $\downarrow ⿰ 冫$ ， | 1 eat， 2 devour， |  | into contact with |
| 2 （ $\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{j}}$ ）̧ua， | 3 is edible， | $5\left(y^{2}\right)^{2} g^{2} g_{0}$ | X（D）， 2 touch |
|  | 4 feed X to Y <br> （D）， 5 snatch a |  | X（D）（as far as <br> $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ is |
| 4 دfaju， $5 \text { পु००\}৩a }$ | bite of X |  | concerned） |
| fumb［0］mo | beetroot | b（0）＠： 1 （8u）b＠o， | 1 make X some－ |
| Эəゃゃ○ | malleable | 2 （з）） 6 ¢оп， | thing；remove |
| Эว＠（3） | hammering | $2 a($ м $) \cap$ ¢＠ | clothing X from |
|  2 zozomuzl | 1 catch，arrest， 2 you（D） |  <br> 4 （zucou）ntron， | Y （D）， 2 remove get undressed， |
| 2 | hold |  | $2 a$ remove one＇s |
|  | $l$ cut（in two）， |  | own headgear X ， |
| 2 （＠）子的○， | 2 cut up，wound， |  | 3 become；grow |
| 3 （8৩＠）马称， | 3 cut across， | 8 （0）6＠（6uaylu | thin， 4 pay， |
| 4 （am）latuo | 4 cut X off Y | （0）6®o）， | 5 something |
| $=\left(\partial_{\text {m }}\right) \mathrm{Og}$ mo | （D） |  | （e．g．payment） |
| 93030 | rye | 10 длемmbu | devolves upon |
| 子no6ym： <br>  | spin out，lengthen |  <br>  | you (D), <br> 6 X happens， |




| 2 (am) งbau¢ ( $\mathrm{g}^{3}$ ), | to help Y (D), | bl(0)6: 1 ( () blun, | 1 explain, 2 open, 3 leave X (D) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 (@) gbaumgon | 3 help X (D) | 2 (8u)bl6n, |  |
| bauyóno | noise |  | alone |
| bamoubn | having a sword | blma: zublimz/ | you (D) remember |
| bmedy | as a rule | zablmajou |  |
| bmmajmb̃onn | conditional | 68: 1 bg ¢, | 1 jump [present |
| bмеме | but; whereas; however | $\left.2(0 / 2)^{\prime}\right) 68030$ | sub-series], 2 jump up/into |
| bma | surely | byono | five |
| bmen3[0]mo | corn, wheat | byonoubo | 5 out of $5=$ |
| bminco | meat |  | top marks |
| bminorome | having flesh, corporeal | byyozubuon | Thursday |
|  |  | bugmoz[u]60 | hooligan |
| bmengayltaymo | realised, made flesh | buadumo (0) | jester, jesting |
|  |  | byam: 1 buдmm3/ | 1 joke, 2 joke with |
| bmor: 1 (@) $b_{m(3)}$, $23^{6}$ 30 | 1 kill (many), | กbugamgz, | X (D), 3 have a |
|  | 2 wipe one's nose, 3 you | 2 gtazajozo, | little joke, |
| $203^{6}$ 万om <br>  |  | 3 fionbuдáng, | 4 have a little |
|  | are killed, die |  | joking |
| bmb: 1 bmbogl nombjo, 2 дмьmbuз, | 1 crawl, 2 come | bygn: 1 (@u)bymos, | 1 cover, shut, |
|  | crawling, 3 go | 2 (@) ) buymuz, | 2 put headgear |
|  | crawling, 4 crawl | 3 (@) abyymo3 | on X (D), 3 put on one's own |
| 3 дпbmbus, | about, 5 crawl |  | headgear |
| 4 ¢овмвоз, | into | byormo | change in money |
|  |  | bymes (3): | change (money) |
|  | choke, drown, suffocate X | (œっ/8०œ๐)- |  |
|  | corrupt | buynas | persimmon |
|  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  <br>  | 1 remind $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{D})$ |  | frequent |
|  | of Y, 2 recall |  |  |
|  | deliberately, | $\xi$ |  |
|  | 3 you (D) recall | 808[0] mo | bristle |
|  | inadvertently, | zuzmoln | brush |
|  | 4 tell X (D) | zuauzomo | wage |
|  | something | zuan | bowl |
|  | [polite]; give | ¢ибœuరง | hell |
|  | information to | \%ub@ubujo | hellish, damned |
|  | superior/official |  | healthy |
|  | gathering (cf. |  | health |
|  | conference | 8ubyn | rebellion |
|  | paper), 5 you | zomo | army |
|  | (pl.) (D) know |  | soldier |
|  | [polite], |  | 1 crash X against |
|  | 6 remind X (D) | 2 (@u) $\mathrm{g}_{\text {gubjob }}$ | $\mathrm{Y}(\mathrm{D}), 2 \text { crash }$ |
|  | of Y |  | into X (D) |
|  | mention | צ89\%o | group |


| $3 \mathrm{c} / \mathrm{\% n} / \mathrm{zog}$（ cf ． | 1 be seated， 2 sit | －fuyḿmbul！） | wood！） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ub（）¢＠）： | down， 3 sit down |  | crusader |
| 1 bnbum／nxejob | inside，board， | $\mathrm{COBO}_{0}$ | pocket |
| （masdar s¢¢ | 4 sit down by X | ¢ом＠\％ | prize |
| 2 （＠）re¢obo | （D）， 5 it costs | ¢๐OU | jeep |
| （masdar | you（D） |  | 1 behave |
| ＠uぬ¢мдง）， |  | ロடロソరう子， | obstinately， |
| 3 （ho）乡ejon， |  | 2 （8u）కnyరీ＠うる | 2 become |
|  |  |  | obstinate |
|  |  | หロyo̊o | obstinate |
| －8．0゙m | times | ¢ 0 f［ 0 ］ 60 | udder |
| 30.0 白 | yet；first | ¢¢mb： 1 u̧̧mbju | 1 it will be better |
|  | 1 convince，satisfy， | （cf．uxmbj3／ | （cf．worst／ |
|  | 2 believe（thing）， | upmbal | worsted／ |
|  | 3 believe（person） |  | apparently |
|  | （D）， 4 it is | $=3 \cap$ ¢m86пu）， | （have）worsted）， |
|  | credible， 5 you | 2 रmóno | 2 it is better |
|  | （D）find it | kmino | mule |
|  | satisfied with X | 3 |  |
|  | （D） | 30ว毎边 | air |
|  | for the time being， | 3п6＠ymo | Hindi（thing） |
|  | so long | 3 m | yes |
| $\mathrm{s}_{3}[0] \mathrm{mon}$（z30 mon | cross（touch | 3п＠） | well |

Note：In the first edition of this grammar the construction for＇ X related Y to Z ＇was
 amyyzs the man related the history of the car to his friend，though it was noted that on
 amyyzu．However，speakers consulted for this second edition almost without exception accepted only this latter，neologistic construction．In the first edition no example for this verb in the perfect was included；according to the original construction，as assumed by the editors of the Georgian Academy Dictionary，the construction would have been： 3000


 new style дпјуммммl．One should additionally note that the perfect for the bivalent form $^{\text {n }}$ of the verb（i．e．without the notional indirect object）is given in the Georgian Academy Dictionary as either дмзуммпь or дмуммпмь $X$ has evidently related $Y$ ．

Another variant not presented in the first edition was noted in the final days of preparation of the present volume－this concerns the pluperfect of the verb in the expression $\left(\partial_{\jmath} \partial_{\nu} o\right.$ ）






# Translations of literary texts 

## Lesson 1

I love a chicken's tongue, Its flying over from on high, Its flank-thigh-rump-neck, A little piece of collar-bone; If you also add in the chine, That'll just do me fine!

## Lesson 2

Iavnaninao,
Sleep, little darling,
Iavnaninao,
Dawn has not yet come,
Iavnaninao,
The stars have risen,
Iavnaninao,
The moon has taken fright,
Iavnaninao,
The givers of light are coming,
Iavnaninao,
They bring sleep by knapsack, Iavnaninao,
I'll take this to my little chap,
Iavnaninao,
I'll fill his eyes with sleep, Iavnaninao,

## Lesson 3

The reason I sing is not that I should sing
Like a wild bird;
Not only for sweet sounds
Did heaven send me here to earth.
Heaven appoints and the nation rears me,
A heavenly body (reared by) an earthly one;
I speak with God with the aim
Of leading the nation forward.

## Lesson 4

Come, let's see the vine, what ate up the vine?
I went, I saw the vine, a goat ate up the vine.
Come, let's see the goat, what ate up the goat?
I went, I saw the goat, a wolf ate the goat.
A wolf ate the goat, the goat ate up the vine.
Come, let's see the wolf, what ate up the wolf?
I went, I saw the wolf, a gun ate the wolf.
A gun ate the wolf, the wolf the goat,
The goat ate up the vine.
Come, let's see the gun, what ate up the gun?
I went, I saw the gun, rust ate the gun.
Rust ate the gun, the gun the wolf,
The wolf the goat, the goat ate up the vine.
Come, let's see the rust, what ate up the rust?
I went, I saw the rust, earth ate the rust.
Earth ate the rust, the rust the gun,
The gun the wolf, the wolf the goat,
The goat ate up the vine.
Come, let's see the earth, what ate up the earth?
I went, I saw the earth, a mouse ate the earth.
A mouse ate the earth, the earth the gun,
The gun the wolf, the wolf the goat,
The goat ate up the vine.
Come, let's see the mouse, what ate up the mouse?

I went, I saw the mouse, a cat ate up the mouse.
A cat ate the mouse, the mouse the earth, The earth the rust, the rust the gun,
The gun the wolf, the wolf the goat,
The goat ate up the vine.

## Lesson 5

Hug me quickly to the bosom, nani-nanina And I'll sing to you, darling, nani-nanina!
The cursed Turk is moving along the road, nani-nanina,
Smitten by your father's axe, nani-nanina.
The foe is threatening again, nani-nanina,
The Turks have ravaged us, nani-nanina,
They snatch everything away from man, nani-nanina.
Then they darken the sun for him, nani-nanina.

In front the Turks, the tormentors, nani-nanina,
Behind the punishers pursue them, nani-nanina,
They have looted our possessions, nani-nanina,
They have put our wicker-dwellings to the torch, nani-nanina.

Your father is not here, nani-nanina, And those of us left in Urta, nani-nanina,

Are hiding, gripped by fear, nani-nanina,
Your father's fighting the foe, nani-nanina,
Your father left you this command: nani-nanina,

Let him soon follow in my footsteps nani-nanina,
Your father realised, when he said it, nani-nanina,
That you are destined to become a hero, nani-nanina,

Everything is ready, nani-nanina,
A grey stands saddled, nani-nanina,
Mount up and follow the path, nani-nanina,
And I give you this commission: nani-nanina,

Even if a 100 come upon you, nani-nanina,
Do not violate the price of a hero, nani-nanina,
And to the enemy never shew, nani-nanina,
Your back - remember this! nani-nanina.

## Lesson 6

A variegated butterfly was intoxicated And bedazzled by a violet . . .
A lad crept up on it,
He caught it and rejoiced...
Affectionately he said to it: 'Butterfly,
With what do you sustain yourself? How are you not tired the whole day By restlessly being on the wing?'
The butterfly said to him: 'In the meadow
I live without a care ...
There flowers have unfolded
For me to feed on and suck.
What time I have I sweetly spend,
I fly about as I wish,
But I am not long-lived...
Let me go . . . Don't delay me!'
The lad released it from his hand,
The gentle butterfly flew out . . .
And, as if as a mark of gratitude,
Slowly fluttered around his head.

## Lesson 7

I see destiny's peak,
A white area is there
I am lying in my room, And in the sky is the moon.
Tonight I shall write a poem,
Since I'm awaiting death
And I want to keep in face
Right now the moon's quick pace.
Here sleep is all around,
What's left is memory.
The sky has cleared up proud,
And there is no sign of cloud
I see destiny's peak,
A white area is there.
I am lying in my room,
And in the sky is the moon

## Lesson 8

Gigla the chatterbox is studying, The sun gaped in upon him:
'Gigla, that's enough studying for you, Now's a good time to go out . . .
Come on out, have a little play,
No-one will tell your father!'
'No, oh sun, my lady-sun,
First let me finish studying! . . .
Gigla started to write,
A bird began to sing:
'Gigla, that's enough studying for you,
Now's a good time to go out . .
Come on out, have a little play,
No-one will tell your father!'
'No, oh wagtail-bird,
I've been visited by a master . .
If you leave off singing,
Then I too will leave off writing! . ..
Gigla goes on studying his lesson,
Not looking at the fruit in the garden...
From the garden a cherry
Seeks to catch his eye.
'Gigla, that's enough studying for you, Now's a good time to go out . . Come on out, have a little play, No-one will tell your father!'
The child left off studying, Not that studying had tired him . . .
He came outside,
He called to his friends:
'Who was calling to me just now? Present yourself here for a moment! .

The sun smiles down on Gigla,
The bird sings to him,
The cherry in shame
Began offering him a huge fruit-laden branch . . .

## Lesson 9

Should my yearning be to cry,
What, pray, does each of you desire?
One laughs, another weeps,
Such is the world.
Whoever amongst you has no liking of tears,
That one of you should not sit by me;
Master of a crying pipe
How shall I become your equal (literally:
extend my foot to you)?!
But just once shall we learn,
Which one of us stands close(r) to God.

## Lesson 10

The broad meadow covered in snow Had seemingly fallen into a deep sleep,

And the veiled, thick forest's
Face had become quite set in stone.
From nowhere was heard
Either sound of prey or cry of men,
All around from horizon to horizon Stood silence, like the sleep of the dead.
And in this silence-enveloped meadow
The freeze gradually strengthened;
Now up in the mountains and now below It would seat itself in regal fashion.
It would sit and the while its eye
Not remove from the well-trodden path,
It wanted to reveal its power,
To meet face on any coming traveller.
And lo there appeared on the path A child with books tucked under armpit!
With quick step, with face full of life He was scuttling to school.
Jack Frost thereupon turned toward him And angrily stood in front of him:
'Child, fool,' it suddenly yelled at him, 'I advise you to return home at once.

Stubbornness will get you nowhere with me,
Your red colour is soon going to change;
Know that for glory over you
I'm prepared to die a bitter death.'
The small child hears all this,
He's cold and shivers with all his body,
Yet he does not stand still, rubbing his hands
He bounds away and thumps his feet on the ground as he goes.
Jack Frost's angered and his anger grows
At the small child's boldness,
Increases his sting and lights a fire
On the child's cheeks and ears.
Our little chap was sorely troubled,
His hands and feet were quite frozen . . .
'Woe, mother!' suddenly echoed around And tears poured from the poor fellow.
But even so he was not totally alarmed,
He didn't stand still, he didn't pause!
Suddenly, with all his might and power, He nimbly darted off to school.
The little chap runs, he runs and ... lo
The school-window and the light of fire!
Thereupon he utterly forgot
Both Jack Frost and his vaunting.

## Lesson 11

I am a bard of love
I beautify the mother-tongue,
I am a creator of songs,
For all to use for pleasure.
I am a reconciler of nations,
For all I lay a spread of roses,
I am enemy only to the one
Who bares his teeth at love.
I came into being in the 19th century, I shall move about/down into the 20th as a guest,
I shall keep versifying Georgian,
Till I go down into the grave.
Many people will think of me, When I depart from this world, I shall take love along with me, Without it I shall not go.
I have never been bereft of verse,
I was ever ready, whoever asked whatever of me,
I do not yet, living, have value,
So that, if I die, none of you will start to mourn.

Ietim-Gurdzhi will turn his back on you,
If he goes, he won't come back,
Rust(a)veli's fosterchild
And the second Sayat-Nova.

## Lesson 12

Our Father that art in heaven,
Hallowed be thy name,
Thy kingdom come,
Thy will be done,
On earth as it is in heaven.
Give us this day our daily bread
And forgive us our trespasses,
As we forgive them that trespass against us,
And lead us not into temptation,
But deliver us from evil;
For thine is the kingdom, the power and the glory
For ever and ever. Amen.

## Lesson 13

Some points about computers
Lik'a Ch'ant'uria
The 20th century, together with several other important discoveries, has entered
history as the century of the computer. In truth, this amazingly intelligent machine has brought about a really great revolution in the world of modern civilisation. It is gradually becoming an indivisible part of our life, and, to that extent, the whole of our civilised world is unimaginable without this truly great discovery of the century.

Two main types of computer exist: analogue and digital. Digital computers make use of electrical signals in on-off format. Society has essentially become familiar with the digital computer thanks to the spread of pocket-calculators and other clever devices (type-writers, washing machines).

A digital computer consists of four main parts:

1. The processor, which fulfils commands, arithmetic, logical operations on stored data. 2. The memory, or place for storing information.
2. The information entry-retrieval device. Information is often entered by typing (by use of a keyboard) or by means of diskettes [or] cassettes. The information to be retrieved, on the other hand, comes out on the screen, on printers (from where the copying of the text is possible) and on diskettes.
3. Communication devices, which give computers the means to "converse" with other machines and devices. This device contains modems, which link computers with the telephone-line and networks which give machines the power to converse with other machines at great speed.
Modern computers can be divided into three main categories according to their size and capabilities: micro-computers, mini-computers and main-frames. Microcomputers are the usual computers which we have all seen.

## Lesson 14

## Andria Balanchivadze

Georgian musical art [and] Georgia's cultural life have suffered a most grievous loss: at the age of 86 has passed away Andria Balanchivadze - the great composer and social activist, a remarkable pedagogue [and] educator, who was himself tirelessly active even in venerable old age and was
even still setting his imprint on the homeland's spiritual culture.

Especially great is Andria Balanchivadze's legacy; he did not shun a single area of musical creativity, which is in terms of genre multifaceted, and everywhere has set the stamp of his own illuminating words. But from the very start in his music were incised the main genrerelated tendencies in the guise of symphonic, concert-instrumental and ballet music, and in each of them he fulfilled a foundation-laying [and] leading role in the nation's musical art.
Andria Balanchivadze was born on 19th May 1906 in St. Petersburg in the family of Melit'on Balanchivadze, the author of the first Georgian opera. In 1926 he graduated from the Tbilisi Conservatory in the fields of composition ([studying] with Prof. M. Ippolitov-Ivanov) and piano ([studying] with Prof. I. Eisberg). He continued to study and in 1931 graduated from the Leningrad Conservatory in composition [having studied] with Prof. A. Zhitomirskij and specialising in the piano - with Prof. M. Yudina.

He enjoyed great authority even outside the frontiers of Georgia; he was friends with the great musicians of the day. It is sufficient that we name among them one of our century's greatest composers, Dmitry Shostakovich.

More than one generation of Georgian musicians will be boundlessly grateful to Andria Balanchivadze for being a most refined musician and personality; his name and memory will light up the future of Georgian music like a large ecclesiastical candle.

## Lesson 15

No wheel has here traversed a track: On horseback would they fly up to the tall towers.
Then the deities of the hunt would slay those riders
And send flying upwards their golden plaits.
Still each manly one bore
His own portion of torment and trial,
Still none returned from the path
And escaped from the untrodden rocks

Today we strive to go to the very top,
With pick-axe we hew out a path step-bystep,
Where as a permanently frozen
wave
The white summit has reared itself up.
Ushba stands among the clouds, like a vision,
Nowhere in sight is a trace of horses'
hooves .. .
Most of all the summit charms us
By nearness to the untouched snow.

## Lesson 16

Just now the sky was thundering,
The trees were trembling with
fear...
To earth
The downpour were knocking the fledglings from their nest . . .
Now such a calm reigns all around,
It's as if, ... what happened
Happened some time in the past,
And not just now.

## Lesson 17

'Winfried, how, sir, did your acquaintance with the Georgian language start? Was this encounter accidental or a regular extension of your scholarly interests?'
'We can't categorically style it either the one or the other.'
'In what way did the "Georgian world" reveal itself to be interesting and attractive for you?'
'The Georgian language right from the start interested me, and I soon began working on Georgian version. The investigation came out in 1969. However, this was still a side-interest, but after I became professor of English and General Linguistics at Oldenburg's newly founded university, I spent the whole of a free semester in Georgia.'
'Your family, because of your caucasological activities, is an acknowledged host by Georgian guests. But in this business, you will be well aware, the housewife plays the main role ...'
'My wife shares my love and empathy for Georgians. And so, she very much wants
that Georgian guests should feel themselves as comfortable as possible in our house.'
'Still Caucasian guests probably upset the rhythm of your normal life? ...'
'From this point of view Georgians do not differ from representatives of other peoples. All have their own character - thank God! But individual differences are more 'cutting' than national ones.'
'Your scholarly interests touch upon Old and Modern literary Georgian, the dialects; apart from this, you will study the other Kartvelian languages - Laz-Mingrelian and Svan. And almost half of your present study-trip you have spent in Svanetia. With what sort of impressions did you return? Was your Svan expedition fruitful or not?' 'My "study-trip" was fruitful . . The Svan language and the culture and, in general, its multi-ethnic makeup is one of Georgia's greatest treasures, which it must not lose and which is deserving of attention.'

## Lesson 18

## I see the sun

A male thrush was sitting on a white cherry tree's dry branch and warbling away in such a way that my uncle left off what he was doing, fetched a three-legged stool out into the yard, sat down and gave himself up to listening to it; I lay down on the ryegrass and shut my eyes. The thrush was singing without taking a breath; I was singing along with it in my heart and trying not to breathe until the thrush took a breath, but I didn't have enough puff. The thrush went on whistling in one long melody. If it would take a rare pause, it would cast a glance at the setting sun and continue whistling as before. The enormous sun, red like a copper tray, was slothful in its descent and was setting alight the villages strewn about the expansive shore of the

## R. Supsa.

'Keti!' someone [shouted as they] came to a halt at the gate. The thrush stopped whistling.
'Soso, lad, Sosoia!' the guest now called to me.
'Come in!' I should back with no satisfaction and sat up.

Our team-leader Datik'o came down into the yard.
'Good day to you!' he greeted me.
'And good day to you!' my uncle replied, then he got up and led the guest into the kitchen.

I flopped back for a bit on the rye-grass and waited for when the thrush would start to sing again as before, but it did not start singing again. I got up and went into the kitchen. The team-leader was saying something to my uncle; when I went in, he fell silent. Uncle remained sitting in silence; his hands folded around his knees, and he stared down at the embers turned to ash. The team-leader lifted a pouch out of his pocket, rolled up some tobacco, bent down to the stove, lifted up a lighted piece of wood, lit the tobacco and blew out smoke The stench of foul tobacco swirled around the room.

## Lesson 19

## Old news

I sat up and began walking aimlessly around the room. I had a dreadful urge to light up a cigarette; with difficulty was I restraining myself. My heart was beating fast, and I could not even sense when the agitation took hold of me, but Bezhan lay motionless. He had closed his eyes, his hooked nose had grown thin and seemed on him more prominent.

He looked like a corpse. I carefully drew close to him and stood over his head. I listened . . . I detected careful, light breathing.

Then Bezhan slowly opened his eyes and looked at me.
'Guia's address is on the table,' he said to me in a whisper.

I looked over at the table. On the table for sure there lay a strip torn from the page of an exercise-book
'Be a good chap, go round tomorrow and fetch me the books. My books ... my books should be with me.'
'Whose address is it?'
'Guia's. The girl who was sitting here . . it's a year since she took them and she has refused to return them to me. She's a real show-off/tease, that one!'
'I'll bring you the books no later than tomorrow.'
I could stop there no longer, and this is why I agreed with him so readily. I crumpled the strip of paper into my pocket and came out of the room in terror in terror because someone had come to doubt our purity, our decency. In my soul an uncommon alarm was clanging like a bell.
On the balcony it was dark. On the second floor they had already switched off the glaring bulb. On the stairs I heard Bezhan's coughing. His was a dull and sustained cough. I no longer halted; I raced down the stairs in headlong flight.
'If it's possible, one moment . . .,' I heard a woman's diffident, soft voice as soon as I emerged into the street . . .

The voice was soft and calm, but for some reason I felt fear - in fright I turned my head: before me stood the girl I had seen at Bezhan's. In the darkness of the street I could not make out the face, but I felt that it was the girl who had met me at Bezhan's - Guia.
'How long I've been waiting for you. I didn't think you'd be this late.'
'Have the lads gone?' unable to manage anything else, this was my question to her.
'Yes ... we said goodbye without even introducing ourselves. I didn't say that I was waiting for you . . I I told them that I live right here and we parted.'

Guia was talking calmly, convincingly. If I had not just seen her, from her manner of speech I would have taken her for an urbane, intelligent woman...
We followed along the dark street in silence. For a time we moved along like this; as for me, everything was now troubling and disconcerting me. Disconcerting to me was that the street was sunk in darkness and also that this girl was following me along at my side.

## Lesson 20

Georgian folk literature:
Mingrelian texts
I
Poetry

## Foreword

It is impossible that the study of Georgian oral literature, to which serious attention has been turned in recent times, be conducted with greater or less completeness, unless the folk artistry of all the regions of Georgia are properly taken into consideration. Svan and Laz-Mingrelian materials can make their own contribution in this matter, although the texts collected in Svanetia and Mingrelia have not as yet seen the light of day in sufficient quantity. It is superfluous to affirm that the publication of such texts would render a serious service not only to persons interested in folklore but to a wide public interested in the language, ethnography and history of the Georgian people and Georgian culture in general. The present publication, which is envisaged [to appear] in several volumes, is an attempt in a way to fill the afore-mentioned gap and to provide the reader with a reliable original source in an understandable and user-friendly guise.

## II

## Stories and lesser genres

We believe [that] there is no need to affirm that the collection and scholarly publication of such materials as these is a matter that cannot be postponed [or] delayed in order that the history and culture of the most ancient Georgian people can be studied in depth - today no-one can define exactly how the fate of the unwritten Kartvelian languages, Svan and Laz-Mingrelian, will pan out after a few centuries, but one can certainly say that the materials laid down in these languages will in the future attain the same price as gold.

## Index

The numbers given against each entry refer to the lesson(s) where the relevant information is given.
adjectives $1,2,3,4,7,8,15$
adverbial case 4
adverbs 1,3
age 3
agreement affixes 3, 4, 6
alternative series III for transitive verbs 20
aorist indicative $8,11,13$
aorist subjunctive $12,13,14$
articles 5
bad 3
be 1,3
can 13
causal clauses 9
causatives 20
comparative 3
concessive clauses 15
conditional 14
conditional clauses $9,14,16$
convey 13
dates 2
dative case $2,5,6,10,11,13,15,16$,
18, 19, 20
declension types 8
demonstrative adjectives 1,2
demonstrative pronouns 1,2 ,
3, 8
direct object marking 4
emphatic interrogative 7
emphatic pronoun 6
ergative case 8,11
future indicative $6,10,11,13$
future subjunctive 14
genitive case $2,3,5,6,17$
good 3
III subjunctive 20
imperative mood 12
imperfect indicative 14
indefinite adverbs 5
indefinite clauses 20
indefinite pronouns 5
indirect objects $5,10,11,13,15,16$, 18, 19, 20
indirect verbs $13,14,18,19,20$
instrumental case 3
interrogative pronouns 2,8
intransitive verbs $1,2,3,10,11,12$, $14,18,19,20$
know 9, 13
lie $1,2,3,10,12$
locative version $5,10,11,13$
manner clauses 9
masdar (verbal noun) 17, 18, 19, 20
medial verbs $11,12,14,15,16,20$ months 2
necessary $12,14,16$
negatives $7,12,15$
neutral version 4,5
nominative case $1,2,8,11,13,15,16$,
18, 19, 20
noun clauses 9
numbers 2
objective version $7,10,11,13,20$
participles $17,18,19,20$
passive voice 10,20
perfect 15,18
personal (anaphoric) pronouns 1,2 , 3, 8
pluperfect 16,19
plural 2
possessive adjectives 1
possessive pronouns 1
possible 12
postpositions $1,2,3,4,10,15$
present indicative $4,10,11,13$
present subjunctive 14
preverbs $1,2,6,8,11,17$
prohibitions 12
purpose clauses 14,16
questions 1
reflexive pronoun 6
relative clauses 7,9
relative pronouns 7
result clauses 15
run $1,10,11$
sit $1,2,3,10,12$
speech reporting 18
stand 1, 2, 3, 10, 12
stative verbs $13,14,18,19,20$
subject marking 3,4
subjective version 5,20
superlative 3
syncope 2, 4
tag-questions 1
temporal clauses 9, 17, 19
tense system 4
time 2
too 7
transitive verbs $4,5,6,7,8,12,14,15$, 16, 20
verb of motion 1, 3, 10, 12
version (vowels) $3,4,5,7,10,11,15$
vocative case 7
want 13
weekdays 2
word formation 16, 19
word order 4


[^0]:    1 In the first edition I included here the plural form t'aksi-eb-i taxis as an example of the rare i-stem nouns. This was in conformity with the analysis of the word in the eight volume Georgian Academy Dictionary. However, it has been pointed out to me that the word seems no longer to be treated as a vowel-final root but instead it behaves like a normal consonantfinal root, with nominative plural t'aks-eb-i, and dative singular t'aks-s. Two other imported i-stems are čai tea and t'ramvai tram(way), which, if ever used in the plural, would probably retain the $\mathbf{i}$-vowel as the word for taxi once did.

[^1]:    1 See K. Tschenkéli, Einführung in die georgische Sprache, vol. I, p. 27, though not all speakers seem to accept such a form for the genitive today.

[^2]:    
    The lad will blow on the samovar

[^3]:    1 Monosyllabic nouns in－m may have the normal type of genitive and instrumental
    
    2 Monosyllabic nouns in－y have a normal vocative（ $3 \mathrm{y}-\mathrm{m}$ owl）and may have normal genitive and instrumental（ 3 yy － $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{Byy}$－กon）．
    3 These forms in -o given under the genitive of the personal and interrogative pronouns are of course，the possessive adjectives／pronouns（my／mine，your／yours，etc．）．

[^4]:    1 The preference here would be for the past tense of this verb（ $\left.0 \cap_{3}\right)^{\circ}$ ，which is given in Lesson 10.
    2 This bracketed item is preferred here．
    

[^5]:    
    or
    y

[^6]:    
    If you are（at this moment）writing a letter，you will not be able to clean the house for me

[^7]:    1 The original reads as follows：
    
    Provide me with the receipt，lest I am asked to pay a second time
    For the aorist subjunctive in the verb under discussion see Lesson 12，and for the replace－ ment of a purpose clause by the construction for reporting speech see Lesson 18.
    2 Note the preverb here．

[^8]:    1 The older ending－n－b in place of $-\jmath^{3-১}$ is retained for this verb in the present and future indicative．
    2 In the present sub－series the intransitive form ${ }^{6} b_{j} \rho_{j} b_{0}$ is more usual．

[^9]:    
    The woman＇s sister passed away

[^10]:    1 Some speakers insist on using this verb with the indirect object marked，which would，as stated below，be present 3 － $30 b y b-m \delta-b$ vs future $y-30 b y b-y^{z}-\mathrm{L}$ ．

[^11]:    
    
     encircled Y（＝－のz๐し）．

[^12]:    

[^13]:    1 One would not，of course，use the indirect form of this verb $\left.\left(\partial_{\partial-子-b_{3}} \varrho-\jmath^{3}-\right\lrcorner\right)$ on an occasion like this．

[^14]:    1 Compare zuธ＠uరuا duonn ๓uzo！to hell with them！

[^15]:    1 Compare のoz－のozolo each X＇s own．
    2 This is the form of the proverb given in the Academy Dictionary under the entry＠๐－০－
    
    

